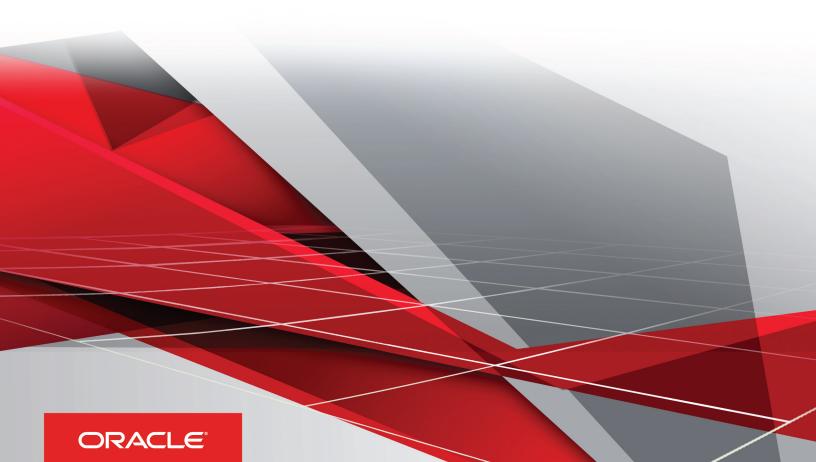
Oracle

Sales Cloud Implementing Enterprise Contracts

Release 12

This guide also applies to on-premises implementations



Oracle® Sales Cloud Implementing Enterprise Contracts

Part Number E73048-06

Copyright © 2011-2018, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Author: Vic Mitchell, Ramana Murthy, Shannon Connaire, Carmen Myrick, Kristin Penaskovic, Abhishek Sura, Jiri Weiss, Judy Wood

Contributor: Avijeet Baanerjee, Tanya Correia, Gnanaprakash Dasari, Mike Laverty, Brian Oden, Varsha Rai, Carol Robinson, Malarvizhi Narayanasamy Velappan

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/ or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

The business names used in this documentation are fictitious, and are not intended to identify any real companies currently or previously in existence.

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc.

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info or visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs if you are hearing impaired.

Contents

Preface	i
About This Guide	1
Audience and Scope	1
Related Guides	1
2 Understanding and Performing Setup Tasks	3
Common Implementation: Overview	3
Getting Started with an Implementation: Overview	3
Contracts Setup Overview	4
Setup and Maintenance Basics	7
3 Understanding Preconfigured Data and Processes	13
Profile Options, Lookups, and Scheduled Processes: Overview	13
Hierarchy in Profile Levels: Explained	13
Profile Options and Related General Preferences: How They Work Together	14
Scheduled Processes: Explained	14
Lookups: Explained	15
How can I edit lookups?	18
Why can't I see my lookup types?	19
1 Setting Up Users and Security	21
Defining Setup Users: Overview	21
Defining Security: Overview	21
About Sales Resources	22
Sales Resources FAQ	23



5	Setting Up Common Components	27
	Application Toolkit	27
	Attachments	27
	Calendar	30
	Click-To-Dial	32
	Messages	34
	Miscellaneous Features	35
	Notes	39
	Task Templates	40
	Watchlist	42
6	Setting Up Multiple Currencies	45
	Overview	45
	Implementation Tasks	45
7	Customizing Reports and Analytics	55
-	Customizing Sales Cloud Analytics and Reports: Overview	55
	Custom Analytics and Reports	55
	Layouts	65
	Layout Templates	68
	Custom Dashboards	71
	Data Structure	72
	Data Models	72
	Advanced Procedures	73
8	Configuring Profile Options and Lookups	79
	Profile Options, Lookups, and Scheduled Processes: Overview	79
	Profile Options	79
	Lookups	82



9	Setting Up Contracts Common Configurations	85
	Specifying Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties	85
	Specifying Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties	89
	Manage Contract Note Types	91
	Manage Contract Descriptive Flexfields	91
	Enterprise Scheduler Processes	105
	Managing Contract Party Roles and Sources	107
	Managing Party Contact Roles	110
	User Statuses and Transitions	113
	Managing Contract Types	115
	Contract Relationships	129
	Managing Contract Risks	129
	Enabling Different Levels of Contract Terms Editing During Contract Authoring: Explained	129
	Setting Up Contract Text Search: Highlights	130
	Custom Validation of Contracts	131
	Approving Contracts	133
	Contract Preview and Printing	144
10	Setting Up Procurement Contracts Configurations	153
	Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties	153
	Configuring Supplier Contract Fulfillment	155
11	Setting Up Contract Terms and Clause Library Configurations	163
	Contract Terms Library Setup Overview	163
	Setting Up Business Units for the Contract Terms Library	168
	Managing Clauses in the Contract Terms Library	172
	Managing Contract Terms Templates	187
	Setting Up Contract Expert	198
	Setting Up Variables	217
	Setting Up Adoption of Content Between Libraries	231
	Creating Folders to Organize Clauses	233
	Setting Up Contract Preview and Printing	234
	Setting Up Contract Terms Deliverables	241
	Indexing Clauses for Keyword Searches	247
	Managing Clause and Section Numbering Schemes	248
	Using the Oracle Contracts Terms Library: Examples	249
	Importing Clauses into the Contract Terms Library: Explained	250



12	Understanding Data Import and Export	255
	Importing Contracts	255
	File-Based Import and Export Overview	271
13	Understanding Customization, Extensibility, and Integration	289
	Sales Cloud Customization, Extensibility, and Integration: Overview	289
	Understanding Web Services	291
	Configuring User Assistance	295
14	Contracts Quick Setup Summary	299
	Contracts Quick Setup: Overview	299
	Setting Up Enterprise Contracts	299
	Setting Up Procurement Contracts	311



Preface

This preface introduces information sources that can help you use the application.

Oracle Applications Help

Use the help icon (?) to access Oracle Applications Help in the application. If you don't see any help icons on your page, click the Show Help icon (?) in the global header. Not all pages have help icons. You can also access Oracle Applications Help at https://fusionhelp.oracle.com.

Using Applications Help

Watch: This video tutorial shows you how to find help and use help features.

Additional Resources

- Community: Use Oracle Applications Customer Connect to get information from experts at Oracle, the partner community, and other users.
- Guides and Videos: Go to the Oracle Help Center to find guides and videos.
- Training: Take courses on Oracle Cloud from Oracle University.

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, see the Oracle Accessibility Program .

Comments and Suggestions

Please give us feedback about Oracle Applications Help and guides! You can send e-mail to: oracle_fusion_applications_help_ww_grp@oracle.com.





1 About This Guide

Audience and Scope

This guide provides information on how implementors and administrators can configure and set up Enterprise Contracts. It is designed as a reference to configuring required common application features as well as summarizing specific setup tasks for Enterprise Contracts.

Important: This guide assumes your company's application cloud service is up and running at a basic level. For example, as described in the use case contained in the Oracle Sales Cloud, Getting Started with Your Implementation guide.

Related Guides

In addition to this guide, the following table provides summary information about other guides that may be important references to understand more about the business flows and functionality covered in this guide.

Guide	Description
Oracle Sales Cloud Getting Started with Your Implementation	Describes your initial Oracle Sales Cloud service implementation procedures, based on a simple sales-force-automation use case.
Oracle Fusion Functional Setup Manager User's Guide	Describes how to use the Setup and Maintenance work area when implementing and configuring Oracle Sales Cloud.
Oracle Sales Cloud Implementing Sales	Provides a reference to conceptual information and procedures required to implement components and features of Oracle Sales Cloud.
Oracle Sales Cloud Using Customer Contracts	Contains information to help end users who are charged with creating and managing customer contracts.
Oracle Sales Cloud Using Sales	Contains information to help sales managers, salespeople, and other sales end users when using Oracle Sales Cloud to perform their day-to-day tasks.
Oracle Sales Cloud Getting Started with Oracle Sales Cloud Customizations	Introduces you to user interface elements, user interface types, and simple, common customization of Oracle Sales Cloud.
Oracle Sales Cloud Extending Sales	Describes how to create and extend objects and customize the user interfaces and navigation menus.
Oracle Sales Cloud Understanding File- Based Data Import and Export	Contains information to help those charged with exporting and importing object data.
Oracle Sales Cloud Securing Oracle Sales Cloud	Contains information to help setup users and sales administrators configure access to Oracle Sales Cloud functionality and data.



Guide	Description
Oracle Sales Cloud Creating and Administering Analytics	Contains information about supplied reports and analytics, as well as how to create your own reports.

You may need to consult other guides other than those shown here. See the Related Topics section below for direct access to all guides (if allowed by your organization).

Related Topics

Oracle Help Center



2 Understanding and Performing Setup Tasks

Common Implementation: Overview

Common implementation involves performing tasks that are common and apply to multiple offerings. The Define Common Applications Configuration, Define Transactional Business Intelligence, and Define Extensions task lists comprise these common setup and implementation tasks. You can search and access the common implementation task lists and tasks from the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Define Common Applications Configuration

Within an offering, you may find the Define Common Applications Configuration task list containing several tasks to manage common functional areas, for example:

- Setting up security, enterprise structures, geographies, and business units.
- Creating and maintaining user accounts and synchronizing the list of users and roles stored in Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP).

Define Transactional Business Intelligence

Use the Define Transactional Business Intelligence task list to configure business intelligence to gain real-time insight into transactional data. You can also secure the transactional data and manage the users accessing that data.

Define Extensions

Use the Define Extensions task list to configure offering-specific extensions to support customization of business objects. For example, the task list comprises tasks that help you to:

- Set options for the help features available at the site, which might include collaboration, access to external web sites, and settings for custom help content.
- Review and manage objects, for example currencies and reference data sets, that are shared across applications.
- Configure common reference objects such as flexfields, document sequences, and profile options that affect the functionality and look of Oracle Applications Cloud.

Getting Started with an Implementation: Overview

To start an implementation, set up one or more initial users. In an Oracle Fusion Applications environment, use the super user created during installation and provisioning. For an Oracle Cloud implementation, use the initial administrator provided by



Oracle. Because applications is secure as delivered by Oracle, the process of enabling the necessary setup access for initial users requires the following steps:

- 1. As you start an implementation, sign in as the user with initial access: either the Oracle Fusion Applications installation super user or the initial Oracle Cloud administrator user.
- 2. Select an offering to implement and then enable the offering and the associated functional areas. Once the offering is enabled, you generate the setup tasks needed to implement the offering.
- **3.** Perform the following security tasks:
 - a. Synchronize users and roles in the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) store with HCM user management. Use the Run User and Roles Synchronization Process task.
 - b. Create an IT security manager user by using the Create Implementation Users task.
- **4.** As the newly created IT security manager user, sign in to Oracle Fusion Applications and set up at least one implementation user for setting up enterprise structures.
 - a. Create an implementation user by using the Create Implementation Users task.
 - b. Provision the implementation user with the Application Implementation Manager job role or the Application Implementation Consultant job role by using the Security Console Users tab. The Application Implementation Consultant job role inherits from all product-specific application administrators and entitles the necessary View All access to all secured objects.
 - **c.** Optionally, create a data role for an implementation user who needs only the limited access of a product-specific Application Administrator. Use the Create Data Role for Implementation Users task. Then assign the resulting data role to the implementation user by using the Create Implementation Users task.

Related Topics

- Initial Security Administration: Critical Choices
- User and Role Synchronization: Explained
- Enterprise Structures: Overview
- Creating Data Roles for Implementation Users: Procedure

Contracts Setup Overview

Performing Contracts Setup Tasks: Overview

For most setup activities, you'll access the setup pages associated with the component or feature by first going into the Setup and Maintenance work area and finding the task or task list associated with the feature or component. The Setup and Maintenance work area is also known as the Functional Setup Manager.

Use the following procedure to access the Setup and Maintenance work area:

- 1. Sign in as a user with access to the setup areas, such as the initial user, another setup user, or the administrator.
 - Restriction: The administrator does not have the same setup permissions as a setup user. He has permissions required to set up and administer features and components, but not the higher-level permissions required to implement enterprise and security features. For more information on setting up users, see the Oracle Sales Cloud Getting Started with Your Implementation guide and the Securing Oracle Sales Cloud guide.



- 2. Navigate to Setup and Maintenance.
- 3. Click the All Tasks tab.
- 4. Enter the name of the task or task list in the search box and click **Search**.
 - Tip: You can use the percent sign (%) as a wildcard when searching.

Alternatively, you can use the quick search in the regional area (on the left) to search for tasks.

- 5. In the list of tasks that appears, find the task you want.
- 6. Click the Go to Task icon for the task you want.

The setup page for the task appears.

Downloading Task Lists and Setup Reports

You may also want to download lists of tasks and task lists and other documents related to the Enterprise Contracts offering. Use the following procedure:

- 1. Sign in as a user with access to the setup areas, such as the initial user, another setup user, or the administrator.
- 2. Click the **Getting Started** link in the regional area. Note that you may need to expand the regional panel to see the Getting Started link.
- 3. In the Getting Started page, click the **Enterprise Contracts** offering icon.



Enterprise Contracts

 Use the Enterprise Contracts offering icon to access reports for the offering, including full lists of setup tasks, descriptions of the options and features you can select when you configure the offering, and lists of business objects and enterprise applications associated with the offering.



About Enterprise Contracts				
Review and update common configuration settings for the creation and management of enterprise contracts.				
Offering Content Guide	PDF	HTML	Excel	
Associated Features	PDF	HTML	Excel	
Setup Task Lists and Tasks	PDF	HTML	Excel	
Related Business Objects	PDF	HTML	Excel	
Related Enterprise Applications	PDF	HTML	Excel	

- 4. View the reports in various formats, such as .pdf, html, and .xls. Use the reports to guide you in your setup activities.
- 5. When you are ready to start implementing a feature or functionality, you can optionally create one or more implementation projects for the offerings and options that you want to implement. For more information on creating implementation projects, see the help, using keywords "implementation project".

For more information on using the Setup and Maintenance work area to implement and configure Oracle Enterprise Contracts, see the Oracle Applications Cloud - Using Functional Setup Manager guide.

Contracts Offering: Overview

Using the Contracts business process area, your enterprise can review and define the setup for managing project and procurement contracts, and define the setup configuration and tasks related to importing and exporting contract data.

Before you begin, use the Getting Started page in the Setup and Maintenance work area to access reports for each offering, including full lists of setup tasks, descriptions of the options and features you can select when you configure the offering, and lists of business objects and enterprise applications associated with the offering.

The first implementation step is to configure the offerings in the Setup and Maintenance work area by selecting the offerings and options that you want to make available to implement. For the Enterprise Contracts offering, you can select the following options:

- Procurement Contracts
- Sales Contracts

Next, create one or more implementation projects for the offerings and options that you want to implement first, which generates task lists for each project. The application implementation manager can customize the task list and assign and track each task.

If you select all of the options, the generated task list for this offering contains the following groups of tasks:

- Define Common Applications Configuration for Contracts
- Define Contracts Common Configuration
- Define Procurement Contracts Configuration
- Define Sales Contracts Configuration
- Define Contract Terms and Clause Library Configuration



- Contracts: Define File-Based Data Import
- Manage Bulk Data Export
- Define Transactional Business Intelligence Configuration
- Define Extensions for Contracts

Define Common Applications Configuration for Contracts

Use this task list to manage definitions used across offerings, typically applying to multiple products and product families. These definitions include enterprise structures, security, and approval rules.

You can find other information that supports the common implementation tasks by searching Oracle Applications Help using the task name.

Define Contracts Common Configuration

Define and manage the setup for common functions within the Oracle Enterprise Contracts set of business processes.

Define Procurement Contracts Configuration

Define and manage the setup related to procurement contracts.

Define Sales Contracts Configuration

Define and manage the setup related to sales contracts.

Define Contract Terms and Clause Library Configuration

Define and manage the setup to support creation and verification of contract terms.

Contracts: Define File-Based Data Import

Define mappings between contract attributes and import files, and schedule import jobs.

Manage Bulk Data Export

Review and manage export objects and schedule export processes to export business objects to external data files.

Define Transactional Business Intelligence Configuration

Define the configuration for Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence to enable business intelligence reporting with the Oracle Fusion Applications.

Note: Although this task list appears in the Oracle Contracts offering, Contracts does not include business intelligence reporting. If you are implementing another offering where business intelligence reporting is available, then refer to that offering's implementation guide for help with this set of tasks.

Setup and Maintenance Basics



Implementation Projects: Explained

You can create implementation projects to manage the implementation of an offering and functional areas as a unit throughout the implementation life cycle, or maintain the setup of specific business processes and activities customizing the list of tasks to complete their implementation.

An implementation project is the list of setup tasks you need to complete to implement selected offerings and functional areas. You create a project either by:

- Selecting an offering and its functional areas you want to implement together, then customize the list of tasks for such offering and functional areas as applicable.
- Selecting specific setup task lists and tasks you require for a specific configuration.

You can also assign these tasks to users and track their completion using the included project management tools.

Selecting Offerings

When creating an implementation project you see the list of offerings and functional areas that are configured for implementation. Implementation managers specify which of those offerings and functional areas to include in an implementation project. It is strongly recommended that you limit your selection to one offering per implementation project, even though the application does not prevent you from including more than one. The implementation managers should decide based on how they plan to manage their implementations. For example, if you implement and deploy different offerings at different times, then having separate implementation projects help to manage the implementation life cycles. Furthermore, the more offerings you included in an implementation project, the bigger the generated task list is. The implementation task list includes all setup tasks needed to implement all included offerings. Alternatively, segmenting into multiple implementation projects makes the process easier to manage and ensures that import and export sequence of the project data is straightforward in the correct sequence.

Offerings: Explained

Offerings are application solution sets representing one or more business processes and activities that you typically provision and implement as a unit. They are, therefore, the primary drivers of functional setup of Oracle Fusion applications. Some of the examples of offerings are Financials, Procurement, Sales, Marketing, Order Orchestration, and Workforce Deployment. An offering is the highest level grouping of Oracle Fusion Applications functionality. They include functional areas, and alternative business rules known as features.

Enabling Offerings: Explained

When planning your implementation, you decide what business processes your organization or company performs or supports. These decisions determine the offerings and functional areas you want to implement. You then configure the offerings and functional areas that support the activities your organization or company performs. During the configuration process, you specifically enable offerings and functional areas for use before you implement them.

Enabling Offerings and Functional Areas

Use the Setup and Maintenance work area to help decide which offerings to enable for implementation. Once you decide to use an offering, you can select the Configure button to choose the configuration details and enable the offering, associated functional areas, and features. All the base functional areas of an offering are automatically enabled for implementation when



you enable the parent offering. You choose which optional functional areas to enable. The functional areas appear in an expandable and collapsible hierarchy to facilitate progressive decision making for implementation.

Enabling Features

Features are optional or alternative business rules or methods used to fine-tune business processes and activities supported by an offering or a functional area. If features are available for the offering or functional areas, you can enable them to help meet your business requirements, if desired. In general, the features are set with a default configuration based on their typical usage in most implementations. You should always review the available features for the offering and functional areas and select them as appropriate. Dependent features appear visible when the feature choice they depend on is selected for implementation.

Enabling Offerings: Procedure

You enable offerings to customize the functionality that matches the services you plan on implementing.

Enabling Offerings

To enable offerings, follow these steps.

- 1. Open the Setup and Maintenance work area (Navigator > Setup and Maintenance).
- 2. In the Setup and Maintenance Offerings page, select the offering you're using, then click **Configure**.
- 3. In the Configure page, select the **Enable** check box for the offering. Also select the **Enable** check box for each of the functional areas you want to use.
- **4.** Click the Features icon for the offering or functional area you have enabled, then enable any features you require. Select **Done** when complete.
- 5. Select **Done** to return to the Offerings page then repeat the same steps for each of the offerings you are using.

Implementation Project Task Lists: Explained

Once you make offering and functional area selections, Oracle Fusion Functional Setup Manager creates the implementation project and generates a complete list of setup tasks based upon your selections. The predefined hierarchical task list added when you select an offering is called the offering top task list. It includes a complete list of all tasks, including the prerequisites required to implement the offering. Typically, this task list has the same name as the name of the offering it represents. If multiple offerings are included in a single implementation project, then each one of the offering top task lists shows as a top node in the implementation task list hierarchy.

Included Tasks

Tasks used to set up any of the dependent functional areas and features, which are not selected for implementation are excluded from the task list. The implementation task list is generated according to the offering configurations and top task list definitions present at the time an implementation project is created. Once created, the task list in the implementation project becomes self-contained and does not change based on any changes made to the offering configurations or top task list definitions.

Task Organization

The offering top task list shows as the top node in the implementation task list hierarchy. If multiple offerings are included in a single implementation project then top task list of each of the offerings becomes a top node of the implementation task list hierarchy. Within each top node, the tasks are organized with prerequisites and dependencies in mind.

The most common requirements across all offerings are listed first.



- Next, the common tasks across an application area (such as Customer Relationship Management, or Financials), if applicable, are shown.
- Next, tasks that are common across multiple modules and options within an offering display.
- Finally, tasks for specific business areas of the offering, such as Opportunity Management, Lead Management, Territory Management, or Sales Forecasting display.

Predecessor Tasks

Some setup data may be a prerequisite for other setup data. The tasks that involve entering the prerequisite data may be identified as predecessor tasks.

In an assigned task list a task with predecessors is indicated as such, and provides you the following information:

- Which tasks are the predecessors of a given task.
- The status of the predecessor tasks.
- The recommended status of the predecessor tasks before performing the given task.

Predecessor tasks are identified to give you better understanding of the data dependency, but you are not prohibited from performing the task even if the predecessor task status is not in the recommended state. Different implementations may select to implement the offerings in different orders. A predecessor task may also be a common task for many different offerings. If a predecessor task was performed as part of a previous implementation and setup data was entered, then you may be able to proceed with the dependent tasks without performing the predecessor tasks in the current implementation. The predecessor and the dependent tasks might be performed in parallel by entering certain values of predecessor first and then followed by entering the data that is dependent on the already entered parent data, and then repeating the process for each step of the data dependency.

Offering Related Documents: Explained

Related documents are intended to help you plan a successful implementation of the offerings available on the Getting Started page. Every offering contains a default set of reports as related documents. You cannot modify the default documents. In addition to these reports, you can add custom reports and other related documents to help with planning and implementation or when performing setup tasks. The documents available by default are:

Offering Content Guide

This report shows detailed information on the business processes and activities supported by the offering.

Setup Task Lists and Tasks Report

This report shows the list of task lists and tasks that you should complete to successfully implement the offering.

Associated Features Report

This report shows the list of functional areas and features associated with the offering.

Related Business Objects Report

This report shows all setup data needed to implement the offering. It provides a list of all business objects that are associated with the setup tasks belonging to the offering.

Related Enterprise Applications Report

This report shows the list of enterprise applications used by the functional pages and web services for the offering.



Features: Explained

Offerings include optional or alternative business rules or methods called feature choices, used to fine-tune business processes and activities supported by an offering or a functional area. You make feature selections according to your business requirements to get the best fit with the offering. If the selected offerings and functional areas have dependent features then those features are applicable when you implement the corresponding offering or functional area.

Feature choices can be one of three different types:

Yes or No

If a feature can either be applicable or not be applicable to an implementation, a single check box is presented for selection. Check or deselect to specify yes or no respectively.

Single Select

If a feature has multiple choices but only one can be applicable to an implementation, multiple choices are presented as radio buttons. You can turn on only one of those choices.

Multi-Select

If the feature has multiple choices but one or more can be applicable to an implementation then all choices are presented with a check box. Select all that apply by checking the appropriate choices.

What's a functional area?

A functional area is a grouping of functionality within an offering. It may be an optional piece of functionality that you may want to implement as part of an offering. Optional functional areas can be included or excluded from their parent offering. Functional areas may be hierarchical, and therefore may be subordinate to another functional area. An offering has at least one base or core functional area and may have one or more optional functional areas. Additionally, one or more or features may be associated to an offering.

Setup and Maintenance: Overview

Oracle Functional Setup Manager enables rapid and efficient planning, configuration, implementation, deployment, and ongoing maintenance of Oracle Applications through self-service administration.

All Oracle Functional Setup Manager functionality is available from the Setup and Maintenance work area, which offers you the following benefits:

Self-Service Administration:

Manage all aspects of functional setup of Oracle Fusion applications at the business user level with an integrated, guided process for planning, configuration, implementation, deployment, and maintenance.

Configurable and Extensible:

Configure and Extend prepackaged list of tasks for setting up Oracle Fusion applications to better fit your business requirements.

Complete Transparency:



Get full visibility of Oracle Fusion applications end-to-end setup requirements with auto-generated, sequential task lists that include prerequisites and address dependencies.

Prepackaged Lists of Implementation Tasks:

Task lists can be easily configured and extended to better fit with business requirements. Autogenerated, sequential task lists include prerequisites and address dependencies to give full visibility to end-to-end setup requirements of Oracle Applications.

Rapid Start:

Specific implementations can become templates to facilitate reuse and rapid-start for comparable Oracle Applications across many instances.

Comprehensive Reporting:

A set of built-in reports helps to analyze, validate and audit configurations, implementations, and setup data of Oracle Applications.

With Oracle Functional Setup Manager you can:

- Learn about and analyze implementation requirements.
- Configure Oracle Applications to match your business needs.
- Achieve complete visibility to set up requirements through guided, sequential task lists downloadable into Excel for project planning.
- Enter setup data through easy-to-use user interfaces available directly from the task lists.
- Export and import data from one instance to another for rapid setup.
- Validate setup by reviewing setup data reports.
- Implement all Oracle Applications through a standard and consistent process.



3 Understanding Preconfigured Data and Processes

Profile Options, Lookups, and Scheduled Processes: Overview

In Oracle Sales Cloud, profile options, lookup types, and scheduled processes let you configure application behavior and refresh data.

Briefly, the following are the purposes of profile options, lookup types, and scheduled processes:

- Profile options: Let you configure the application behavior.
- Lookup types: Provide the lists of values in applications. Many lookup types can be customized to fit your business needs.
- Scheduled processes: Refresh data in the applications.

You can find additional information on profile options, lookup types, and scheduled processes in this chapter and in the related topics.

Related Topics

- How can I access predefined profile options?
- How can I access predefined lookups?
- Viewing Details About Predefined Scheduled Processes: Procedure

Hierarchy in Profile Levels: Explained

The hierarchy in profile levels determines the context for making a profile option effective.

You can enable a profile option at the following levels:

- Site level (lowest): The entire site of deployment
- Product level: A specific product component within the application
- User level (highest): A specific user

After you create or edit a profile option on the Manage Profile Options page, you must enable it. You can enable it at multiple levels. The setting at the highest enabled level takes precedence over the lower levels. User level is at the top of the hierarchy and always takes precedence over the settings at the product or site level.

On the Manage Administrative Profile Values page, set the profile value at any of the enabled levels of the profile option.

Example of Profile Option Hierarchy

The following table shows an example of setting the currency profile option at different levels.



Profile Level	Hierarchy	Value Corresponding to the Selected Profile Level	Currency
Site	Lowest	NA	Euro
Product	Higher than Site	General Ledger	UK Pound Sterling
User	Highest	John Smith	US Dollar

For this example, both John Smith and Jane Lee are General Ledger users. However, based on the profile settings, John Smith would see US Dollar as the default currency, whereas Jane Lee would see UK Pound Sterling. Mary, who is neither a General Ledger user nor has any user-level preference defined, will see Euro as the default currency.

Profile Options and Related General Preferences: How They Work Together

The general preferences such as Language, Territory, or Date Format that you access from the global area have corresponding predefined profile options.

General Preferences

When users define their preferred Date Format, Language, or Currency, they are setting the value of a profile option at the user level.

Profile Options

When users don't specify anything as their preferences, the Site level profile option takes effect.

Scheduled Processes: Explained

Run scheduled processes to manipulate a set of records for a specific business need, or to get printable output with information about certain records. Some processes do both, for example, to import records and provide a report about them.

Report Output

A scheduled process that provides output, or the output itself, is also referred to as a report.

- Many types of reports are available, for example regulatory statements or listings of records that meet specified parameters.
- Predefined templates determine the report layout.



Parameters

A scheduled process might have parameters that you can set to control which records are included or how they are affected. For example, a process updates only the records that are effective within the date range that you define.

Submission

Each scheduled process that you run is based on a job. The job is the executable that determines what the process can do and what options you can set for the process.

You can submit the same process using different parameters and other settings. Each process submission has a unique process ID.

Process Sets

A process set is a scheduled process that's based on a job set, which contains multiple jobs for one process submission.

Note: In some cases, when you submit a scheduled process, the job logic causes other processes to automatically run. This isn't the same as a process set.

Related Topics

- Process Sets: Explained
- Submitting Scheduled Processes and Process Sets: Procedure
- Managing Scheduled Processes That You Submitted: Points to Consider

Lookups: Explained

Lookups are lists of values in applications. You define a list of values as a lookup type consisting of a set of lookup codes, each code's translated meaning, and optionally a tag. End users see the list of translated meanings as the available values for an object.

Lookups provide a means of validation and lists of values where valid values appear on a list with no duplicate values. For example, an application might store the values Y and N in a column in a table, but when displaying those values in the user interface, Yes or No (or their translated equivalents) should be available for end users to select. For example, the two lookup codes Y and N are defined in the REQUIRED_INDICATOR lookup type.

In another example, a lookup type for marital status has lookup codes for users to specify married, single, or available legal partnerships.

Lookup Type	Lookup Code	Meaning	Tag
MAR_STATUS	М	Married	
	S	Single	
	R	Registered Partner	+NL



Lookup Type	Lookup Code	Meaning	Tag
	DP	Domestic Partner	-FR, AU

In this case, tags are used for localizing the codes. All legislations list Married and Single. Only the Dutch legislation lists Registered Partner. And all legislations except France and Australia also list Domestic Partner.

When managing lookups, you need to understand the following.

- Using lookups in applications
- Customization levels
- Accessing lookups
- Enabling lookups
- The three kinds of lookups: standard, common, and set enabled

Using Lookups in Applications

Use lookups to provide validation or a list of values for a user input field in a user interface.

An example of a lookup used for validation is a flexfield segment using a table-validated value set with values from a lookup type. An example of a lookup in a list of values is a profile option's available values from which users select one to set the profile option. Invoice Approval Status gives the option of including payables invoices of different approval statuses in a report. The lookup code values include All, so that users can report by all statuses: Approved, Resubmitted for approval, Pending or rejected, and Rejected.

Customization Level

The customization level of a lookup type determines whether the lookups in that lookup type can be edited. This applies data security to lookups.

Some lookup types are locked so no new codes and other changes can be added during implementation or later, as needed. Depending on the customization level of a lookup type, you may be able to change the codes or their meanings. Some lookups are designated as extensible, so new lookup codes can be created during implementation, but the meanings of predefined lookup codes cannot be modified. Some predefined lookup codes can be changed during implementation or later, as needed.

The customization levels are user, extensible, and system. The following table shows which lookup management tasks are allowed at each customization level.

Allowed Task	User	Extensible	System
Deleting a lookup type	Yes	No	No
Inserting new codes	Yes	Yes	No
Updating start date, end date, and enabled fields	Yes	Yes, only if the code is not predefined data	No
Deleting codes	Yes	Yes, only if the code is not predefined data	No



Allowed Task	User	Extensible	System
Updating tags	Yes	No	No
Updating module	Yes	No	No

Predefined data means LAST_UPDATED_BY = SEED_DATA_FROM_APPLICATION.

If a product depends on a lookup, the customization level must be system or extensible to prevent deletion.

Once the customization level is set for a lookup type, it can't be modified. The customization level for lookup types created using the Define Lookups page is by default set at the User level.

Standard, Common, and Set-Enabled Lookups

The available kinds of lookups are as follows.

Lookup	Description
Standard	Lists the available codes and translated meanings
Set enabled	Additionally associates a reference data set with the lookup codes
Common	Legacy lookups

Standard lookups are the simplest form of lookup types consisting only of codes and their translated meaning. They differ from common lookups only in being defined in the standard lookup view.

Common lookups exist for reasons of backward compatibility and differ from standard lookups only in being defined in the common lookup view.

Set enabled lookup types store lookup codes that are enabled for reference data sharing. At runtime, a set-enabled lookup code is visible because the value of the determinant identifies a reference data set in which the lookup code is present.

Accessing Lookups

Standard, set-enabled, and common lookups are defined in the Standard, Set-enabled, and Common views, respectively. Applications development may define lookups in an application view to restrict the UI pages where they may appear.

In lookups management tasks, lookups may be associated with a module in the application taxonomy to provide criteria for narrowing a search or limiting the number of lookups accessed by a product specific task such as Manage Purchasing Lookups.



Enabling Lookups

A lookup type is reusable for attributes stored in multiple tables.

Enable lookups based on the following.

- Selecting an Enabled check box
- · Specifying an enabled start date, end date, or both
- Specifying a reference data setdeterminant

If you make changes to a lookup, users must sign out and back in before the changes take effect. When defining a list of values for display rather than validation, limit the number of enabled lookup codes to a usable length.

For more information on the predefined lookups and lookup codes, open the Setup and Maintenance work area, and use the tasks in the Define Lookups task list.

Translating Lookups

You can translate the lookups that you defined to the preferred language(s) without changing the language session of the application. Use the translation option available on the lookup code table. By default, for each lookup, all the allowed language rows in the translator dialog box appear in the source language (the current session language). When you edit a particular language entry, you can modify the translated meaning and description to the language in which you want the lookup to appear. Once the updates are made, the end-users can view the lookup in the translated text.

Note: You can add the translation for only as many languages as are permitted by the administrator. The functionality to limit the number of languages displayed on the dialog box is controlled through the Translation Editor Languages profile option. It can be set at the SITE or USER level. If nothing is specified, all active languages are displayed.

Related Topics

- Modules in Application Taxonomy: Explained
- Managing Set-Enabled Lookups: Examples
- What's the difference between a lookup type and a value set?
- Managing a Standard Lookup: Example
- How can I access predefined lookups?

How can I edit lookups?

On the Define Lookups page, you can edit the existing lookup codes of a lookup type or add new lookup codes. To open the page, navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area and search for the Define Lookup task list.

The task list contains three tasks:

Standard Lookups



- Common Lookups
- Set-enabled Lookups

Each task contains a predefined set of lookup types classified and stored as per the functionality. Open a task to search and edit the required lookup. However, you may not be able to edit a lookup if its customization level doesn't support editing.

Why can't I see my lookup types?

Lookup types are classified using tasks that involve a group of related lookups, such as Manage Geography Lookups. Each task gives you access only to certain lookup types. However, the generic tasks provide access to all lookups types of a kind, such as common lookups associated with the Manage Common Lookups task.

If the lookup types in an application are available in the standard, common, or set-enabled lookups view, they are central to an application. However, lookup types defined for a specific application are managed using the task or task list for that application.





4 Setting Up Users and Security

Defining Setup Users: Overview

Among the initial activities when setting up your cloud service is the creation of users who perform setup tasks.

Oracle creates an initial user for you when your environment is provisioned. This initial user is configured to perform security tasks, which include the creation of other users and the granting of additional privileges. The initial user creates other users, known as setup users, to help with application setup. The setup user performs the tasks in the implementation projects, sets up enterprise structures, creates application users, and administers security.

Setup users access the Manage Users task in the Setup and Maintenance work area to create setup users. For information about creating setup users, see the Oracle Sales Cloud Getting Started with Your Implementation guide.

Related Topics

• Oracle Help Center guides

Defining Security: Overview

Access to Oracle Sales Cloud functionality and data is secured using role-based access control. In a role-based access control model, users are assigned roles, and roles are assigned access privileges to protected system resources. Initial access to Oracle Sales Cloud is limited to one initial user that Oracle creates. Using this initial user, you create other required users, such as setup users, the sales administration user, and application users. You then provision each user with roles, which provide access to application functions and data.

To set up users and roles, you perform Sales Setup tasks listed for the Users and Security functional area. You can perform most of these tasks both during implementation and later as requirements emerge. This topic introduces the tasks in this list.

For more information about creating users, see the Oracle Sales Cloud Getting Started with Your Implementation guide. For more information about setting up security and provisioning roles to users, see the Oracle Sales Cloud Securing Oracle Sales Cloud guide. Both guides are available from Oracle Help Center.

Manage Job Roles Task

The Sales Cloud security reference implementation provides many predefined job roles. You perform the Manage Job Roles task to:

- Review the role hierarchy of a job or abstract role.
- · Create custom job and abstract roles.
- View the roles assigned to a user and list the users who have a specific role.

A user with the IT Security Manager job role performs the Manage Job Roles task. This task opens the Roles tab of the Security Console.



Manage Duties Task

You perform the Manage Duties task to:

- Review the duties of a job or abstract role.
- Manage the duties of a custom job or abstract role.
- · Create custom duty roles.

A user with the IT Security Manager job role performs the Manage Duties tasks. This task opens the Roles tab of the Security Console.

Manage Data Security Policies Task

You use the Manage Data Security Policies task to manage the data security policies that determine grants of entitlement to a user or role on an object or attribute group. A user with the IT Security Manager job role performs the Manage Data Security Policies task. This task opens the Roles tab of the Security Console.

Note: Other data security tasks listed in the Users and Security functional area task list do not apply to Oracle Sales Cloud.

Manage Users Task

You create application users in the UI using the Manage Users task. You can also import partner contact data using the Import Partner Users task. A user with the IT Security Manager job role performs the Manage Users tasks.

Note: You cannot perform bulk imports of data into Sales Cloud using the Import Worker Users task available from the Users and Security functional area task list. However, you can create users by importing legacy users from a file using the Manage File Import Activity task available from the Setup and Maintenance work area. For information on importing users, see the Oracle Sales Cloud Getting Started with Your Implementation guide.

Manage HCM Role Provisioning Rules Task

Oracle provides predefined role mapping rules for provisioning many of the standard job roles included with the application. However, you can create any additional role mappings you need to control the provisioning of roles to application users using the Manage HCM Role Provisioning Rules task. For example, you can create a role mapping to provision the Channel Sales Manager role automatically to specified sales managers.

Related Topics

• Oracle Help Center guides



About Sales Resources

Sales users who access the applications to participate in transactional activities such as managing opportunities and leads, are known as sales resources. During implementation, you create sales resources and build your resource organization at the same time. After implementation, you maintain sales resources, such as by modifying their organization assignments, adding or removing permissions, creating additional users, and so on.

You can create users directly in the user interface or you can import them from a file.

For more information about creating and maintaining users, see the following guides:

- Oracle Sales Cloud Getting Started with Your Implementation
- Securing Oracle Sales Cloud

These guides are available on Oracle Help Center.

Additional Capabilities for Sales Resources

The following functionality also is available for sales resources:

- Proxy users: Sales resources can designate another resource as a proxy to sign in to the applications and perform tasks on their behalf. Proxy users are helpful when a resource can't perform the tasks in person during a specific period. For more information, see the topic, Proxies: Explained.
- Restricted users: Some sales resources may need access to transactional data, but do not need to modify that data.
 You can create restricted sales resources who can view sales data, but cannot change data. For more information, see these topics: Sales Restricted Users: Explained and Creating Sales Restricted Users.
- Records transfer: When necessary, you can move records, such as opportunities or leads, from one sales resource
 to another using the Mass Transfer feature. For more information, see the these topics: Transferring Records
 Between Users: Explained and Transferring Records Between Users: Procedure.

Related Topics

- Oracle Help Center
- About Oracle Sales Cloud Users: Explained
- Proxies: Explained

Sales Resources FAQ

How does a contract user get access to a business unit?

A contract user gets access to a business unit (BU) as follows: the user is created as a resource and mapped to a resource organization. Since each resource organization is mapped to one or more BUs, the user gets access to the BUs that are mapped to the resource organization.

For example, if the user-to-resource organization mapping is as follows:



User/Resource	Resource Organization
Sophie Black	Resource Org 1
Olivia Turner	Resource Org 2
Bala Gupta	Resource Org 3
Max Quinn	Resource Org 4

and the resource organization-to-BU mapping is as follows:

Resource Organization	Business Units
Resource Org 1	Vision Operations
Resource Org 2	Vision Services
Resource Org 3	Vision Operations Vision Services

then the users will get BU access as follows:

User/Resource	Business Units
Sophie Black	Vision Operations
Olivia Turner	Vision Services
Bala Gupta	Vision Services
Max Quinn	Vision Operations
	Vision Services

Related Topics

Contract Security Setup: Explained

How can existing contract users not created as resources get business unit access?

Existing contract users who were not created as resources can get business unit (BU) access if you make them resources by using the Identify Resource feature.

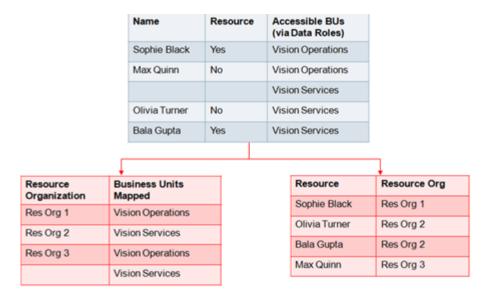


You can use the Identify Resource feature to search for a user and identify the user as a resource through the Add as Resource option. While adding the user as a resource, the user can be associated with a resource organization. Once a user is mapped to a resource organization, the user gets access to the BU mapped to the resource organization.

Can I automate conversion of existing contract users to resources and mapping to resource organizations?

You can use the Migrate Contract Users process to automate the conversion of existing users to resources. Existing users who were not created as resources and mapped to resource organizations can be made resources and mapped to resource organizations automatically by this process.

The following illustration explains how the migration process maps each user to a resource organization:



The migration process creates three resource organizations (org): Res Org 1, Res Org 2 and Res Org 3, and maps the resources as follows: Sophie Black to Res Org 1, Olivia Turner and Bala Gupta to Res Org 2, and Max Quinn to Res Org 3.





5 Setting Up Common Components

Application Toolkit

Define Application Toolkit Configuration: Overview

Oracle Fusion Application Toolkit (ATK) provides many features that are available to users of all product families. These features include Applications Help, the Reports and Analytics pane, and the Watchlist. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Define Application Toolkit Configuration task list to set up some of these components. Use the Define Help Configuration task list to set up Applications Help.

Note: The Define Application Toolkit Configuration task list is available in implementation projects only if the Application Toolkit Component Maintenance feature choice is selected.

Tasks

The Define Application Toolkit Configuration task list contains these tasks:

- Map Reports to Work Areas: Determine what's available in the Reports and Analytics pane for specific work areas.
- Set Watchlist Options: Define settings that affect what's displayed in the Watchlist and how often items are refreshed.
- Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values: Set profile options to affect how some Application Toolkit features work.

Related Topics

- Setting Up the Reports and Analytics Pane: Procedure
- Setting Up the Worklist Region on My Dashboard: Points to Consider
- Setting Up Help: Overview

Attachments

Attachments: Explained

You can use attachments to provide supplementary information to specific business objects. Attachments can be URLs, desktop files, text, or repository folders. For a business object you may view, create, delete, or edit attachments, depending on your role and granted privileges. For more information on attachments, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.



Repository

Attachments are stored in a content management repository provided by Oracle WebCenter Content Server. Users managing attachments can't interact with the repository unless the repository mode is enabled. When enabled, users can share attachments among objects, update attachments, and perform other tasks. Access to the attachment files is controlled by a digital signing mechanism.

Security

Data security applicable to a specific business object extends to its attachments For example, if a user has no access to a specific expense report, then that user cannot access its attachments. You can also use attachment categories to control access and actions on attachments, based on roles associated with that category. For more information on securing attachments, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

Related Topics

- Attachment Entities: Explained
- What's an attachment category?

What is the size limit for attachment files in Oracle Sales Cloud?

As delivered, the file size limit for an individual file associated with an attachment in Oracle Sales Cloud is 100 MB. You can decrease this limit, but you can't increase it. The method for decreasing the limit varies by object.

Sales Cloud objects with a 100 MB limit for each attachment file are:

- Account
- Activity
- Campaign
- Contact
- Forecasting
- Household
- Lead
- Note
- Opportunity
- Partner

Attachments Troubleshooting: Explained

Attachments UIs are very user-friendly and easy to work with. You may encounter issues in certain cases such as you customize the attachments, for example create additional attachment categories, or implement data security on them.

Issue: Can't View, Add, Update, or Delete Attachments

You may encounter the following issues when trying to view attachments or perform actions such as adding attachments.

You can no longer see specific attachments that were earlier visible.



- You can no longer update or delete attachments.
- You get an error stating that you do not have permission to add attachments.

Resolution

Use the Manage Attachment Entities page to ensure that attachment categories are associated to the relevant attachment entity. You might need to check with your system administrator or help desk to determine the exact entity used on the page with the expenses attachments or what categories to assign.

If data security is implemented on the categories for the attachment entity, verify that the Enable Security check box is selected in the Manage Attachment Entities page for that entity. Make sure that users have a role with the privileges shown in the following table, to view, add, update, or delete attachments with a specific attachment category.

Action	Privilege
View	Read Application Attachment (FND_ READ_ APPLICATION_ ATTACHMENT_ DATA)
Add or Update	Update Application Attachment (FND_ UPDATE_ APPLICATION_ ATTACHMENT_ DATA)
Delete	Delete Application Attachment (FND_ DELETE_ APPLICATION_ ATTACHMENT_ DATA)

For example, if users have the Read Application Attachment privilege for all categories associated with the expense report attachment entity, except the Receipts attachment category, then they can view all expense report attachments except those created with the Receipts category. Likewise, if users do not have the Update Application Attachment privilege for any attachment categories tied to the expense report attachment entity, then they cannot create any attachments for the expense reports.

For more information on attachment category data security, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

Certain attachments UI have predefined restrictions for users on categories. Your developers can also introduce additional filters to determine which document categories are available for a specific page. Check with your developers or help desk.

Issue: Missing Attachment Category

You can view existing attachments but the attachments no longer have an attachment category associated with them.

Resolution

When the attachment was added, at least one category existed for the corresponding attachment entity. Since then, the entity was edited so that it no longer has any assigned categories, so the user cannot see the category associated with that attachment.

Use the Manage Attachment Entities page to reassign attachment categories to the relevant attachment entity. For example, if users can no longer see the Receipts attachment category for an attachment to an expense report, then search for the expense report attachment entity and assign to it the Receipts category. You may need to check with your system administrator or help desk to determine the exact entity used on the page with the expenses attachments or any additional categories to assign.

Certain attachments UI have predefined restrictions for users on categories. Your developers can also introduce additional filters to determine which document categories are available for a specific page. Check with your developers or help desk.

Related Topics

Attachment Entities: Explained



- Attachment Entities and Attachment Categories: How They Work Together
- What's an attachment category?

Calendar

Creating the Accounting Calendar

The accounting calendar defines the time periods used in the applications. When you create the calendar, you specify the exact dates for each period. These defined periods, often called enterprise periods, are used for many purposes in Oracle Sales Cloud. Examples include:

- · Reports that provide amounts by enterprise period, such as a sales pipeline analysis
- · Metrics calculations by period for territory analysis
- The ability to adjust forecast amounts by time period
- Distribution of quota amounts by time period

Typically, you create a single accounting calendar as part of your implementation. Setting up your accounting calendar requires the following steps, all of which are covered in this topic:

- 1. Plan your calendar periods and start year. Refer to the Implementation Considerations section for more information.
- 2. Create the first-year calendar periods and generate the periods for each additional year. Refer to the Creating the Calendar section for more information.
- **3.** Set the accounting calendar profile option. Refer to the Setting the Calendar Profile Option section for more information.
- 4. Run a scheduled process. Refer to the Running the Time Dimension Process section for more information.

Note that after your calendar is in use, you cannot change the calendar options. For example, after you've generated forecasts, you can't change the calendar options.

Implementation Considerations

Since you cannot change the calendar after it's in use, you should plan which periods your calendar will use, and decide which year you want the calendar to start. The period frequency set in your fiscal calendar is the shortest period you can use. Therefore, if you set the period frequency to yearly, then your reports and activities can be for each year, but can't be broken down by month. If you set the period frequency to monthly, then you can break down activities and reports by month and summarize by quarter and year. However, if you set the period frequency to weekly, then you can perform activities and reports by week, quarter, and year, but not by month because the number of weeks per month varies. In terms of the first year to use for your calendar, consider setting the date to the first date that your company was created. Then you can upload historical data later, if necessary.

Creating the Calendar

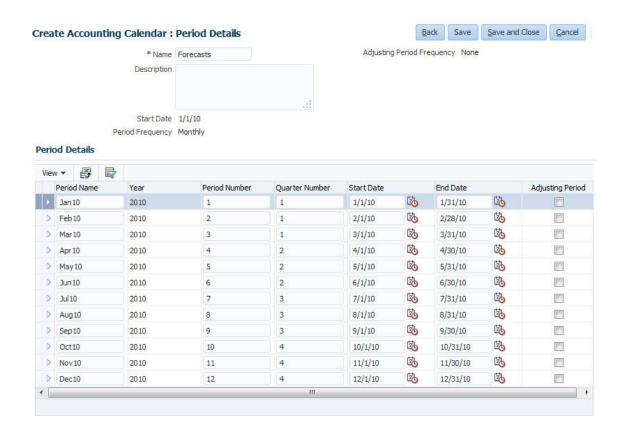
When you create the accounting calendar, you are establishing the exact start and end dates for each period, for each year. Use the following procedure:

- 1. Sign in as a setup user and navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 2. Search for and select the task, Manage Accounting Calendars task.
- 3. In the Manage Accounting Calendars page, click Create.

The Create Accounting Calendar: Calendar Options page appears.



- 4. Name your calendar, for example, sales Calendar.
- 5. Leave the Adjusting Period Frequency set to None.
- 6. For Start Date, the fictional company, Vision Corporation, is using 1/1/10.
- 7. For **Period Frequency**, select the shortest time period you want to use for reports and activities. For Vision Corporation, choose **Monthly**. The period starts on the first of the month and ends on the last day of the month, regardless of the number of days or weeks in each month.
- 8. For Vision Corporation, choose None for the Separator.
- 9. Select the format to use for period names.
- 10. Click Next. The Create Accounting Calendar: Period Details page appears, showing the generated periods, with start and end dates, for the first year (2010 for Vision Corporation). The following figure shows an example of the Create Accounting Calendar: Period Details page.



- 11. If needed, manually change the details for each period.
- 12. Click Save and Close.
- 13. Now you need to generate the periods for each additional year, including the current, or coming year. Open the calendar.
- 14. Click Add Year.
- 15. Click Save and Close.
- **16.** Repeat the last three steps for each year you want to add.
- 17. Click Done.
 - Note: You cannot change your calendar options after you start using the calendar, such as by generating forecasts.



Setting the Calendar Profile Option

After your calendar is created, you next set the accounting calendar profile option. This profile option setting tells the applications which calendar to use. Use the following procedure:

- 1. Sign in as a setup user or the sales administrator and navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 2. Search for and select the Manage Calendar Profile Option task.
- 3. In the Manage Calendar Profile Option page, select the Accounting Calendar Default profile option.
- 4. In the Profile Values table, click **New**.
- 5. For Profile Value, select Site.
- 6. Click the **Profile Value** list, and select the name of the calendar you created.
- 7. Click Save and Close.

Running the Time Dimension Process

You must run the Refresh Denormalized Time Dimension Table for BI process to make calendar time periods available for analytics and reports. Use the following procedure.

- 1. Sign in as a setup user and navigate to **Scheduled Processes**.
- 2. In the Scheduled Processes page, click **Schedule New Process**.
- 3. In the Schedule New Process dialog box, click the down-arrow next to the Name field and click Search.
- 4. In the Search dialog, enter %Refresh%, and click **Search**.
- Select the Refresh Denormalized Time Dimension Table for BI process in the results that are returned and click Ok.
- Click **Ok** again, if needed.The Process Details window appears.
- 7. In the Process Details window, click **Submit**.

Related Topics

Defining Accounting Calendars: Critical Choices

Click-To-Dial

Oracle Sales Cloud CTI: Highlights

Oracle Sales Cloud Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) integrates with your telephony environment and must be manually enabled in your deployment. This topic highlights what is required to set up the CTI feature and to implement logging of the calls made using the CTI feature.

CTI is a feature of the customer contact process. You initiate phone communication to customers and employees with a click of your mouse, leveraging your customer contact information and the application context. The CTI feature uses Oracle WebLogic Communication Services to enable communications. Applications that provide the CTI functionality do so primarily through contextual actions.

Additionally, CTI utilizes Oracle Sales Cloud tasks as an optional transaction logging feature that will track information about the call such as the customer, call participants, a time stamp noting the start time of the call, the direction of the communication, in or outbound, and the resolution code.

Terms used in setting up these communications include:

PSTN: Public switched telephone network is the network of the world's public circuit-switched telephone networks.



- SIP: Session initiation protocol, an open signaling protocol standard that is used to set up phone calls
- TPCC: Third Party Call Control enables an application to control the telephony network to set up calls automatically.
- Oracle WebLogic Communication Services. Offers the TPCC service to Oracle applications and sets up the calls using SIP integration with the telephony network.

The setup task list Define WebLogic Communication Services Configuration includes four tasks required for the correct configuration and implementation of CTI. One optional task, separate from the setup task list, is required for implementing task logging.

You can find information about implementing CTI in the Oracle Sales Cloud Administrator's Guide. Detailed information about configuring and maintaining WebLogic Communication Services is found in the Oracle WebLogic Communication Services Administrator's Guide

Configure and Deploy WebLogic Server

• Deploy WebLogic Communication Services: After the Oracle WebLogic communication server is deployed, this manual task activates the server.

See: Oracle WebLogic Communication Services Administrator's Guide

Integrate Communications Services

Integrate WebLogic Communication Services with Telephony Network: This manual task integrates communications
within the telephony environment. Oracle WebLogic Communication Services must be configured to interface with
the specific characteristics of the telephony network.

See: Managing Oracle WebLogic Communication Services for CTI Functionality

Specify the Domain and Address

Register a URL for the telephony gateway or soft switch for SIP domain: This task defines the Server protocol, defaulted to http, the external server host address, and external server port address. The Associated Modules section is not required for setup. You can also perform this as a manual task using Topology Manager to configure the address of the SIP Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) gateway or SIP soft switch serving the users within that domain. This address is needed by CTI to correctly form the SIP addresses required by WebLogic Communication Services. See the link to Configuring PSTN Gateway Address Using Topology Manager: Worked Example.

Enable Click-to-Dial

• After configuring the server and defining the SIP domain, perform the Enable Click-to-Dial task. This task sets the value of the profile option Enable Click-to-Dial to Yes.

Call Logging Using Tasks

• To initiate the task based logging for CTI, set the profile option Call Interaction Logging Enabled to Yes'

Configuring PSTN Gateway Address Using Topology Manager: Worked Example

This example demonstrates how, during the implementation of the **Register URL for the telephony gateway or soft switch for SIP domain** task, you must manually configure the PSTN gateway address by registering HzCTDPstnGatewayApp to a given environment using Oracle Fusion Topology Registration



These steps configure the address of the SIP Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) gateway or SIP soft switch serving the users within that domain. This address is needed by Click-to-Dial to correctly form the SIP addresses required by WebLogic Communication Services. For example: siP:+1650-555-1212@pstn_gateway.oracle.com;user=phone where pstn gateway.oracle.com is the SIP domain. The SIP domain can also be expressed in the format 10.1.1.1 (IP address).

Configuring PSTN Using the Topology Manager

To configure PSTN:

- 1. Sign in to Oracle Sales Cloud as a user that has application implementation consultant and WebLogic Services administration roles.
- 2. In Setup and Maintenance, click Register Enterprise Applications from the regional area under **Topology Registration.**
- 3. On the Register Enterprise Applications page, click the plus icon to add an enterprise application. An Add Enterprise Application dialog box appears.
- **4.** Enter the new application information: Click **Search** in the Enterprise Application list field. Enter **HzCTDPstnGatewayApp** in the name field and click **Search**.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Enter the other fields in the Add Enterprise Application dialog box.

Field	Value
Name	HzCTDPstnGatewayApp
Server Protocol	SIP This field is ignored by Click-to-Dial. Oracle WebLogic Communication Service (OWLCS) always uses the SIP protocol.
External Server Host	10.143.167.91 (Used as an example) A host name can be used instead of an IP address.
External Server Port	0 (Used as an example) This field is ignored by Click-to-Dial.

7. Click Save and Close.

Messages

Common Messages: Points to Consider

Message names that begin with FND_CMN are common messages. Each common message can appear in multiple places in any product family across Oracle Fusion Applications. For example, the FND_CMN_NEW_SRCH message can be used for any search to indicate that no results were found. Common messages of type error or warning are part of the message dictionary.



Creating and Editing Common Messages

You can create custom common messages for use in multiple places. However, ensure that you follow the predefined naming convention and numbering series associated with the application or module.

Note: Don't use FND_CMN as the prefix for your custom messages because all the predefined common messages begin with it.

Common messages can be used in any application. Therefore, consider the ramifications if you edit any aspect of the message, including incident and logging settings. Changes would be reflected in all instances where the message is used. For example, if you change the message text, ensure that the text is generic and applies to the entire site of Oracle Fusion Applications implementation.

Miscellaneous Features

Setting Up the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses: Points to Consider

A contextual address is marked with an orange triangle that users can click to display the address on a map. The Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option determines the mapping service to use to display the map. Use the Manage Administrator Profile Values or Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values task in the Setup and Maintenance work area to set the profile option value.

Profile Option Default

By default, the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option has no value.

Caution: Until you enter a valid value for this profile option, users get an error when they try to open a map for any contextual address.

Profile Option Value

After you find and select the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option, enter a mapping service URL in the Profile Value column, for example:

- http://maps.google.com/maps?output=embed&q=
- http://maps.yahoo.com/maps_result.php?q1=
- http://maps.live.com/default.aspx?where1=
- http://bing.com/maps/?v=2&encType=1&where1=

You can include parameters in the URL. For example, to avoid a locator box in Google Maps, add &iwloc=& to the URL. So, you would enter http://maps.google.com/maps?iwloc=& &output=embed&q= as the profile value.

Related Topics

Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure



How can I enable the privacy statement?

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, open the Manage Applications Core Administrator Profile Values task and search for the **Privacy Statement URL** profile option. In the profile values section, update the **Profile Value** text box with the full URL of the web page containing the privacy content.

In the global area, click your user name and from the Settings and Actions menu, select **About This Page.**. Click **Privacy Statement** to view the linked web page.

Public Unique IDs: Explained

Using document sequencing, the application generates a unique number (or ID) for each business object record when the record is created in the database. Sales users cannot easily read or use unique IDs because of their length and complexity. As an administrator, you can configure the unique ID that's generated, in order to make it more user-friendly and readable. This user-friendly value is called the public unique ID.

You have these options for setup:

- · Use the default setup, where no implementation steps are required.
- Use the basic setup, which is configurable to a certain degree. If you use this setup, the default setup is not used.
- Use an advanced setup which is more complex and configurable. If you use this setup, the basic setup is not used.

The following table shows the setup options and where to find more information about the setup.

Setup Option	Description	Where to Find More Information
Default Setup	In this setup, no implementation steps are required. The application automatically generates a unique 15-digit numeric ID for each record. The document sequencing begins with a 1.	No additional documentation, other than this introduction.
Basic Setup	In this setup, you set two profile options where you configure the radix (or base numbers and characters) and prefix to use. The application generates an alphanumeric public unique ID instead of the default numeric public unique ID for each record.	See the Public Unique ID Basic Setup section in this topic.
Advanced Setup	In this setup, you define a different radix, starting number, and prefix for each object.	See the Public Unique ID Advanced Setup section in this topic.

Public Unique ID Basic Setup

In the basic setup, you can define a single prefix that is shared across all business objects in the implementation. In addition, you have several different radix values that can be used. Together these values form the public unique IDs.



To perform the basic setup, you set two profile options:

- CRM Public Unique ID String Encoding profile option: Controls the characters used in the encoding of the public unique ID based on a radix, or base number.
- CRM Public Unique ID Prefix profile option: Defines the optional prefix value for the public unique ID.

CRM Public Unique ID String Encoding profile option (ZCA_PUID_RADIX):

This profile option determines the set of numbers and letters used in creating the public unique ID. The default value is null. After you set the radix, the application converts the public unique ID into user-friendly IDs, using alphanumeric characters instead of numeric digits.

The following base values are available:

- Numbers 0-9, letters A-F
- Letters A-Z, upper case
- Numbers 2-9, letters BCDFGHJKLMNPQRSTVWXYZ
- Numbers 0-9, letters ABCDEFGHJKLMNPQRTUWXY
- Numbers 0-9, letters A-Z, upper case
- Numbers 0-9, letters A-Z, letters a-z

The values for the radix are stored in the lookup type, ZCA_PUID_ENCODING. This lookup type is accessible using the Manage Standard Lookups task in Setup and Maintenance.

CRM Public Unique ID Prefix profile option (ZCA_PUID_PREFIX):

In this profile option, you optionally define the prefix for the public unique ID at the site level. After you set this profile option to the prefix you want, application inserts the prefix before the public unique ID base encoded document sequence value. For example, you may want the records for the pharmaceutical divisions of your company to be denoted with public unique IDs and the prefix Pharma or Pharma1, Pharma2, and so on. By default, the prefix has no value.

Keep the following points in mind:

- If you enter a prefix value, you must set a radix value. You cannot use the prefix setting by itself.
- You must define the delimiter, or separation character, in the prefix.
- The concatenated public unique ID and prefix must not exceed the defined field length, which is usually 30 characters.

Use the following procedure to set the profile options.

- 1. Sign into the application as the sales administrator or as a setup user.
- 2. Navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 3. Search for and select the Manage Public Unique Identifier Profile Options task.

The Manage Public Unique Identifier Profile Options page appears.

- **4.** Click the ZCA_PUID_RADIX option.
- 5. In the ZCA_PUID_RADIX: Profile Values section of the page, click the **Profile Option Values** list of values and select the base numbering value.
- Click Save and Close.
- 7. Optionally, click the ZCA PUID PREFIX option.
- 8. In the ZCA_PUID_PREFIX: Profile Values section of the page, in the **Profile Value** box, enter the prefix and the delimiter you want, if any. For example, enter cdrm_.
- 9. Click Save and Close.



Public Unique ID Advanced Setup

In the advanced setup, you can define a different prefix and numbering radix for each object.

Keep the following points in mind:

- If you enter a prefix value, you must set a radix value. You cannot use the prefix setting by itself.
- You must define the delimiter, or separation character, in the prefix.
- The concatenated public unique ID and prefix must not exceed the defined field length, which is usually 30 characters.
- The value in the Starting Number field of the configuration screen determines the length of the numeric portion of the public Unique ID.

Use the following procedure to configure the radix and optionally, the prefix in the advanced setup.

- 1. Sign into the application as the sales administrator or as a setup user.
- 2. Navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 3. Search for and select the Manage Public Unique Identifier Sequence Generation task.

The Manage Public Unique Identifier Sequence Generation page appears.

4. Click Create.

The Create Sequence Generation window appears.

- 5. In the Object list of values, select the object for which you are configuring the public unique ID.
- 6. In the Radix list of values, select the base numbering to use. This list of possible radix values is the same list of values that are provided in the current ZCA_PUID_RADIX profile option.
- 7. In the Prefix box, enter the prefix you want to use for the object and unique ID.
 - Enter a maximum of five characters.
 - The allowed characters are: 0-9, A-Z, a-z, and the following special characters: period, hyphen, comma, and underscore.
- 8. In the Starting Number box, enter the starting number.
 - o Do not use any commas or periods in the number.
 - This value determines the length of the number portion of the public unique ID.
 - o A minimum value of 100,000 is validated when a starting number is specified.
- 9. Repeat for other objects.
- 10. Click Save and Close.

The following table shows some possible prefix and radix values and results.

Prefix	Radix	Starting Value	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	The default setup profile option values are used.
NULL	Numbers 0-9, letters A-F	NULL	You do not need to specify a prefix in order to generate new public unique IDs.
NULL	Numbers 0-9, letters A-F	10000000	You do not need to specify a prefix in order to generate new public unique IDs.



Prefix	Radix	Starting Value	Result
A-	Numbers 0-9, letters A-F	NULL	A public unique ID is generated. The first value generated will be A-0000000001, since the first two characters are used for the prefix and the starting number is not specified; thus, the number 1 is used by default.
A-	Numbers 0-9, letters A-F	4000000	A public unique ID is generated. The first value generated will be A-0004000000, since the first two characters are used for the prefix and the starting number is specified at 4,000,000.

Related Topics

Document Sequences: Explained

Document Sequences: Points to Consider

Notes

Defining Notes: Points to Consider

A note is a record attached to a business object. Notes capture nonstandard information received as you do business. When setting up notes for your application, you should consider the following points:

- Which new note types you want to add.
- How you want to map these new note types to business objects in your area.

Note Types

Note types are assigned to notes when they're created, to categorize them for future reference. During setup you can add new note types, and use a process called note type mapping to restrict them by business object type. When deciding which new note types you want to add, keep in mind how you want your users to search for, filter, and report on these notes.

Note Type Mappings

If you add new note types, you must map them to the business objects you use in your product area. Here are some points to consider when mapping note types:

- When you select a business object other than Default Note Types, you only see the note types that apply to that object.
- If no other note types appear, then note type mapping doesn't exist for that object and the default note types are used. Select **Default Note Types** to see which default note types exist in the application.
- If you modify a default note type, it affects all the business objects that don't have a note type mapping.



Suppose you decide to add a new note type of Analysis for your product area of Sales-Opportunity Management. You use note type mapping to map Analysis to the Opportunity business object. Now, every time you create or edit a note for an opportunity, you see Analysis as an available note type option.

When deciding which note types to map to business objects, you should keep the same considerations in mind that you did when you decided which note types to include.

Related Topics

• Extending Oracle Sales Cloud: How It Works

Task Templates

How can I create a task template that is available to associate with assessment templates?

Create the task template with a subtype of Assessment.

What are the statuses a task can be in?

Tasks can have the following statuses by default. You can change or delete these statuses, or add more to fit your needs.

Status	Meaning
Canceled	The task was canceled.
Complete	The task was completed. You can change this status to another one as needed.
In progress	The task is currently active and being worked on.
Not started	The task has not yet been started.
On hold	The task is not actively being worked on, but has not yet been completed.

If a task is set to Complete, the Percentage Complete field for the task is set to 100% and the end date is set to the current date.

Note: If you change the status of a Complete task to something else, the Percentage Complete field value does not change automatically.



Defining Tasks: Points to Consider

A task is a unit of work to be completed by one or more people by a specific completion date. When using tasks in your application, you should consider the following points:

- Tasks
- Task Templates

Tasks

You define a task with a description, due date, and category. Each task has an owner, who oversees or is responsible for the task, and one or more assignees who perform the work.

The task can be related to a business object, such as an opportunity, a customer, or one or more external contacts. Tasks can also have notes for general information and attachments for tracking e-mail or project documents.

Task Templates

Often, a process includes a set of tasks that are performed repeatedly. To make this easier, administrators can define task templates, which represent a group of tasks. You can use a task template when working on a particular business object. You select the appropriate task template for your process and the application creates the tasks and associates them with the business object being worked on.

Note: Extensibility features are available on the Task object. For more information, see the Oracle Sales Cloud - Customizing Sales guide.

Turning a Business Process into a Task Template: Example

This example illustrates how to create a task template that represents a business process.

Scenario

A sales manager wants to create a task template for her department's client product demonstration process.

Client Product Demonstration Activities

The client product demonstration process occurs regularly. The sales manager does not want to manually create tasks for this process every time it occurs, so she decides to create a task template that includes the business process activities. Each time she repeats the business process, she can use the task template to automatically generate the appropriate tasks that need to be performed.

Analysis

The business process consists of the following activities:

- Book a conference room.
- Create an agenda.
- Confirm the date and time with the client.
- Make arrangements with presenters.



- Deliver product demonstration.
- Follow up with client.

Resulting Task Template

Based on the analysis of the business process, the following task template is created:

Task Template Name: Client Product Demonstration

Task	Category	Lead Days	Duration Days
Book conference room	Preparation	1	1
Create agenda	Preparation	1	1
Confirm date and time with client	Call	5	1
Schedule presenters	Preparation	5	2
Deliver demonstration	Demonstration	7	1
Follow up with client	Call	10	1

Related Topics

Assessment Templates and Task Templates: How They Fit Together

Watchlist

Disabling and Enabling Watchlist Categories and Items: Points to Consider

You can disable or enable predefined Watchlist categories and items for all users. Use the Set Watchlist Options task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Ultimately, what users see in their own Watchlist would be the categories and predefined items that you enable in the Set Watchlist Options page:

- Plus any saved searches that the user is using as Watchlist items
- Minus any categories or items that the user decides to hide using Watchlist preferences
- Minus any items with no results found, if the user decides to hide such items using Watchlist preferences

Any Category or Item

When you disable any category or item, you also disable the processes that calculate the Watchlist item counts. These processes include creating data caches, performing security checks, calling services across domains, running queries, and so on.



Predefined Watchlist Items

An item with the Predefined type represents the actual predefined Watchlist item that appears in the Watchlist. If you disable this type of Watchlist item, then:

- The item isn't available for users to display in their Watchlist.
- The item is removed from any Watchlist where it's currently displayed.

If you disable a Watchlist category, then the category is not available for users to include in their Watchlist. All Watchlist items within the category are also disabled.

User-Created Saved Search Watchlist Items

A Watchlist item with the User-Created Saved Search type doesn't appear in the Watchlist. It controls the display of the **Manage Watchlist** button on pages with saved searches. If you disable this type of Watchlist item, then:

- The **Manage Watchlist** option isn't available on the corresponding page, so users can't use their own saved searches as Watchlist items.
- Any user-defined saved searches (from that page) already used as Watchlist items are removed from the users' Watchlist. The saved searches are still available for searching, but not for the Watchlist.

Watchlist Category

If you disable a Watchlist category, then:

- The category isn't available for users to include in their Watchlist.
- All Watchlist items within the category are also disabled.

Related Topics

- Refresh Intervals for Watchlist Items: Explained
- How can I change predefined Watchlist category and item names?
- Creating Watchlist Items: Procedure
- Displaying and Hiding Watchlist Items: Procedure





6 Setting Up Multiple Currencies

Overview

Setting Up Multiple Currencies in Oracle Sales Cloud: Overview

Oracle Sales Cloud supports multiple currencies, multiple daily rates, and currency rate conversion. If you are going to use multiple currencies, at a minimum you need to:

- Specify corporate currency: You may have already done this step if you followed the currency setup in the Oracle Sales Cloud Getting Started With Your Implementation guide. If so, you do not need to perform this step again.
- Specify the default currency: You may already have done this step if you followed the currency setup in the Oracle Sales Cloud Getting Started With Your Implementation guide. If so, you do not need to perform this step again.
- Import or enter daily currency conversion rates.
- For opportunities integration, set the multi-currency profile option.
- Enable the currencies you are going to use, if you previously disabled them.

For more information, see the topic, Setting Up Multiple Currencies.

Oracle Sales Cloud also supports different currency conversion rate types, allowing your business to maintain different conversion rates between currencies for the same period. Examples of conversion rate types are supplied: Spot, Corporate, User, and Fixed. For more information, see the guide, Oracle Financials Cloud Implementing Enterprise Structures and General Ledger, and the online help.

Implementation Tasks

Setting Up Multiple Currencies

You must complete several steps to enable multiple currencies in Oracle Sales Cloud, as outlined in this topic.

The following are the high-level steps to enable multiple currencies in Oracle Sales Cloud. All of the steps shown in the table are covered in this topic.

Step	Optional or Required	Description
Download the desktop integration installer.	Required	Download and run the installer that allows integration with the spreadsheet where you enter daily currency conversion rates.
Set Sales Cloud corporate currency and rate type profile options.	Required	Set the two profile options that specify default corporate currency and rate type for Sales Cloud.



Step	Optional or Required	Description
Define daily currency conversion rates.	Required	Populate and submit the spreadsheet with the daily currency conversion rates.
Set the multicurrency profile option for opportunities.	Optional	For opportunities, set the multicurrency profile option.
Make the opportunity header currency an editable field.	Optional	For opportunities, make the opportunity header currency an editable field.
Ensure currencies are enabled.	Optional	Ensure that all of the currencies you plan to use are enabled for use.
Ensure setting of the environment profile option specifying default currency.	Optional	Ensure that the profile option for default corporate currency in the applications is set to the currency you want to be the default currency.

After you have enabled multiple currencies, sales users can set their preferred currency for the transactional pages and for business intelligence. For more information, see the topic on currency preferences, linked at the end of this topic.

Download the Desktop Integration Installer

The Oracle Desktop Integration Installer enables integration of a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet into the web applications. Use the following steps to download the Desktop Integration Installer:

- 1. Sign in as a setup user and, in the Navigator, click the **Download Desktop Integration Installer** link in the Tools category.
 - Note: If that link does not work, then in the URL, replace after /homePage/ with /desktop_installer/
 OracleFADesktop.exe. Here is an example: https://domainname:port/homePage/faces/
 AtkHomePageWelcome. The URL looks like this: https://domainname:port/homePage/desktop_installer/
 OracleFADesktop.exe.
- 2. Save the executable (.exe) file to your computer.

If Microsoft Project is not installed on your computer, an error may occur if you select Complete Install. To avoid this error, click OK and then select custom install, and then deselect Microsoft Project Integration.

Set Sales Cloud Default Currency Profile Options

Use the following steps to set the Sales Cloud profile options, Corporate Currency Default and Exchange Rate Type Default.

- 1. Sign in as a setup user and navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 2. Search for and select the task, Manage Currency Profile Options.

The Manage Currency Profile Options page appears.

- 3. Click **ZCA_COMMON_CORPORATE_CURRENCY** and set it to your default corporate currency. The display name for this profile option is Corporate Currency Default. It stores configured corporate currency.
- 4. Save your changes.
- 5. Click **ZCA_COMMON_RATE_TYPE** and set it to the default currency rate type. The display name for this profile option is Exchange Rate Type Default. It stores the default currency exchange rate type.



Define Daily Currency Conversion Rates

Use the following steps to define daily currency conversion rates.

- 1. Sign in as a setup user and navigate to and navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 2. Search for and select the task, Manage Daily Rates. The Currency Rates Manager page appears.
- 3. Click the Daily Rates tab.
- 4. Click **Create in Spreadsheet** and open the CreateDailyRates spreadsheet. In this spreadsheet, you define the start and end dates of your exchange rate (month, year).
- 5. Add some rows to the spreadsheet and enter your data. Enter a maximum of 10 rows at one time for a successful import.
 - Note: The CreateDailyRates spreadsheet does not actually have defined column heads in it. You enter data in columns A through H. Each row has a specific representation in the application when it creates the daily rates. Use the following example data as guidance:
 - o Column A (this is the **From Currency** column): Enter the code for the currency to convert from. For example, enter υsp.
 - o Column B (this is the **To Currency** column): Enter the code for the currency to convert to. For example, enter
 - Column C (this is the Conversion Rate Type column): Enter the rate type used in the conversion. For Sales Cloud, enter corporate.
 - Column D (this is the From Conversion Date column: Enter the start date of the conversion in the format, MM/DD/YY. For example, enter 12/31/2015.
 - Column E (this is the **To Conversion Date** column): Enter the end date of the conversion in the format, MM/DD/YY. For example, enter 12/31/2016.
 - Column F (this is the Conversion Rate column): Enter the currency conversion rate as a decimal. For example, enter 0.800300.
 - Column G (this is the Inverse Rate column): Enter the currency inverse rate as a decimal. For example, enter
 1.249400.
 - Column H (this is the Action column): Enter the action. For example, enter Insert.
- 6. When you are done adding the data, click the **Submit** button in the spreadsheet.
 - After you submit the spreadsheet with the daily rate conversions, the application automatically runs the scheduled process, Import and Calculate Daily Rates. This process automatically calculates and enters inverse rates for you, so there is no need to enter these manually as separate rows. In other words, in the above sample data, there is no need to enter two additional rows with From Currency as EUR, To Currency as USD, and opposite conversion and inverse rates.
 - If successful, a confirmation message displays, saying that all rows were inserted successfully.
- 7. Optionally, to validate that the process ran successfully, navigate to the Scheduled Processes work area and search for the process, Import and Calculate Daily Rates. It should have a status of succeeded.

For more information about daily exchange rates and currency exchange rates types, see the applications help.

Enable Multiple Currencies in Opportunities

Some implementations may require different product lines on an opportunity to use different currencies. You can set up opportunities to use different currencies for the lines by setting the profile option, Multiple Currencies for Opportunity Revenue Lines Enabled.



After you set the profile option, you can use Oracle Page Composer to enable the Currency field as editable at the opportunity header level (see the following section, Make Opportunity Currency Field Editable). Note that with this setup, when a user changes the opportunity currency, the change is propagated to the opportunity product lines.

Use the following procedure to set the profile option to enable multiple currencies in opportunities.

- 1. Sign in as a setup user or the sales administrator and navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 2. Search for and select the task, Manage Opportunity Profile Options.
 - The Manage Opportunity Profile Options page appears.
- 3. Search for the profile option, **Multiple Currencies for Opportunity Revenue Lines Enabled** (the code is MOO REVN ENABLE MULTICURRENCY) and select it.
- **4.** Set to **Yes** to allow different currencies at the line and header levels in opportunities. Set to **No** to disallow the functionality.
- 5. Save your changes.
- ▲ Caution: Do not use Oracle Application Composer to modify the Currency Code list of values for any objects. To modify currency codes, go to Setup And Maintenance and find the Manage Currencies task and related page.

Make Opportunity Currency Field Editable

By default, one currency is set for an opportunity and its product lines. This default currency is a user's preferred currency (if set), or else the corporate currency, as specified in the profile option, Default Currency (FND_CURRENCY). In the opportunity edit page, the Currency list of values is read-only by default. If you have enabled multiple currencies, you can allow users to pick a different currency at the header level by making the Currency field editable using customization. Use the following procedure. For more information about using customization features, see the Oracle Sales Cloud - Customizing Sales guide.

Prerequisites:

- At least one opportunity must be created first, because, in this procedure, you must navigate to an opportunity in Page Composer design view.
- You must be familiar with and follow your organization's guidelines for making customization changes using sandboxes.
- 1. Sign in as the sales administrator.
 - Note: If you sign in as a setup user (or any user who is not part of the resource hierarchy), you will not be able to perform this procedure because you will not have access to opportunities).
- 2. Navigate to the opportunity landing page in the simplified UI.
- 3. Click your user name in the global area and select **Manage Sandboxes**. Create a new sandbox and activate it, or use an existing sandbox to activate.
- **4.** When you are done activating a sandbox, go back to your user name in the global area and select **Customize Work Area Pages**.

The Customize Pages dialog window opens.

- 5. Select a customization layer. For example, you can make changes only for users with a specific job role. Select **Site** to have the changes available to all users in the environment. Click **OK** on the Customize Pages dialog window.
- 6. You return to the opportunity landing page. By default, you start in Design view, which lets you navigate to the component you want to customize. You can tell you are in this view when the **Design** button above the page is highlighted.
- 7. In Design view, select an opportunity name in the opportunity landing page.



- The Edit Opportunity page appears.
- **8.** With the Edit Opportunity page still showing, in the background page, click the **Select** button, next to the Design button. Clicking **Select** activates the ability to edit the page components.
- **9.** Hover around the **Currency** field until a border appears around it, and click the mouse. Two options appear: Edit Component and Edit Parent Component. Click **Edit Component**.
 - The Component Properties: Currency dialog window appears.
- 10. In the Label area of the Component Properties: Currency dialog window, deselect the Read Only option and click OK. You return to the Edit Opportunity page. The Currency field should now appear with a drop-down list icon next to it
- 11. Save your changes by clicking the Close button in the background window.
 - You return to the opportunity landing page.
- 12. Verify the change by clicking the name of the opportunity again and validating that the **Currency** field is a drop-down list that you select.
- **13.** Cancel and return to the opportunity landing page.
- **14.** Select your user name in the global area and select **Manage Sandboxes**. Publish the sandbox that you were working in.

Ensure Currencies are Enabled

By default, all currencies are enabled. Optionally, ensure the currencies you plan to use are enabled. Use the following steps:

- 1. As a setup user, navigate to Setup and Maintenance and search for the task, Manage Currencies.
 - The Manage Currencies page appears.
- 2. In the Manage Currencies page, click **Search** to search for all currencies, without entering any search criteria.
- 3. Ensure that the **Enabled** option is set for each currency you plan to use.
- 4. Save your work.

Ensure Default Corporate Currency Profile Option Setting

The profile option Default Currency (FND_CURRENCY) specifies the default corporate currency for users in the transactional pages of Sales Cloud. The default currency is also used in a user's forecast. By default, the profile option is set to US dollar. You can set this profile option at site level (affecting all users of the environment), at product level, or at user level. Users can set their own currency preference in the Personalization screens available in the user name menu. The setting a user sets for herself overrides the settings set in the profile option screens. Use the following procedure to ensure the default corporate currency is set for your environment.

- 1. Sign in as the sales administrator or as a setup user and navigate to Setup and Maintenance.
- 2. Search for and select the Manage Administrator Profile Values task.
 - The Manage Administrator Profile Values page appears.
- 3. Search for and select the profile option name, Default Currency, or the code, FND CURRENCY.
- 4. Ensure the profile option value is set to your environment's default currency at site level.

To set the profile option for a specific product area or user, create a new row in the table and enter the values as needed.

Related Topics

• Setting Currency Preferences for Analytics



Defining Currencies: Points to Consider

When creating or editing currencies, consider these points relevant to entering the currency code, date range, or symbol for the currency.

Currency Codes

You can't change a currency code after you enable the currency, even if you later disable that currency.

Date Ranges

You can enter transactions denominated in the currency only for the dates within the specified range. If you don't enter a start date, then the currency is valid immediately. If you don't enter an end date, then the currency is valid indefinitely.

Symbols

Some applications support displaying currency symbols. You may enter the symbol associated with a currency so that it appears along with the amount.

Related Topics

- What's the difference between precision, extended precision, and minimum accountable unit for a currency?
- What's a statistical unit currency type?
- Euro Currency Derivation: Explained

Revalue Opportunity Currency Process: Explained

The Revalue Opportunity Currency process manages the effects of revaluation of currency exchange rates on opportunity revenue.

Opportunity revenue is stored in the user-entered currency (also called transaction currency) in the revenue model. The revenue model also stores two exchange rates:

- The exchange rate between the entered revenue currency and the configured corporate currency (as specified in the global configuration during the implementation), in order to facilitate construction of materialized views that roll up revenue metrics along the territory hierarchy.
- The exchange rate between entered revenue currency and the entered opportunity-level currency, in order to
 calculate the opportunity summary revenue amounts as the sum of line revenue amounts. Opportunity line revenue
 amounts can be entered in currencies that are different from the currency specified at the opportunity level.

The process works in combination with two CRM profile options that store corporate currency and rate type:

- Corporate Currency Default: Stores configured corporate currency.
- Exchange Rate Type Default: Stores configured rate type.

Also keep in mind the following behavior of the process:

The process can also be triggered when corporate currency, configured rate type, or exchange rate (or any
combination of these) is modified, either directly through administrator intervention or when these currency
parameters change in the general ledger.



- Only product lines in Open status are targeted by the batch process.
- When updating product lines, the process does not consider whether the revenue is already included in a forecast.
- Forecasting activity is paused when this process executes.

Running the Process

Run the Revalue Opportunity Currency process from the process details screen available from the **Scheduled Processes** option on the Navigator menu. Select the job name Revalue Opportunity Currency.

The following are the steps to run the process in basic mode:

- 1. Sign in as a sales administrator or as a setup user.
- **2.** From the Navigator, select **Scheduled Processes** (within the Tools category). The Scheduled Processes overview page appears.
- 3. Click Schedule New Process.
- **4.** In the search dialog box, search for and select the **Revalue Opportunity Currency** process. The Process Details page appears.
- 5. Click Submit.

The following table shows the logical parameters expected by the batch process:

Parameter	Default	Description	
CRM Common Currency	Stored in the profile option, Corporate Currency Default (ZCA_ COMMON_ CORPORATE_ CURRENCY)	 Configured corporate currency. Passed if corporate currency changes. Program does not check against profile for match. 	
CRM Common Currency Rate Type	Stored in the profile option, Exchange Rate Type Default (ZCA_ COMMON_ RATE_TYPE)	 Configured rate type. Passed if there is a need to reevaluate the conversion rate against a different rate type. If no value is passed, program uses the profile option value. 	
Business Unit Organization ID	No default	Leave blank, and all business units will be targeted. Otherwise provide the specific business unit ID.	
Number of Opportunities per Database Update	500	Oracle recommends that you leave this parameter at the default value or blank (and program uses default value).	
Last Batch Job Run Time Stamp	See Description column	This parameter can be used for batch program reruns. When a few opportunities have failed, the log will reflect all the failed opportunities, as well as provide a time stamp for "Start Batch Job Time Stamp". Enter this time stamp on the second run of the batch program to limit the scope of the batch job to only the failed opportunities.	
Effective Date	System date	Date passed to general ledger (using an API) to calculate the conversion rate. The program	



Parameter	Default	Description
		does not validate that the date must be in the future, so, in effect, any date can be passed.

Impact of Process on Revenue Attributes

The Revalue Opportunity Currency process impacts several revenue attributes, as shown in the following table.

Revenue Model Attribute	Attribute Description/Function	Batch Process Update
CRM_CONVERSION_RATE_TYPE CRM_CONVERSION_RATE CRM_CONVERSION_RATE	These attributes store the exchange rate between revenue line currency and the corporate currency, and are used to construct the materialized views for Closed, Pipeline and Unforecasted revenue metrics along the territory hierarchy. For lines in status category of Open, these attributes are updated whenever a revenue line is created or updated or whenever an opportunity with revenue is updated or saved. • The default for CRM_CURRENCY_CODE is taken from the profile option, Corporate Currency Default (ZCA_COMMON_CORPORATE_CURRE) • The default for CRM_CONVERSION_RATE_TYPE is taken from the profile option, Exchange Rate Type Default (ZCA_COMMON_RATE_TYPE). • CRM_CONVERSION_RATE is calculated using a GL API.	CRM_ CURRENCY_CODE and CRM_ CONVERSION_ RATE_TYPE are updated based on a parameter to the batch program. If these two parameters are passed in, the program uses them to update the revenue tables. If these values are not passed in, the application retrieves the profile option values and updates the revenue tables with them.
REVN_ AMT_ CURCY_CODE	Currency of the revenue (summary or line)	Entered currency. Not updated.
CONVERSION_RATE_TYPE CONVERSION_RATE	These attributes store the exchange rate between revenue line currency and the summary revenue (opportunity level) currency and are used to convert the revenue line amounts to opportunity level currency. For lines in a status category of Open, these attributes are updated whenever the revenue is created or updated or whenever an opportunity with revenues is updated or saved.	 CONVERSION_RATE_TYPE is updated based on a parameter to the batch program. CONVERSION_RATE is updated. Changes if corporate rate types change. Rate is obtained using (conversion_rate_type, line_currency_code, summary_currency_code, and system date).
REVN_AMTDOWNSIDE_AMTUPSIDE_AMT	For summary revenue amounts, these amounts are calculated as the sum of line revenue amounts. These amounts are converted to the opportunity-level currency before calculating the sum. The exchange rate stored in the CONVERSION_ RATE attribute is used to perform the conversion.	 Line revenue is not updated. Summary revenue is recalculated.
LAST_ UPDATE_DATE	WHO column	Updated.



Revenue Model Attribute	Attribute Description/Function	Batch Process Update
USER_ LAST_ UPDATE_DATE	Functional WHO column	Not updated.

Related Topics

- Managing Job Definitions: Highlights
- Setting Up Opportunity Revenue: Points to Consider

Entering Daily Rates Manually: Worked Example

You are required to enter the daily rates for currency conversion from Great Britain pounds sterling (GBP) to United States dollars (USD) for 5 days for your company InFusion America Inc.

In order to load rates using the Daily Rates Spreadsheet, you need to install Oracle ADF Desktop Integration client software. Oracle ADF Desktop Integration is an Excel add-in that enables desktop integration with Microsoft Excel workbooks. Users can download the installation files from **Navigator > Tools > Download Desktop Integrator Installer.**

Entering Daily Rates

1. Navigator > Period Close.

Use the **Period Close** work area to link to close processes and currency process.

2. Click the Manage Currency Rates link.

Use the **Currency Rates Manager** page to create, edit, and review currency rate types, daily rates, and historical rates.

3. Click the **Daily Rates** tab.

Use the **Daily Rates** tab to review and enter currency rates.

4. Click the Create in Spreadsheet button.

Use the **Create Daily Rates** spreadsheet to enter daily rates in a template that you can save and reuse.

- 5. Click in the **From Currency** field. Select the GBP Pound Sterling list item.
- **6.** Click in the **To Currency** field. Select the USD US Dollar list item.
- 7. Click in the **Conversion Rate** field. Select the Spot list item
- 8. Click in the **From Conversion** field. Enter a valid value: 10/1/2014.
- **9.** Click in the **To Conversion Date** field. Enter a valid value: 10/5/2014.
- 10. Click in the Conversion Rate field. Enter a valid value: 1.6.
- 11. Click the **Submit** > **OK** twice.
- 12. Review the **Record Status** column to verify that all rows were loaded successfully.
- 13. Save template to use to enter daily rates frequently. You can save the spreadsheet to either a local drive or a shared network drive.
- **14.** Optionally, edit the rates from the Daily Rates user interface or resubmit the spreadsheet.

Related Topics

- Using Rate Types: Examples
- Using Desktop Integrated Excel Workbooks: Points to Consider



Updating Currency Rates: Worked Example

You are required to change today's daily rates that were already entered. The rates you are changing are for currency conversion from Great Britain pounds sterling (GBP) to United States dollars (USD) for your company InFusion America.

Currency conversion rates were entered by an automatic load to the Daily Rates table. They can also be entered through a spreadsheet.

Updating Currency Rates

1. Navigate to the Period Close work area.

Use the Period Close work area to link to close processes and currency process.

2. Click the Manage Currency Rates link.

Use the Currency Rates Manager page to create, edit, and review currency rate types, daily rates, and historical rates.

3. Click the Daily Rates tab.

Use the Daily Rates tab to review and enter currency rates.

- 4. Click the From Currency list. Select the GBP Pound Sterling list item.
- 5. Click the To Currency list. Select the USD US Dollar list item.
- 6. Enter the dates for the daily rates that you are changing. Enter today's date.
- 7. Click the Rate Type list. Select the Spot list item.
- 8. Click the Search button.
- 9. Click in the Rate field. Enter the new rate of 1.7 in the Rate field.
- 10. Click in the Inverse Rate field. Enter the new inverse rate of 0.58822 in the Inverse Rate field.
- 11. Click the Save button.

Related Topics

Using Desktop Integrated Excel Workbooks: Points to Consider



7 Customizing Reports and Analytics

Customizing Sales Cloud Analytics and Reports: Overview

Oracle Sales Cloud comes predefined with a wealth of business intelligence (BI) analytics and reports that help your sales team monitor and interpret your sales pipeline, team performance, forecasts, activities, customers, and more. If the supplied analytics and reports don't meet your unique business requirements, you can build your own.

This topic provides an overview of customizing analytics and reports. For detailed information, see the online help and the Oracle Sales Cloud Creating and Administering Analytics guide.

Build Custom Analytics and Reports

You use the BI presentation catalog to build and view custom analytics and reports. You can browse the subject areas, which are organized by functional area, such as opportunities, leads, and the like. You can also create custom subject areas. Within each subject area are columns and attributes that you use to create the reports. Each report can have its own layout and format, such as table format or graph format. You can also filter attributes by various criteria.

You access the BI presentation catalog from the Navigator. Click **Reports and Analytics** in the navigator Tools menu.

Customizing Infolets

The Sales dashboard in the simplified UI comes predefined with several infolets, which are configurable portals that provide report summaries based on transactional sales data. Administrators can create custom infolets and display them in the Sales area of the simplified UI.

Related Topics

Oracle Help Center

Custom Analytics and Reports

Creating and Editing Reports: Explained

Use reports to generate and print documents for internal operations, external business transactions, or legal requirements. To meet specific requirements, you may need to create or edit reports to capture different data, or present data in another way.

Report Components

Each report has components that you can customize, as described in this table:

Report Component	Description	Tool for Customizing
Data model	Defines the data source, data structure, and parameters for the report. Multiple reports	Data model editor in the application



Report Component	Description can use the same data model. Each report has one data model.	Tool for Customizing
Layout	Defines the presentation, formatting, and visualizations of the data. A report can have multiple layouts. There are different types of layout templates, for example Excel and RTF.	Depending on the template file type: • XPT: Layout editor in the application • RTF: Microsoft Word • PDF: Adobe Acrobat Professional • Excel: Microsoft Excel • eText: Microsoft Word
Properties	Specifies formatting and other settings for the report.	Report editor in the application

What You Can Create or Edit

This table gives just a few examples of creating or editing reports.

Task	Example
Edit the layout of a report.	Add your company logo to the report output.
Add a new layout to a report.	Design a new layout template that provides less detail than the existing template.
Edit a data model.	Add two fields to the data model used by a report so you can add those new fields to a custom layout for the report.
Create a new report based on a new data model.	Create a new data model based on data from an external system, and create reports using the custom data model.

Accessing Report Components to Customize: Points to Consider

To create or edit reports, you must access the business intelligence (BI) catalog. In the catalog, objects of type Report represent the report definition, which includes report properties and layouts. Data models are separate objects in the catalog, usually stored in subfolders called Data Models.

Accessing the BI Catalog

You can access the BI catalog in any of the following ways:

- In the Reports and Analytics pane, click **Browse Catalog** to open the BI catalog, and find your report or data model in the Folders pane.
- In the Reports and Analytics pane, find your report and select **More** to go to the report directly in the catalog. The data model associated with the report should be in the Data Models subfolder within the same folder as the report.
- Sign in to the application directly (for example: http://host:port/analytics/saw.dll) to open the catalog.



- Sign in to the BI server directly (for example: http://hostname.com:7001/xmlpserver) to open the catalog.
 - O Alternatively, once you are in the catalog using another method, for example, through the Reports and Analytics pane, change the final node of the URL. For example, change (http://host:port/analytics/saw.dll) to xmlpserver. So the URL you use would be: http://host:port/xmlpserver.

Predefined Reports

A special Customize option is available only:

- For predefined reports, not data models.
- Through direct access to the BI server using the /xmlpserver URL. When you find your report in the BI catalog, select **Customize** from the **More** menu.

The Customize option automatically creates a custom copy of a predefined report and stores it in the **Shared Folders - Custom** folder within the catalog. The new report is linked to the original, so that when users open or schedule the original, they are actually using the custom version.

If you don't have access to the Customize option or don't want the original version linked to the new report, then make a copy of the predefined report and save it in the Custom folder.

Predefined Data Models

Don't edit predefined data models. Instead, copy the data model into the Custom folder and edit the copy.

Related Topics

· Saving Analytics and Reports: Points to Consider

Data Structure for Analytics: Explained

The business intelligence (BI) repository contains the metadata that defines which columns you can include in analyses, and the source of that data. The repository is organized into subject areas, which contain folders with the columns.

Note: You can also use the BI repository as a data source for reports.

Columns

This table describes the three types of columns available when you create or edit analyses..

Column Type	Description	Example	Icon for Column Type
Fact	Provides a measure of something, meaning that the values are numbers.	Total	Blue ruler
Attribute	Represents a piece of information about a business object, with values that are dates, IDs, or text.	Start Date	Blue column



Column Type	Description	Example	Icon for Column Type
	Note: Attribute columns can be flexfield segments imported into the BI repository.		
Hierarchy	Holds data values that are organized in a hierarchical manner.	Time, with sublevels: • Year • Quarter • Month	Tree structure of blue rectangles

Subject Areas

When you create an analysis, you first select a subject area, which contains columns related to a specific business object or area. You then open folders within the subject area to find the columns to include.

Folders

Each subject area has one fact folder and a number of dimension folders. Folders can have subfolders.

Fact folders:

- o Contain fact columns.
- Are usually at the bottom of the list of folders and are usually named after the subject area.

Dimension folders:

- o Contain attribute and hierarchical columns.
- Are joined to the fact folder within a subject area.

For example, if your analysis has the Currency attribute from a dimension folder, you see currencies in the results. If you also add the Total fact, then your analysis includes only records with both a currency and a total amount. The more columns you add, the smaller the query set for your analysis.

o Can be common folders, or common dimensions, that appear in more than one subject area.

If your analysis has columns from multiple subject areas, then you:

- Should include columns only from dimension folders that are common to all of those subject areas. At least one such column is required.
- Must include one column from the fact folder in each of those subject areas.

Related Topics

Creating and Editing Analytics: Highlights



Creating Custom Reports: Procedure

Create a custom report when the predefined reports don't provide the data you need. Or, if you want to use a predefined data model, and also want to change other aspects of the report other than layout. Save your custom report to **Shared Folders - Custom** in the business intelligence catalog.

Creating a Report

- 1. Open the Reports and Analytics work area, or the Reports and Analytics pane if available in other work areas.
- 2. Click Create and select Report.
- 3. Select the data model to use as the data source for your report.
- 4. Continue with the wizard to create the report layout, or choose to use the layout editor and close the wizard.
- 5. Define the layout for the report.
- Click the **Properties** button in the report editor to set specific formatting, caching, and processing options for your report.

Setting Up Access

You or your administrator can:

- Create a job definition so that users can run your custom report as a scheduled process.
- Set up the report for scheduling in the Reports and Analytics pane.
- Secure general access to your report and its job definition, if any.

Creating and Editing Analyses Using a Wizard: Procedure

You can use a wizard that guides you through creating and editing analyses. Even though the wizard doesn't give you all available features, you can still use it to make typical changes, for example adding views or filters. For other tasks, such as creating dashboards or deleting analyses, use the advanced business intelligence features.

Creating an Analysis

- 1. Open the Reports and Analytics work area, or the Reports and Analytics pane if available in other work areas.
- 2. Click Create and select Analysis.
- 3. Select the subject area that has the columns you want for your analysis.
- 4. Optionally, add more subject areas or remove any that you no longer need.
- 5. Select the columns to include, set options for each column, and click **Next**.
- 6. Optionally, enter a title to appear at the top of the analysis, above the analysis name that you enter in the last step.
- 7. Select the type of table or graph to include, specify the layout of the views, and click **Next**.
 - Note: At any point after this step, you can click Finish to go to the last step, to save your analysis.
- 8. Optionally, set more options for the table or graph, and click **Next**.
- 9. Optionally, add sorts or filters based on any of the columns you included, and click **Next**.
- 10. If you have a table, optionally define conditional formatting for select columns, for example to display amounts over a certain threshold in red. Click Next.
- 11. Enter the name of your analysis and select a folder to save it in.



12. Click Submit.

Editing an Analysis

- 1. Open the Reports and Analytics work area, or the Reports and Analytics if available in other work areas where you can find the analysis.
- 2. Select your analysis in the pane and click **Edit**.
- 3. Perform steps 4 through 10 from the preceding Creating an Analysis task, as needed.
- **4.** To update an existing analysis, select the same name in the same folder. To save this analysis as a new copy, either name it with a new name or save it in a new folder.
- 5. Click Submit.

Related Topics

- · Reports and Analytics Pane: Explained
- Saving Analytics and Reports: Points to Consider

Creating and Editing Analyses with Advanced Features: Procedure

Even though you can use a wizard to create or edit analyses, you might have to use advanced features for complicated analyses or specific requirements. For example, you can create view selectors so that users can toggle between views within an analysis, or define criteria for filters using SQL statements.

You can also perform other actions on analyses, for example delete them or copy and paste them within the business intelligence catalog.

Creating or Editing an Analysis

- 1. Open the Reports and Analytics work area, or the Reports and Analytics pane if available in other work areas.
- 2. Click the **Browse Catalog** button.
- 3. Click the **New** button, select **Analysis** under **Analysis and Interactive Reporting**, and select a subject area.

Or, select your analysis in the Folders pane and click Edit.

4. Use the tabs as described in this table.

Tab	Task
Criteria	Select and define the columns to include.
	Add filters.
Results	Add views and set options for results.
Prompts	Define prompts to filter all views in the analysis.
Advanced	View or update the XML code and logical SQL statement that the analysis generates.
	Set options related to query performance.



5. Save your analysis.

Performing Other Actions on an Analysis

- Open the Reports and Analytics work area, or the Reports and Analytics pane if available in other work areas where
 you can find the analysis.
- 2. Select your analysis in the pane and click **More**.
- 3. Click More for your analysis and select the desired action, for example Delete or Copy.

Related Topics

- Reports and Analytics Pane: Explained
- Saving Analytics and Reports: Points to Consider

Using the Customize Option for Predefined Reports: Points to Consider

The Customize option automatically creates a custom copy of a predefined report and stores it in the **Shared Folders - Custom** within the business intelligence (BI) catalog. The custom copy includes the report definition, folder structure, and original report permissions, and is linked internally to the original report. You can edit the custom copy of the report, leaving the original report intact. When users open or schedule the original report, they are actually using the custom version.

Benefits of the Customize Option

In addition to conveniently copying a predefined report to the Custom folder, the Customize option:

- Makes it unnecessary to update processes or applications that invoke the report. For example, if the original report is set up to run as a scheduled process, you don't need to change the setup. When users submit the same scheduled process, the custom report runs instead of the original.
- Automatically copies the security settings of the original report.
- Removes the risk of patches overwriting your edits. If a patch updates the original report, the custom report is not updated in any way.
 - Note: The custom report still references the original data model. The data model is not copied. A patch that updates the data structure of the data model might affect your custom report.

Accessing the Customize Option

To access the Customize option:

- 1. Sign in to the BI server (for example, http://hostname.com:7001/xmlpserver).
- 2. In the Folders pane, select the predefined report.
- 3. Select **Customize** from the **More** menu for the report.
- 4. The copied report in the Custom folder opens, so proceed to edit this report.

To edit the custom report again later, you don't need to be in the BI server. Just go to the BI catalog and either:

- Select the Customize or Edit option for the original report.
- Find your custom report in the Custom folder and select Edit.



Related Topics

Saving Analytics and Reports: Points to Consider

Links Between Original and Custom Reports: Points to Consider

The Customize option for predefined reports creates a custom copy of the report that is linked to the original. Consider the following points when you work with both the original and custom versions.

Maintaining the Link Between Reports

The link between the predefined and custom report is based on the name of the custom report and its location within the Custom folder in the business intelligence (BI) catalog.

- If you manually create a report with the same name as a predefined report, and give it the same folder path under the Custom folder, then the new report becomes a custom version of the original. It would be as if you had used the Customize option to create the custom report.
- You can edit the custom report so that it uses a different data model. But if the original data model is updated later, then your custom report doesn't benefit from the change.
- Important: The link to the original report breaks if you rename the custom or original report.

Tasks Performed on Original Reports

This table describes what happens when you use the original report and a corresponding custom report exists.

Task Performed on the Original Report	Result When There's a Custom Report	
Open	Opens the custom report.	
Schedule	Creates a report submission for the custom report.	
Edit	Edits the custom report.	
Delete	Deletes the original report only. If you delete the custom report, the original report is not deleted.	
Сору	Copies the original report.	
Cut and Paste	Cuts and pastes the original report.	
Rename	Renames the original report. The custom report name is not changed.	
	Caution: This breaks the link between the original and custom reports.	
Download	Downloads the custom report.	
Customize	Edits the custom report.	



Task Performed on the Original Report	Result When There's a Custom Report
History	Opens the job history of the custom report.

Related Topics

Saving Analytics and Reports: Points to Consider

Cross-Subject Area Analyses: Explained

You can create analyses that combine data from more than one subject area. This type of query is referred to as a cross-subject area analysis. Cross-subject area analyses can be classified into three broad categories:

- Using common dimensions
- Using common and local dimensions
- Combining more than one result set from different subject areas using set operators such as union, union all, intersection and difference.

Common Dimensions

A common dimension is a dimension that exists in all subject areas that are being joined in the report. For example, Workforce Management - Worker Assignment Real Time and the Workforce Management - Worker Assignment Event Real Time subject areas have Worker, Job, and Department available. These dimensions are considered common dimensions between these two subject areas and they can be used to build a cross-subject area report.

Common and Local Dimensions

The Worker Assignment Details dimension in the Workforce Management - Worker Assignment Real Time subject area is not available in the Workforce Management - Worker Assignment Event Real Time subject area. Therefore it's a local dimension for the purposes of a cross-subject area query between these two subject areas.

Related Topics

Creating a Cross-Subject Area Analysis for HCM: Worked Example

Creating an Absence by Department Report: Worked Example

This example demonstrates how to create an Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher report. In this example, you use a data model that you created using an Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence analysis for reporting on absence data by department.

The following table summarizes key decisions for this scenario.

Decision to Consider	In This Example
Which data model to use?	Use the Absence by Department data model that you previously created.



Decision to Consider	In This Example
Which layout options to use?	Select Landscape and select Chart and Pivot table.
Add any additional charts to the report?	Yes. Add a chart with the same configuration as the graph. Add this chart above the graph. When you click on the different bars in the chart, it will filter the graph by that criteria.
Are filters needed for the report?	Yes. Add filters to the chart, graph, and table to exclude records where the Reason for Absence is blank.
s conditional highlighting needed?	Yes. Add conditional highlighting to the pivot table so that departments with 20 or more absences are highlighted in red.

Creating a Report

- 1. Click Browse Catalog to open the BI Catalog.
- 2. On the OBI EE home page, under Published Reporting, click Report in the Create region.
- 3. In the Create Report window, verify that Use **Data Model** is selected.
- 4. Click Search in the Data Model field.
- 5. In the Select Data Model window, select the absence by department data model that you created.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. On the Create Report page, verify that the Guide Me option is selected, and click Next.
- 8. On the Create Report, Select Layout page, select **Landscape** for the layout.
- 9. Select the Page Header and Page Footer options.
- 10. Select the Chart and Pivot Table option.
- 11. Click Next.
- 12. On the Create Report, Create Chart page, drag Number of Absences and drop it onto the **Drop Value Here** box.
- 13. Drag Reason for Absence and drop it onto the **Drop Series Here** box.
- 14. Drag Department and drop it onto the **Drop Label Here** box.
- 15. Click Next.
- **16.** On the Create Report, Create Table page, review the location of each element in the table to make sure it's formatted correctly.
- 17. Click Next.
- **18.** Select **View Report**, and then click **Finish**.
- 19. In the Save As window, save your report in My Folders, and name it Absence by Department Report.
- 20. Click OK.
- **21.** The report appears.

Adding Additional Details to the Report

- In the upper right corner of the Absence by Department Report tab, click **Actions** to view the options you have for exporting, editing, and so on.
- 2. Click Edit Report.
- 3. Click Edit.
- 4. On the Insert tab, select Chart.
- 5. Drag the Chart component down to the report area, and drop it directly below the report title.
 - When you drag the chart component down to the report area, a blue bar appears that you can use as a guide to decide where to drop the chart. Drop the chart when the blue bar is directly below the report title.
- 6. In the Data Source region, click on Number of Absences, and drag it and drop it onto the **Drop Value Here** box.



- 7. Click on Reason for Absence and drag and drop it onto the **Drop Label Here** box.
- 8. Click on the new graph. A yellow border appears.
- 9. Click in the bottom right corner of the yellow border, and drag the corner out to the right so that the graph occupies the entire page.
- **10.** In the Filter options on the Chart tab, click **Filter**.
- 11. In the Filter window, select Reason for Absence from the Data Field menu.
- 12. In the Operator field, select is greater than or equal to from the drop down list.
- **13.** In the **Value** field, enter 0.
- 14. Click OK.
- 15. Toggle 3D Effect on and off and choose one of the settings, based on your preference.
- **16.** Repeat steps 9 through 14 for the second graph.
- 17. Click on the pivot table to refocus the page on the pivot table. The yellow border appears.
- **18.** In the Filter options on the Table tab, click **Filter**.
- 19. In the Filter window, select Reason for Absence from the Data Field drop down list.
- 20. In the Operator field, select is greater than or equal to from the drop down list.
- **21.** In the **Value** field, enter 0.
- 22. Click OK.
- 23. Click on the cells in the Number of Absences column.
- 24. In the Conditional Formatting region of the Pivot Table Data tab, click **Highlight**.
- 25. In the Operator field, select is greater than or equal to from the drop down list.
- 26. In the Value field, enter 20.
- 27. Click in the Background Color field.
- **28.** In the **Color Picker** window, select Red (ff0000)
- 29. Click **OK**.
- **30.** In the Highlight window, click **OK**.
- **31.** Click **Save** to save the changes to your report.
- 32. Click Return.
- 33. Click View Report.
- 34. In the upper graph, click on the different bars to see how the lower graph filters the results.

Related Topics

• Creating an Absences by Department Analysis: Worked Example

Layouts

Creating and Editing Report Layouts: Overview

The layout determines what and how data is displayed on report output. Each report has at least one layout template. This topic describes the following aspects of report templates:

- Layout templates
- Layout template types
- Overall process of managing layouts
- Deleting layout templates



Layout Templates

To customize a layout, you edit the layout template, which:

- Defines the presentation components, such as tables and labeled fields.
- Maps columns from the data model to these components so that the data is displayed in the right place.
- Defines font sizes, styles, borders, shading, and other formatting, including images such as a company logo.

Layout Template Types

There are a few types of template files to support different report layout requirements.

- RTF: Rich text format (RTF) templates created using Microsoft Word.
- XPT: Created using the application's layout editor, these templates are for interactive and more visually appealing layouts.
- eText: These templates are specifically for Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) and electronic funds transfer (EFT) information.

You can also create and edit other types of templates using Adobe PDF, Microsoft Excel, Adobe Flash, and XSL-FO.

Overall Process to Create or Edit Layouts

Editing or creating report layout, for example using Microsoft Word or the layout editor, involves making the actual changes to the template file. But that task is just one part of the entire process for customizing layouts.

- 1. Copy the original report and save the custom version in **Shared Folders Custom** in the business intelligence (BI) catalog. You create or edit templates for the custom copy of the report.
 - Tip: You can use the Customize option if the original is a predefined report.
- 2. Review report settings for online viewing.
- 3. Generate sample data for the report.
- **4.** Edit or create the layout template file.
- 5. Upload the template file to the report definition. Skip this step if you're using the layout editor.
- 6. Configure the layout settings.

Deleting Layout Templates

To remove a layout template for a report:

- 1. Select your report in the BI catalog and click Edit.
- 2. In the report editor, click View a list.
- 3. Select the layout template and click **Delete**.

Making Reports Available for Online Viewing: Procedure

Some reports are set up so that you can only view them through another application or submit them as scheduled processes. To view your report online while you're editing it, you must define a few settings. When you're done editing your report, make sure that you reset these settings as needed.



Updating Report Properties

- 1. Select your report in the business intelligence catalog and click **Edit**.
- 2. In the report editor, click **Properties** at the top of the page.
- 3. In the Report Properties dialog box, select Run Report Online and deselect Report is Controlled by External Application.

Updating Layout Settings

- 1. Back in the report editor, click View a list.
- 2. Make sure that the **View Online** check box is selected.

Generating Sample Report Data: Procedure

Depending on the type of report layout changes you're making, sample data can be required or optional. You generate sample data, and then load it for use with your layout so that you can map data fields to layout components. For example, for the Start Date table column in your layout, you can set it so that the data displayed in that column comes from the Start Date field in the sample data.

You can generate sample data from the:

- Report data model
- Report viewer
- Scheduler

Generating Sample Data from the Data Model

Follow these steps:

- 1. Select your data model in the business intelligence (BI) catalog and click **Edit**.
 - Tip: If you're not sure which data model is the source for your report, find the report in the catalog and click **Edit**. The data model is displayed in the upper left corner of the report editor.
- 2. In the data model editor, click **View Data**.
- 3. Enter values for any required parameters, select the number of rows to return, and click **View**.
- 4. To save the sample data to the data model, click **Save As Sample Data**.

If you're designing an RTF template, click **Export** to save the file locally.

5. Save the data model.

Saving Sample Data from the Report Viewer

For reports that are enabled for online viewing, you can save sample data from the report viewer:

- 1. Select the report in the BI catalog.
- 2. Click **Open** to run the report in the report viewer with the default parameters.
- 3. On the Actions menu, click Export, then click Data.
- 4. Save the data file.



Saving Sample Data from the Scheduler

For reports that are enabled for scheduling (not necessarily as a scheduled process), you can save sample data from the scheduler:

- 1. Select the report in the BI catalog.
- 2. Click Schedule.
- 3. On the General tab, enter values for any report parameters.
- 4. On the Output tab, ensure that **Save Data for Republishing** is selected.
- 5. Click Submit.
- **6.** Open the Report Job History page.
- 7. On the global header, click **Open**, then click **Report Job History**.
- 8. Select your report job name in the Job Histories table.
- 9. On the details page, under Output and Delivery, click the XML Data Download icon button.

Configuring Layout Settings for Reports: Procedure

As part of creating or editing layout, you can set report properties related to layout. These settings determine, for example, which layouts users can choose from when viewing or scheduling the report. The settings apply only to your report.

Setting Layout Properties

- 1. Select your report in the business intelligence catalog and click **Edit**.
- 2. In the report editor, click View a list.
- 3. Set layout properties, some of which are described in this table.

Setting	Usage
Output Formats	Depending on the requirements for a report, you may want to limit the output file formats (for example PDF or HTML) that users can choose from. The available output formats vary depending on the template file type.
Default Format	When multiple output formats are available for the report, the default output format is generated by default when users open the report in the report viewer.
Default Layout	When multiple layouts are available for the report, you must select a default layout to present it first in the report viewer.
Active	Active layouts are available for users to choose from when they view or schedule the report.
View Online	Select this check box so that layouts are available to users when they view the report. Otherwise, the layout is available only for scheduling the report.

4. Click Save Report.

Layout Templates



Creating and Editing Report Layout Templates Using the Layout Editor: Procedure

The layout editor in the application provides an intuitive, drag-and-drop interface for creating pixel-perfect reports with PDF, RTF, Excel, PowerPoint, and HTML output. The layout template files you create with this tool have an .xpt extension. The layout editor tool is the only editing tool that provides dynamic HTML output. Users can interact with this output in a browser, for example by sorting, applying filters, and so on.

Prerequisite

Make sure that sample data is generated from the data model that your report is using.

Using the Layout Editor

To customize XPT templates:

- 1. Select the report in the business intelligence (BI) catalog and click Edit.
- 2. In the report editor, click **Edit** to update a template.

Or, click Add New Layout and select a template type under the Create Layout section.

- 3. Create or edit the layout.
- 4. Click **Save** to save the layout to the report definition.

Setting Up for RTF and Excel Report Layout Templates: Procedure

You can use Microsoft Word or Microsoft Excel to create or edit RTF and Excel layout templates, in addition to the layout editor in the application. If you use Word or Excel directly, you must download and install the appropriate add-in so that the Microsoft application has the features you need to design report layouts.

Note: If you're designing a new layout for your report, consider using the layout editor instead unless you are an experienced layout designer.

Installing the Add-In

- 1. Open the Reports and Analytics work area, or the Reports and Analytics pane if available in other work areas.
- 2. Click the **Browse Catalog** button.
- 3. Click Home.
- 4. Under the Get Started pane, click **Download BI Desktop Tools**.
- 5. Select the add-in for the type of template you're working with.
 - Template Builder for Word: RTF templates
 - Analyzer for Excel: Excel templates
- 6. Save and then run the installer.

Related Topics

eText Report Layout Templates: Explained



Creating and Editing RTF Report Layout Templates: Procedure

An RTF template is a rich text format file that contains the layout instructions to use when generating the report output. Use Microsoft Word with the Template Builder for Word add-in to design RTF templates.

Prerequisites

Install the Template Builder for Word add-in, and generate sample data.

Using Template Builder for Word

To customize an RTF template:

- 1. If you are editing an existing layout:
 - a. Select your report in the business intelligence catalog and click **Edit**.
 - b. In the report editor, click the **Edit** link of the layout to download the RTF file.

If you are creating a new layout, skip this step.

- Open the downloaded RTF template file in Microsoft Word. Or, if you're creating a new template, just open Microsoft Word.
- 3. Load the sample data that you generated.
- 4. Edit or create the layout template.
- 5. Save the file as Rich Text Format (RTF).

Uploading the Layout Template File to the Report Definition: Procedure

If you're creating or editing a report layout using the layout editor, the layout is automatically saved to the report definition, so you can skip this step. For all other layout types, for example RTF, upload the template file to the report definition after you're done making layout changes.

Uploading the Template File

- 1. Select your report in the business intelligence catalog and click **Edit**.
- 2. In the report editor, click View a list.
- 3. In the table that lists the layouts, click **Create**.
- 4. Under Upload or Generate Layout, click Upload.
- 5. In the Upload Template File dialog box:
 - a. Enter a layout name.
 - **b.** Browse for and select the layout template file that you created or edited.
 - **c.** Select the template file type.
 - d. Select the locale, which you can't change once the template file is saved to the report definition.
 - e. Click Upload.
- 6. Save the report definition.



Related Topics

eText Report Layout Templates: Explained

Custom Dashboards

Creating and Editing Dashboards: Procedure

You can create and edit dashboards to determine their content and layout. In addition to objects in the business intelligence (BI) catalog, such as analyses, reports, and prompts, you can add text, sections, and more to a dashboard.

Creating a Dashboard

- 1. Open the Reports and Analytics work area, or the Reports and Analytics pane if available in other work areas.
- 2. Click Browse Catalog
- 3. Click New and select Dashboard under Analysis and Interactive Reporting.
- 4. Enter the dashboard's name and description, and select a folder to save in.
- 5. With the Add content now option selected, click OK.
- 6. Optionally, add more pages, or tabs, within the dashboard.
- 7. Drag and drop items from the Dashboard Objects or Catalog pane to add content to a page.
- 8. Click Save.
- Note: The first dashboard page is saved with the page 1 name by default. To rename this page:
 - 1. Click the Catalog link.
 - 2. In the Folders pane, select your dashboard.
 - 3. For page 1, click More and select Rename.
 - 4. Enter the new name and click **OK**.

Editing a Dashboard

- 1. Open the Reports and Analytics work area, or the Reports and Analytics pane if available in other work areas where you can find the dashboard.
- 2. Select your dashboard in the pane and click More.
- 3. Click Edit.
- **4.** Perform steps 5 and 6 from the preceding Creating Dashboards task, and make other changes as needed, for example:
 - Remove content from the dashboard.
 - Drag and drop within a page to move content around.
 - Change the layout of a page.

Related Topics

• Saving Analytics and Reports: Points to Consider



Reports and Analytics Pane: Explained

Data Structure

Data Models

Customizing Data Models: Procedure

A data model defines where data for a report comes from and how that data is retrieved. If a data model can't give you all the data that you need in your report, then you can either copy and edit an existing data model or create a new one.

Creating a Data Model

- 1. In the business intelligence (BI) catalog, click the New button and select Data Model under Published Reporting.
- 2. Optionally click the **Data Model** node in the Data Model pane to set properties for the data model.
- 3. Click the **Data Set** node in the Data Model pane to create or edit data sets, which determine where and how to retrieve data.
- 4. Click the **New Data Set** button and select a data set type. It's best practice to use the BI repository as a data source, so you should select either:
 - Oracle BI Analysis: To use columns from a selected analysis.
 - SQL Query: To use a Query Builder tool to define what to use from the repository. Select Oracle BI EE as
 the data source.
- 5. Optionally, to limit the data included in the report output, click the **Parameters** node in the Data Model pane to define variables that users can set when they use the report.
 - Note: The order of parameters is important if there are job definitions defined for reports that use your data model. If you change the order in the data model, you must also update the job definitions.
- 6. Optionally, define other components of the data model.
- 7. Save your data model.

Editing a Data Model

- 1. To edit a predefined data model:
 - a. Find the data model in the BI catalog and click Copy.
 - **b.** Paste within **Shared Folders Custom** in a subfolder that has a folder path similar to the folder that stores the original data model.
 - c. For the data model you pasted, click More, and select Edit.
- 2. Optionally click the **Data Model** node in the Data Model pane to set properties for the data model.
- 3. Click the **Data Set** node in the Data Model pane to create or edit data sets.



Most predefined data models are of type SQL Query, and are set up to get application data from the following tables:

- ApplicationDB_FSCM: Financials, Supply Chain Management, Project Management, Procurement, and Incentive Compensation
- ApplicationDB_CRM: Sales
- ApplicationDB_HCM: Human Capital Management
- **4.** Perform steps 5 through 7 from the preceding Creating a Data Model task, as needed.

Creating a New Data Model for an HCM Report: Worked Example

This example shows how to create a data model for an Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher report. In this example, you create a data model using an absence by department analysis that you created previously.

Creating a Data Model

- Navigate to the Reports and Analytics work area and click **Browse Catalog** to open the Oracle Business Intelligence Catalog.
- 2. On the OBI EE home page under Create, Published Reporting, click More and select Data Model.
- 3. On the Diagram tab, click New Data Set and select Oracle BI Analysis.
- 4. In the New Data Set Oracle BI Analysis window enter a name for your data model.
- 5. In the Oracle BI Analysis field, click **Search**.
- **6.** In the Oracle BI Catalog window, click **Users**.
- 7. Click the name of the person who created the analysis.
- 8. Locate and select the absence by department analysis that you have previously created.
- 9. In the Time Out field, enter 120.
- 10. Click OK.
- 11. Click the Structure tab.
- 12. In the XML Tag Name field for the Department Name, replace the default value with DEPT_NAME, and replace the default value in the Display Name with Department.
- 13. In the XML Tag Name field for the Absence Reason, replace the default value with ABSENCE_REASON, and replace the default value in the Display Name with Reason for Absence.
- 14. In the XML Tag Name field for the Assignment Absences, replace the default value with NUMBER_ABSENCES, and replace the default value in the Display Name with Number of Absences.
- 15. Click the Data tab.
- **16.** On the Data tab, click **View**.
- 17. View the report structure and click Save As Sample Data.
- **18.** Click **OK**.
- 19. In the upper-right corner, click **Save**.
- **20.** In the Save As window, select **My Folders**, and enter Absence by Department Data Model.

Advanced Procedures



Setting Reports Up to Run as Scheduled Processes: Points to Consider

You can create a job definition for predefined or custom reports so that users can run them as scheduled processes. Use the Define Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task in the Setup and Maintenance work area to create job definitions. Otherwise, users can open reports (which are set up to be run online) through the Reports and Analytics pane, or open and schedule them from the business intelligence catalog.

General Job Definition Information

This table describes the general information to enter for your job definition.

Field	What You Enter
Job Type	BIPJobType
Report ID	The path to the report in the catalog, starting with the folder beneath Shared Folders, for example: Custom/ <family name="">/ <product name="">/<report file="" name="">.xdo. Make sure to include the .xdo extension for the report definition.</report></product></family>
Default Output	A default output format.

Parameters

You can define parameters to be available to users when they submit scheduled processes based on your job definition. When users run the scheduled process, the values they enter for the parameters:

- Are passed to the data model that the report is using.
- Determine the data to be included in the report.

The parameters that you define must be in the same order as parameters in the data model. For example, the data model has parameters in this order:

- P START DATE
- P_END_DATE
- P_CURRENCY

You create parameters as follows:

- Start Date
- End Date
- Currency
- Note: Because you define parameters using the list of values sources from the Define Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task, you should not define lists of values in the data model.



User Property

The only user property you need to define is **EXT_PortletContainerWebModule**. Only lists of values associated with the application that you select are made available for parameters in this job definition.

Related Topics

- Managing Job Definitions: Highlights
- Managing List of Values Sources: Highlights

Setting Reports Up for Scheduling in the Reports and Analytics Pane: Procedure

You can set up reports as scheduled processes, which means users can submit them from the Scheduled Processes and other work areas. If you want users to also submit these scheduled processes from the Reports and Analytics pane, then you must configure properties for the corresponding reports.

Enabling a Report for Scheduling

To enable scheduling in the Reports and Analytics pane:

- 1. Select the report in the business intelligence catalog and click Edit.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. On the General tab in the Properties dialog box, enter the following fields:

Field	Value
Enterprise Scheduler Job Package Name	The path for the job definition, for example: / oracle/ apps/ ess/ <pre>cproduct family>/ <pre>cproduct>/</pre></pre>
Enterprise Scheduler Job Definition Name	The job definition name (not display name), for example: ABCDEFG

Related Topics

• Setting Up the Reports and Analytics Pane: Procedure

Enabling Descriptive Flexfields for Oracle Business Intelligence: Procedure

You can use descriptive flexfields in Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence. If you haven't already created flexfield segments, you first create them, then deploy them, and then import them into Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence. After you import your descriptive flexfields into Transactional Business Intelligence, you can create analyses that include the flexfield segments.

To use descriptive flexfields with Transactional Business Intelligence:

Define flexfield segments.



- Run the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process.
- Create an analysis in Transactional Business Intelligence.

Defining Flexfield Segments

To define flexfield segments:

- 1. Navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 2. Open the Mange Descriptive Flexfields task.
- 3. Search for and select the flexfield code that you want to use, and edit it.
- 4. Select the BI Enabled option.
- 5. Save the flexfield and deploy it.

Running the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence Process

To run the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process:

- 1. Navigate to the Scheduled Processes page.
- 2. In the Search Results region of the Overview page, click Schedule New Process.
- 3. In the Schedule New Process window, click the **Search: Name** arrow in the Name field, and click the **Search** link at the bottom of the list.
- **4.** In the Search and Select: Name window, enter Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence in the **Name** field.
- 5. Select the row for Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence, and click **OK**.
- 6. In the Schedule New Process window, click OK.
- 7. In the Process Details window, click **Submit**.
- 8. In the Confirmation window, click OK.
- 9. In the Process Details window, click Close.
- **10.** On the Scheduled Processes, Overview page, enter Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence in the **Name** field.
- 11. Click **Search** to see the status of the job.
 - Note: The job may take several minutes, depending on your system.

Creating an Analysis in Transactional Business Intelligence

After you have successfully run the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process:

- In the Navigator menu under Tools, select Reports and Analytics.
- 2. In the Reports and Analytics work area, click Create and select Analysis.
- In the Select Subject Area window, find and select the subject area that contains the flexfield that you deployed and imported.

Related Topics

Human Capital Management Descriptive Flexfields for Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence



What happens to customized analytics and reports when a patch is applied?

All custom analytics and reports are preserved if you save them in the Custom subfolder within Shared Folders, or in My Folders in the business intelligence (BI) catalog. Changes to predefined analytics and reports outside the Custom folder are preserved only if the patch doesn't include a new version of those BI objects. If the patch does include a new version of a predefined object that you edited outside the Custom folder, then:

- The new version overwrites the existing predefined object.
- A copy of the existing object (with your edits) is automatically created in the same folder, with a new name that indicates it's a custom version.

If the patch includes a new version of both the predefined object and a folder in its file path, then:

- The new folder, along with the new version of the object, overwrites the existing predefined folder and object.
- A copy of the existing folder (along with your edited object) is automatically created. The folder is renamed to indicate that it's a custom version, but your edited object is not renamed.

Note: Future patches won't affect renamed custom objects or anything within a renamed custom folder.





8 Configuring Profile Options and Lookups

Profile Options, Lookups, and Scheduled Processes: Overview

In Oracle Sales Cloud, profile options, lookup types, and scheduled processes let you configure application behavior and refresh data.

Briefly, the following are the purposes of profile options, lookup types, and scheduled processes:

- · Profile options: Let you configure the application behavior.
- Lookup types: Provide the lists of values in applications. Many lookup types can be customized to fit your business needs.
- Scheduled processes: Refresh data in the applications.

You can find additional information on profile options, lookup types, and scheduled processes in this chapter and in the related topics.

Related Topics

- How can I access predefined profile options?
- How can I access predefined lookups?
- Viewing Details About Predefined Scheduled Processes: Procedure

Profile Options

Profile Options: Explained

Profile options let you configure and control application data centrally. Administrators and setup users manage profile options in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Profile options store various kinds of information. The following table lists some examples.

Type of Information	Profile Option Setting Example
User preferences	Provides access to social networking features
Installation information	Identifies the location of a portal
Configuration choices	Changes UI skins and behaviors



Type of Information	Profile Option Setting Example
Processing options	Determines how much information to log

Profile Option Hierarchy Levels

Profile options can be set at different levels, such as site level or user level. The application gives precedence to certain levels over others, when multiple levels are set. The allowed levels come preconfigured with the application.

In the predefined profile option levels, the hierarchy levels and their precedence are:

- 1. User: This level affects only the current user. It has the highest precedence, over Site and Product.
- 2. Product: This level affects a product or product family. The application gives it priority over Site level. However, if the user level is set, the user level takes precedence.
- 3. Site: This level affects all applications for a given implementation. The application gives it the lowest precedence when other levels are set. If no other levels are set, however, it is the highest level.

As a best practice, set site-level profile option values before specifying values at any other level (where available). The profile option values specified at the site-level work as the default until profile option values are specified at the other levels.

The following table shows an example of the predefined profile option hierarchy levels and their priorities.

Level	Priority	Example
Site	Lowest	Currency for a site is set to Euros.
Product	Supersedes Site	Currency for the product or set of products is set to UK pound sterling.
User	Highest, supersedes Product	Currency for a user is set to US dollars.

You can find additional information on profile options in the related topics.

Related Topics

- How can I access predefined profile options?
- Profile Options and Related General Preferences: How They Work Together
- Profile Options: Overview

Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure

Each profile option contains specific values that determine how it affects the application. You can add or modify the values for each profile option. Select or enter the value for one or more of the available levels (site, product, and user) so that each setting takes effect at the intended level.

Setting the Profile Value

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for and open the **Manage Administrator Profile Values** task.
- 2. Search for and select the profile option.



- 3. In the Profile Values section, click Add. A new row is added for you to specify the following conditions:
 - Profile Level: Specify the level at which the profile value is to be set. If the profile value applies to the entire site, select Site.
 - Product Name: If you select **Product** as the profile level, select a product and specify the associated profile value.
 - User Name: If you select **User** as the profile level, select the user name and specify the associated profile value.
 - Profile Value: Select or enter the value corresponding to the selected profile level.
 - Note: For an existing entry, you can modify only the profile value.
- 4. Repeat step 3 to add more rows and set the profile values.
- 5. Click Save and Close.
- Note: Changes in the profile values take effect for a user on the next sign in.

Creating and Editing Profile Options: Procedure

Use profile options to centrally manage user preferences and control the general function of applications. For example, you can control user preferences involving language, date, time, currency, and other similar general settings.

You can create a profile option and also determine the level at which that profile option takes effect. You can also define the profile values for the profile option. The profile values appear on the Manage Administrator Profile Values page when you select the profile option.

Creating a Profile Option

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for and open the **Manage Profile Options** task.
- 2. Click Actions New.
- 3. On the Create Profile Option page, fill all the fields with relevant details with specific attention to the following:
 - Use the SQL Validation field to provide an SQL statement that displays the permissible profile values to be used. Using an SQL statement, you can select the values from another table and display them as a list of values.

For example, to display the values **Yes** and **No** from a lookup table, you can use the following SQL statement:

select MEANING, LOOKUP_CODE from FND_LOOKUPS where LOOKUP_TYPE='YES_NO'

As a result, on the **Manage Administrator Profile Values** page, the profile values Yes and No are available for selection for that profile option.

- You can specify a date range to keep the profile option active during that period. Beyond the specified duration, the profile option automatically becomes inactive. If you no longer require the profile option, you must manually delete it from the **Manage Profile Options** page.
- 4. Click Save and Close.
- 5. On the Manage Profile Options page, search for the newly created profile option and from the results, select it.
- 6. In the Profile Option Levels section, do the following:
 - a. Under **Enabled**, select the levels at which you want to enable the profile option.



- Note: You can enable a profile option at multiple levels, but a higher-level profile value overrides a lower-level value. Therefore, enable them only at the required levels.
- **b.** Under **Updatable**, select the profile level at which you want implementors to have update privileges. Leave the check box deselected if you don't want the implementors to modify the profile values (they appear in read-only mode).
- 7. Click Save and Close.

To edit a profile option that you created, search for it and edit the necessary details.

Related Topics

• Hierarchy in Profile Levels: Explained

Lookups

Lookup Types: Explained

Lookup types in Oracle Sales Cloud provide the lists of values in application fields that are drop-down lists. For example, when closing an opportunity, salespeople can pick a reason that an opportunity was won or lost from the Win/Loss Reason field, which is a drop-down list. The values in that list are derived from the lookup type, MOO_WIN_LOSS_REASON, which has several potential values known as lookups, each with its own unique lookup code and a meaning that displays in the UI.

Customizing Lookup Types

You can customize many lookup types during or after implementation. The customization level of a lookup type determines whether the lookups in that lookup type can be edited. The customization levels are: User, Extensible, and System.

The following table shows which lookup management tasks are allowed at each customization level.

Allowed Task	User	Extensible	System
Deleting a lookup type	Yes	No	No
Inserting new codes	Yes	Yes	No
Changing the wording that displays on the page (Meaning field)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Updating start date, end date, and enabled fields	Yes	Yes, only if the code is not predefined data	No
Deleting codes	Yes	Yes, only if the code is not predefined data	No
Updating tags	Yes	No	No



Allowed Task	User	Extensible	System
Updating module	Yes	No	No

If a product depends on a lookup type, the customization level must be system or extensible to prevent deletion. Once the customization level is set for a lookup type, it cannot be modified. The customization level for lookup types created using the Define Lookups page is by default set at the User level.

Sales Cloud Lookup Types

You can find lookup types by searching for an associated setup task in the Setup and Maintenance work area. Lookup types are grouped by task or task list. Each task or task list provides access only to certain lookup types. However, the generic tasks provide access to all lookups types of a kind, such as all common lookups that are associated with the Manage Common Lookups task. Lookups defined for a specific application are managed using a task or task list associated with that application. Here are some of the common Sales Cloud lookup tasks or task lists:

- Define Opportunity Management Lookups
- Manage Contact Lookups
- Manage Customer Account Lookups
- Manage Customer Center Lookups
- Manage Partner Lookups
- Quota Management Lookups

You can find many other Sales Cloud lookups in the Manage Standard Lookups task.

To access Sales Cloud lookup types:

- 1. Sign in to the application as the sales administrator or a setup user.
- 2. Navigate to Setup and Maintenance.
- 3. Search for and select the task or task list for the lookups you want to find. For example, you can search on the word lookups to find all tasks or task lists containing that word. Or, if you know the name of the lookups task or task list, you can search for it directly. For example, you can search for Define Opportunity Management Lookups.
- **4.** After you're in the lookup types page, in the search utility, search for a lookup type. For example, in the Lookup Type field, enter COMMUNICATION_TYPE.

Set-Enabled Lookup Types

Several applications support lookup types at the reference set level, allowing you to present different lists of values for different business units. You can find these in the Manage Set Enabled Lookups task.

Related Topics

- How can I access predefined lookups?
- Why can't I see my lookup types?
- Reference Data Sets: Explained

How can I edit lookups?

On the Define Lookups page, you can edit the existing lookup codes of a lookup type or add new lookup codes. To open the page, navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area and search for the Define Lookup task list.



The task list contains three tasks:

- Standard Lookups
- Common Lookups
- Set-enabled Lookups

Each task contains a predefined set of lookup types classified and stored as per the functionality. Open a task to search and edit the required lookup. However, you may not be able to edit a lookup if its customization level doesn't support editing.

Why can't I see my lookup types?

Lookup types are classified using tasks that involve a group of related lookups, such as Manage Geography Lookups. Each task gives you access only to certain lookup types. However, the generic tasks provide access to all lookups types of a kind, such as common lookups associated with the Manage Common Lookups task.

If the lookup types in an application are available in the standard, common, or set-enabled lookups view, they are central to an application. However, lookup types defined for a specific application are managed using the task or task list for that application.



9 Setting Up Contracts Common Configurations

Specifying Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties

Contract Security Setup: Explained

The contract security model provides different levels of access to administrator and non-administrator users. Contract security works as follows:

- You must be designated as a resource to be able to create or edit a contract.
- Only a resource or resource organization can be team members of a contract.

The list of business units (BU) that a user can access is based on the resource organization to which the user is mapped as a resource.

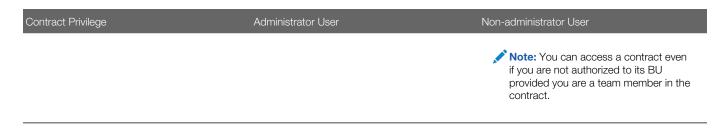
Users can be of two types: administrator and non-administrator users, whose access is as follows:

- Administrator users can create or edit contracts in all the business units they are authorized to.
- Non-administrator user access to the contracts is controlled by team membership as follows:
 - o They can create contracts in all the business units they are authorized to.
 - They can also view and edit contracts of other business units provided they are team members in those contracts.
 - All the managers of the organization in the upward resource hierarchy of a team member can also access the contract.
 - o All the users below the hierarchy are also authorized to the contract.

The following table clearly illustrates the user access scenario:

Contract Privilege	Administrator User	Non-administrator User
Creating a contract	Can create contracts in all the BUs that he/ she is authorized to, based on resource/ resource organization mapping.	Can create contracts in all the BUs that he/ she is authorized to, based on resource/ resource organization mapping.
Editing a contract	Can edit all the contracts of the BUs that he/ she is authorized to.	Can edit all the contracts in which he/she is a team member.
		Note: Though a user is authorized to a BU, he/she may not be authorized to all contracts in that BU.





Customer Contracts Business Unit Setup: Explained

Using the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** task, available by navigating to Setup and Maintenance work area and searching on the task name, you can specify a wide variety of business function settings for customer contracts in a specific business unit. The selections you make for these business functions impact how Oracle Enterprise Contracts behaves during contract authoring.

Using the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** task, manage these business function properties:

- Enable related accounts
- Set currency conversion details
 - Note: You must select a default currency in the customer or supplier business function properties page, if not populated automatically from the ledger assigned to the business unit in the assign business function setup task.
- Manage project billing options
- Set up clause numbering
- Set up the Contract Terms Library

The setup options available for the Contract Terms Library are applicable to both customer and supplier contracts, and are described in the business unit setup topic for the Contract Terms Library. That topic is available as a related link to this topic.

Enabling Related Customer Accounts

Contract authors can specify bill-to, ship-to, and other accounts for the parties in a contract. Enable the related customer accounts option if you want accounts previously specified as related to the contract party to be available for selection.

Managing Currency Conversion Options

If your organization plans to transact project-related business in multiple currencies, then select the multicurrency option. This allows a contract author to override a contract's currency, which defaults from the ledger currency of the business unit. It also enables the contract author to specify currency conversion attributes to use when converting from the bill transaction currency to the contract currency and from the invoice currency to the ledger currency.

In the Bill Transaction Currency to Contract Currency region, enter currency conversion details that will normally be used, by all contracts owned by this business unit, to convert transaction amounts in the bill transaction currency to the contract currency. Newly created contracts contain the default currency conversion values, but you can override the values on any contract, if needed.



In the Invoice Currency to Ledger Currency region:

- Enter invoice transaction conversion details if the invoice and ledger currencies can be different.
- Enter revenue transaction conversion details if the revenue and ledger currencies can be different for as-incurred and rate-based revenue.

Managing Project Billing Options

The options available for selection in the Project Billing region control the behavior of project invoicing and revenue recognition for contracts with project-based work. Project billing can behave differently for external contracts (customer billing) or intercompany and interproject contracts (internal billing).

Set these options, which apply to all contracts:

- Select the Transfer Revenue to General Ledger option if you want to create revenue accounting events and
 entries, and transfer revenue journals to the general ledger. If this option is not selected, then revenue can still be
 generated, but will not be transferred to the general ledger.
- Indicate if a reason is required for credit memos that are applied to invoices.

There are two sets of the following options, one for customer billing and a second for internal billing:

- Select an invoice numbering method, either Manual or Automatic. The invoice numbering method is the method
 that Oracle Fusion Receivables uses to number its invoices, upon release of draft invoices from Project Billing.
 - If the invoice numbering method is **Manual**, then select an invoice number type, which sets the type of Receivables invoice numbers that are allowed. Valid values are **Alphanumeric** and **Numeric**.
 - If the invoice numbering method is **Automatic**, then enter the next invoice number to use when generating Receivables invoice numbers.
- Select the Receivables batch source to use when transferring invoices to Receivables.

Set this option only for customer billing:

 Indicate if you want contract authors to manually enter the Receivables transaction type on the customer contracts they create.

Managing Clause Numbering

You can choose to number clauses manually or automatically.

If you choose the automatic numbering method, you must select a determinant level for the numbering. You must then select the appropriate clause sequence category from document sequences that you set up for this numbering level.

Contract Terms Library Business Unit Setup: Explained

You can specify a wide variety of Contract Terms Library settings for either customer or supplier contracts within each business unit, by using either the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** or the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** tasks. These tasks are available by navigating to the **Setup and Maintenance** work area and searching on the task name.

For the Contract Terms Library in each business unit, you can:

- Enable clause and template adoption.
- Set the clause numbering method.



- Set the clause numbering level for automatic clause numbering of contracts.
- For a contract with no assigned ledger or legal entity, set the document sequence to Global or Business Unit level.
- Enable the Contract Expert enabling feature.
- Specify the layout for printed clauses and contract deviation reports.

Enabling Clause Adoption

If you plan to use clause adoption in your implementation, then set up the following:

1. Specify a global business unit

You must designate one of the business units in your organization as the global business unit by selecting the **Global Business Unit** option. This makes it possible for the other local business units to adopt and use approved content from that global business unit. If the **Global Business Unit** option is not available for the business unit you are setting up, this means that you already designated another business unit as global.

2. Enable automatic adoption

If you are implementing the adoption feature, then you can have all the global clauses in the global business unit automatically approved and available for use in the local business by selecting the **Autoadopt Global Clauses** option. If you do not select this option, the employee designated as the Contract Terms Library Administrator must approve all global clauses before they can be adopted and used in the local business unit. This option is available only for local business units.

3. Specify the administrator who approves clauses available for adoption

You must designate an employee as the Contract Terms Library administrator if you are using adoption. If you do not enable automatic adoption, then the administrator must adopt individual clauses or localize them for use in the local business unit. The administrator can also copy over any contract terms templates created in the global business unit. The clauses and contract terms templates available for adoption are listed in the administrator's Terms Library work area.

Setting Clause Numbering Options

You can set up automatic clause numbering for the clauses in the business unit by selecting Automatic in the **Clause Numbering** field and setting the clause numbering level. Then select the appropriate clause sequence category for the specified numbering level. You must have previously set up document sequences for the document sequence categories of global, ledger, and business unit. If clause numbering is manual, contract terms library administrators must enter unique clause numbers each time they create a clause.

You can choose to display the clause number in front of the clause title in contracts by selecting the **Display Clause Number in Clause Title** option.

Enabling Contract Expert

You must select the **Enable Contract Expert** option to be able to use the Contract Expert feature in a business unit. This setting takes precedence over enabling Contract Expert for individual contract terms templates.

Specifying the Printed Clause and Deviations Report Layouts

For each business unit, you can specify the Oracle BI Publisher RTF file that serves as the layout for:

The printed contract terms

Enter the RTF file you want used for formatting the printed clauses in the Clause Layout Template field.

The contract deviations report



The RTF file you select as the **Deviations Layout Template** determines the appearance of the contract deviations report PDF. This PDF is attached to the approval notification sent to contract approvers.

Related Topics

- How the Selection of a Business Unit Affects Clauses and Other Objects in the Library
- Contract Expert: How It Works

Specifying Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties

Supplier Contracts Business Unit Setup: Explained

You can specify a variety of business function settings for supplier contracts in a specific business unit using the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** task, available by selecting Setup and Maintenance from the Navigator and searching on the task name.

The selections you make for these business functions impact how the Contract Terms Library behaves during supplier contract authoring.

✓ Note: The customer must select a default currency in the customer or supplier business function properties page, if not automatically populated from the ledger assigned to the business unit in the assign business function setup task.

Managing Contract Terms Library Setup Options

The setup options available for the Contract Terms Library are applicable to both customer and supplier contracts, and are described in the business unit setup topic for the Contract Terms Library. That topic is available as a related link to this topic.

Contract Terms Library Business Unit Setup: Explained

You can specify a wide variety of Contract Terms Library settings for either customer or supplier contracts within each business unit, by using either the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** or the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** tasks. These tasks are available by navigating to the **Setup and Maintenance** work area and searching on the task name.

For the Contract Terms Library in each business unit, you can:

- Enable clause and template adoption.
- Set the clause numbering method.
- Set the clause numbering level for automatic clause numbering of contracts.
- For a contract with no assigned ledger or legal entity, set the document sequence to Global or Business Unit level.
- Enable the Contract Expert enabling feature.
- Specify the layout for printed clauses and contract deviation reports.



Enabling Clause Adoption

If you plan to use clause adoption in your implementation, then set up the following:

- 1. Specify a global business unit
 - You must designate one of the business units in your organization as the global business unit by selecting the **Global Business Unit** option. This makes it possible for the other local business units to adopt and use approved content from that global business unit. If the **Global Business Unit** option is not available for the business unit you are setting up, this means that you already designated another business unit as global.
- 2. Enable automatic adoption
 - If you are implementing the adoption feature, then you can have all the global clauses in the global business unit automatically approved and available for use in the local business by selecting the **Autoadopt Global Clauses** option. If you do not select this option, the employee designated as the Contract Terms Library Administrator must approve all global clauses before they can be adopted and used in the local business unit. This option is available only for local business units.
- 3. Specify the administrator who approves clauses available for adoption You must designate an employee as the Contract Terms Library administrator if you are using adoption. If you do not enable automatic adoption, then the administrator must adopt individual clauses or localize them for use in the local business unit. The administrator can also copy over any contract terms templates created in the global business unit. The clauses and contract terms templates available for adoption are listed in the administrator's Terms Library work area.

Setting Clause Numbering Options

You can set up automatic clause numbering for the clauses in the business unit by selecting Automatic in the **Clause Numbering** field and setting the clause numbering level. Then select the appropriate clause sequence category for the specified numbering level. You must have previously set up document sequences for the document sequence categories of global, ledger, and business unit. If clause numbering is manual, contract terms library administrators must enter unique clause numbers each time they create a clause.

You can choose to display the clause number in front of the clause title in contracts by selecting the **Display Clause Number in Clause Title** option.

Enabling Contract Expert

You must select the **Enable Contract Expert** option to be able to use the Contract Expert feature in a business unit. This setting takes precedence over enabling Contract Expert for individual contract terms templates.

Specifying the Printed Clause and Deviations Report Layouts

For each business unit, you can specify the Oracle BI Publisher RTF file that serves as the layout for:

- The printed contract terms
 Enter the RTF file you want used for formatting the printed clauses in the Clause Layout Template field.
- The contract deviations report
 The RTF file you select as the **Deviations Layout Template** determines the appearance of the contract deviations report PDF. This PDF is attached to the approval notification sent to contract approvers.

Related Topics

How the Selection of a Business Unit Affects Clauses and Other Objects in the Library



• Contract Expert: How It Works

Manage Contract Note Types

Defining Notes: Points to Consider

A note is a record attached to a business object. Notes capture nonstandard information received as you do business. When setting up notes for your application, you should consider the following points:

- Which new note types you want to add.
- How you want to map these new note types to business objects in your area.

Note Types

Note types are assigned to notes when they're created, to categorize them for future reference. During setup you can add new note types, and use a process called note type mapping to restrict them by business object type. When deciding which new note types you want to add, keep in mind how you want your users to search for, filter, and report on these notes.

Note Type Mappings

If you add new note types, you must map them to the business objects you use in your product area. Here are some points to consider when mapping note types:

- When you select a business object other than Default Note Types, you only see the note types that apply to that object.
- If no other note types appear, then note type mapping doesn't exist for that object and the default note types are used. Select **Default Note Types** to see which default note types exist in the application.
- If you modify a default note type, it affects all the business objects that don't have a note type mapping.

Suppose you decide to add a new note type of Analysis for your product area of Sales-Opportunity Management. You use note type mapping to map Analysis to the Opportunity business object. Now, every time you create or edit a note for an opportunity, you see Analysis as an available note type option.

When deciding which note types to map to business objects, you should keep the same considerations in mind that you did when you decided which note types to include.

Related Topics

• Extending Oracle Sales Cloud: How It Works

Manage Contract Descriptive Flexfields

Descriptive Flexfields: Explained

Use descriptive flexfields to add custom attributes to business object entities, and define validation for them.

All the business object entities that you can use in the application are enabled for descriptive flexfields. However, configuring descriptive flexfields is an optional task.



Context

A descriptive flexfield can have only one context segment to provide context sensitivity. The same underlying database column can be used by different segments in different contexts.

For example, you can define a Dimensions context that uses the following attributes:

- ATTRIBUTE1 column for height
- ATTRIBUTE2 column for width
- ATTRIBUTE3 column for depth

You can also define a Measurements context that uses the same columns for other attributes:

- ATTRIBUTE1 column for weight
- ATTRIBUTE2 column for volume
- ATTRIBUTE3 column for density

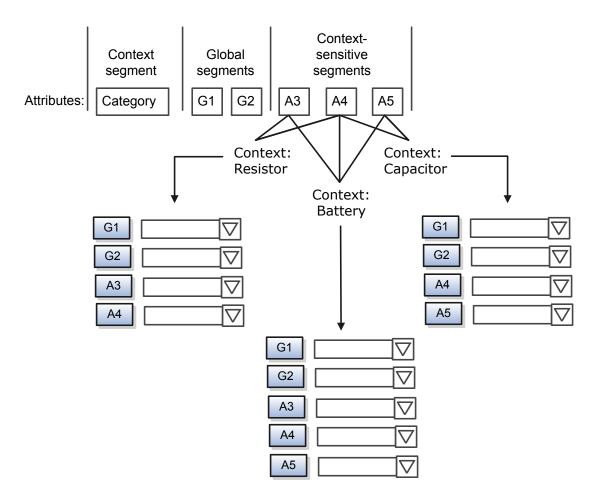
Segments and Contexts

Descriptive flexfield segments are of the following types:

Segment Type	Run Time Appearance
Global segment	Always available
Context segment	Determines which context-sensitive segments are displayed
Context-sensitive segment	Displayed depending on the value of the context segment



In the figure, a descriptive flexfield has one context segment called Category for which there are three values: Resistor, Battery, and Capacitor. Additionally, the descriptive flexfield comprises two global segments that appear in each context, and three context-sensitive segments that only appear in the specific context.



Application development determines the number of segments available for configuring. During implementation, configure the flexfield by determining the following:

- Attributes to add using the available segments
- Context values
- The combination of attributes in each context

Value Sets

For each global and context-sensitive segment, you configure the values permitted for the segment. Based on it, the values that end users enter are validated, including interdependent validation among the segments.

Protected Descriptive Flexfield Data

Application developers may mark some data configurations in a descriptive flexfield as protected, indicating that you can't edit them.



Related Topics

Value Sets: Explained

• Managing Flexfields: Points to Consider

How can I access predefined flexfields?

Planning Descriptive Flexfields: Points to Consider

Once you have identified a flexfield to configure, plan the configuration in advance. Compile a list of the UI pages and other artifacts in your deployment that are affected by the configuration. Verify that you are provisioned with the roles needed to view and configure the flexfield. View the flexfield using the Highlight Flexfields command in the Administration menu while viewing the run time page where the flexfield appears. Plan how you will deploy the flexfield for test and production users. Review the tools and tasks available for managing flexfields, such as the Define Flexfields task list, Manage Sandboxes, and Highlight Flexfields for adding and editing flexfield segments.

Planning a descriptive flexfield can involve the following tasks:

- 1. Identify existing parameters.
- 2. Identify existing context values and whether the context value is derived.
- 3. Identify custom attributes and plan the descriptive flexfield segments, segment properties, and structure.
- 4. Plan validation rules.
- Plan initial values.
- 6. Plan attribute mapping to Oracle Business Intelligence objects.

Identify Existing Descriptive Flexfield Parameters

Some descriptive flexfields provide parameters that can be used to specify the initial value of a descriptive flexfield segment. The parameter is external reference data, such as a column value or a session variable. For example, if a flexfield has a user email parameter, you can configure the initial value for a customer email attribute to be derived from that parameter.

Review the list of available parameters in the **Derivation Value** field in the Create Segment page for a descriptive flexfield. If you decide to use one of the parameters to set an initial value, select that parameter from the **Derivation Value** drop-down list when you add the descriptive flexfield segment.

Evaluate Whether the Context Value Is Derived

The context value for a descriptive flexfield might have been preconfigured to be derived from an external reference. For example, if the context is Marriage Status, then the value might be derived from an attribute in the employee business object. When the context value is derived, you might need to take the derived values and their source into consideration in your plan.

To determine whether the context value is derived, access the Edit Descriptive Flexfield task to view the list of configured context values for the flexfield. The Derivation Value field in the Context Segment region displays a list of available parameters. If context values have been preconfigured, see Oracle Applications Cloud Help for product-specific information about the use of those values.

Plan the Segments, Segment Properties, and Structure

Identify the custom attributes you need for a business object to determine the segments of the descriptive flexfield. Determine the segment properties such as the prompt, display type, or initial value.

The structure of the descriptive flexfield is determined by its global, context, and context-sensitive segments. Plan a global segment that captures an attribute for every instance of the business object. Plan a context for segments that depend on



a condition of situation applying to a particular instance of the business object. Plan context-sensitive segments to capture attributes that are relevant in the context.

There is only one context segment available for descriptive flexfields. If you have more than one group of custom attributes where you could use the context segment, you will have to pick one group over the others, based on your company's needs and priorities, and add the other custom attributes as global segments.

Plan Validation Rules

Define each segment's validation rules and check if value sets exist for those rules or you must create new ones. If you must create a value set, you can create it either before configuring the flexfield or while creating or editing a segment.

When determining a segment's validation rules, consider the following questions:

- What is the data type character, date, date and time, or number?
- Does the segment require any validation beyond data type and maximum length?
- Should a character type value be restricted to digits, or are alphabetic characters allowed?
- Should alphabetic characters automatically be changed to uppercase?
- Should numeric values be zero-filled?
- How many digits can follow the radix separator of a numeric value? In base ten numerical systems the radix separator is decimal point.
- Does the value need to fall within a range?
- Should the value be selected from a list of valid values? If so, consider the following questions:
 - Can you use an existing application table from which to obtain the list of valid values, or do you need to create a custom list?
 - o If you are using an existing table, do you need to limit the list of values using a WHERE clause?
 - Does the list of valid values depend on the value in another flexfield segment?
 - o Is the list of valid values a subset of another flexfield segment's list of values?

Plan Initial Values

For every segment, list the constant value or SQL statement, if any, to use for the initial value of the custom attribute.

Plan How Segments Map to Oracle Business Intelligence Objects

You can extend descriptive flexfields into Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence (OTBI) for ad hoc reporting purposes. Determine the descriptive flexfield segments to be made available for reporting, and select the **BI Enabled** check box accordingly on the Manage Descriptive Flexfields page. You must run a process to extend the BI enabled segments into OTBI. For more information about extending the BI enabled segments into OTBI, see the Setup and Configuration chapter in the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator's Guide.

Depending on the reporting needs, you may map similar context-sensitive attributes from different contexts to the same attribute in OTBI. For example, there may be a segment tracking the Product Color attribute in different contexts of a context sensitive descriptive flexfield. You can use segment labels to map these context-sensitive attributes together by defining a segment label and updating the BI Label list accordingly.

Related Topics

• Flexfield Segment Properties: Explained

Value Sets: Explained



- Enabling Descriptive Flexfield Segments for Business Intelligence: Points to Consider
- Defaulting and Deriving Segment Values: Explained

Managing Descriptive Flexfields: Points to Consider

Configuring descriptive flexfields involves managing the available flexfields registered with your Oracle Applications Cloud database and configuring their flexfield-level properties, defining and managing descriptive flexfield contexts, and configuring global and context-sensitive segments.

Every descriptive flexfield is registered to include a context segment, which you may choose to use or not.

In general, configuring descriptive flexfields involves:

- 1. Creating segment labels for business intelligence enabled flexfields.
- 2. Configuring global segments by providing identity information, the initial default value, and the display properties.
- 3. Configuring the context segment by specifying the prompt, whether the context segment should be displayed, and whether a value is required.
- **4.** Configuring contexts by specifying a context code, description, and name for each context value, and adding its context-sensitive segments, each of which is configured to include identifying information, the column assignment, the initial default value, and the display properties.

The following aspects are important in understanding descriptive flexfield management:

- Segments
- Adding segments to highlighted descriptive flexfields
- Usages
- Parameters
- Delimiters
- Initial Values
- Business Intelligence

Segments

You can assign sequence order numbers to global segments and to context-sensitive segments in each context. Segment display is always in a fixed order. You cannot enter a number for one segment that is already in use for a different segment.

Value sets are optional for context segments and follow specific guidelines:

- The value set that you specify for a context segment consists of a set of context codes.
- Each context code corresponds to a context that is appropriate for the descriptive flexfield.
- The value set must be independent or table-validated.
- If table-validated, the WHERE clause must not use the VALUESET.value_set_code or SEGMENT.segment_code bind variables.
- The value set must be of data type Character with the maximum length of values being stored no larger than the context's column length.
- If you don't specify a value set for a context segment, the valid values for that context segment are derived from the
 context codes. The definition of each context segment specifies the set of context-sensitive segments that can be
 presented when that context code is selected by the end user.



- · For reasons of data integrity, you cannot delete an existing context. Instead, you can disable the associated context value in its own value set by setting its end date to a date in the past.
- You can configure the individual global segments and context-sensitive segments in a descriptive flexfield. These segment types are differentiated by their usage, but they are configured on application pages that use most of the same properties.

Adding Segments to Highlighted Descriptive Flexfields

When you highlight flexfields on a run time page and use an Add Segment icon button to create a segment, the segment code, name, description, table column, and sequence number are set automatically. If you use an Add Segment icon button to configure descriptive flexfield segments, you cannot use an existing value set. Value sets are created automatically when you add the segments. You can enter the valid values, their descriptions, and the default value or specify the formatting constraints for the value set, such as minimum and maximum values.

Depending on display type, the value set you create with the **Add Segment** icon button is either an independent value set or a format-only value set. The table shows which type of value set is created depending on the segment display component you select.

Value Set Created with Add Segment
Independent
Format Only
Format Only
Format Only



Tip: After you add a context value, refresh the page to see the new value.

Usages

Descriptive flexfield usages allow for the same definition to be applied to multiple entities or application tables, such as a USER table and a USER_HISTORY table. Descriptive flexfield tables define the placeholder entity where the flexfield segment values are stored once you have configured the descriptive flexfield. When you configure a flexfield, the configuration applies to all its usages.

Parameters

Some descriptive flexfields provide parameters, which are attributes of the same or related entity objects. Parameters are public arguments to a descriptive flexfield. Parameters provide outside values in descriptive flexfield validation. You use parameters to set the initial value or derivation value of an attribute from external reference data, such as a column value or



a session variable, rather than from user input. Parameters can be referenced by the logic that derives the default segment value, and by table-validated value set WHERE clauses.

Delimiters

A segment delimiter or separator visually separates segment values when the flexfield is displayed as a string of concatenated segments.

Initial Values

The SQL statement defining an initial value must be a valid statement that returns only one row and a value of the correct type.

You can use two types of SQL statements:

- SQL statement with no binding. For example, select MIN(SALARY) from EMPLOYEES.
- SQL statement with bind variables. You can use the following bind variables in the WHERE clause of the SQL statement.
 - : { SEGMENT . < segment_code > }: Identifies a segment in the same context.
 - :{context.<context_code>; segment.<segment_code>}: Identifies a segment in a different context. The context must be in the same category or in an ancestor category, and it cannot be a multiple-row context.
 - :{VALUESET.<value_set_code>}: Identifies the closest prior segment in the same context that is assigned to the specified value set.
 - : {FLEXFIELD. < internal_code>}: Identifies a flexfield.

For more information about using bind variables, see the help for value sets.

Business Intelligence

Selecting a global, context, or context-sensitive segment's BI Enabled check box specifies that the segment is available for use in Oracle Business Intelligence.

When the flexfield is imported into Oracle Business Intelligence, the label you selected from the BI Label drop-down list equalizes the segment with segments in other contexts, and maps the segment to the logical object represented by the label.

Related Topics

- Defining Value Sets: Critical Choices
- Defaulting and Deriving Segment Values: Explained
- Enabling Descriptive Flexfield Segments for Business Intelligence: Points to Consider
- Flexfield Segment Properties: Explained
- Why can't I edit my flexfield or value set configuration?

Descriptive Flexfields for Oracle Contracts

You can use descriptive flexfields to add custom attributes for contract contacts, contract headers, contract lines, and contract parties. You can also define validation and display properties using descriptive flexfields for those custom attributes.



Defining Descriptive Flexfield Segments

Use the Manage Descriptive Flexfields task in the Set up and Maintenance work area to define a segment for a descriptive flexfield for contracts. You can add more information related to contacts, headers, lines, and parties.

Oracle Contracts includes the following four descriptive flexfields.

Name	Code	Description
Contract Contacts	ContractPartyContactFlexfield	Fields for contact information that appear on the Parties page.
Contract Headers	ContractHeaderFlexfield	Fields for contract information that appear on the Contracts page.
Contract Line	OKC_LINES_DESC_FLEX	Fields for line information that appear on the Lines page.
Contract Parties	ContractPartyFlexfield	Fields for party information that appear on the Parties page.

Activating Descriptive Flexfields

To activate a descriptive flexfield, you must also define lookup codes and value sets along with the descriptive flexfield segment. For more information on using flexfields for custom attributes, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Extensibility Guide.

Related Topics

Flexfields: Overview

Setting Up an Automated Contract Header Descriptive Flexfield: Worked Example

This example demonstrates how you create user-defined criteria based on contextual data from the contract type and associate the user-defined criteria with contract headers.

Scenario: Your company wants to be able to perform analysis on contracts created for various portions of your commercial and government customers.

Summary of Tasks

To create contextual user-defined criteria for contract headers, you first perform these tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

- 1. Create the contract header value set.
- 2. Create the context segments on the descriptive flexfield.
- 3. Deploy the modified descriptive flexfield.



Next, you perform these tasks in the Contracts work area.

- 1. Create contract types associated with the descriptive flexfields.
- 2. Create a contract and associate the new user-defined criteria.

Create Contract Header Value Set

Use the Setup and Maintenance work area to complete this task with the default values for fields unless the steps specify other values.

- 1. Search for and click the **Manage Value Sets** task to open the Manage Value Sets page.
- 2. On the Search Results toolbar, click the Create icon button.
- 3. Complete the initial fields, as shown in the following table.

Field	Value
Value Set Code	OKC_CH_TYPE_DFF
Description	Contract Type Code DFF
Module	Enterprise Contracts
Validation Type	Table
Value Data Type	Character

4. Complete the Definition fields, which appear after you select the validation type, as shown in the following table.

Field	Value
FROM Clause	OKC_CONTRACT_TYPES_VL
Value Column Name	NAME
ID Column Name	CHR_TYPE

- 5. Click **Save and Close** to return to the Manage Value Sets page.
- 6. Click Cancel to return to the Overview page.

Create Context Segments

The Setup and Maintenance work area is used to complete this task. We will accept the default values for fields unless the following steps specify other values.

- 1. Search for and click the Manage Descriptive Flexfields task to open the Manage Descriptive Flexfields page.
- In the Search section Name field, enter "Contract Headers" to search and find the Contract Headers descriptive flexfield.
- 3. In the Search Results section, select the Contract Headers row and click the Edit icon.
- 4. On the Edit Descriptive Flexfields page, enter the following values under Context Segment:



Field	Value
Prompt	Gov_ or_Commercial
Value Set	OKC_CH_TYPE_DFF
Default Type	Parameter
Default Value	ChrType
Display Type	Hidden
BI Enabled	enabled (checked)

- 5. Click **Save**. On the Edit Descriptive Flexfields page, click Manage Contexts.
- **6.** On the Manage Contexts page Search Results toolbar, click the **Create** icon.
- 7. On the Create Context page create the context header by entering a Display Name of "Government" and clicking **Save**.
- 8. Optionally enter a description to help with identification in the future.
- 9. Create a Context Sensitive Segment by clicking Create and enter the values as shown in this table.

Field	Value
Name	Level
Data Type	Character
Value Set	OKC_ CH_TYPE_DFF
Default Type	Parameter
Default Value	ChrType
Prompt	Level
Display Type	Hidden
Bl Enabled	enabled (checked)

- 10. Click **Save and Close** to return to the Edit Context: Government page.
- 11. On the Context Sensitive Segments toolbar, click the Create icon.
- 12. Create another segment for the Government context by clicking **Create** and enter the values shown in the following table.

Field	Value
Name	Budget



Field	Value
Data Type	Character
Value Set	OKC_CH_TYPE_DFF
Default Type	Parameter
Default Value	ChrType
Prompt	Budget
Display Type	Hidden
BI Enabled	enabled (checked)

- **13.** Click **Save and Close** to return to the Edit Context: Government page.
- 14. Click Save and Close to return to the Manage Contexts page.
- 15. On the Manage Contexts page Search Results toolbar, click the **Create** icon.
- **16.** On the Create Context page create the context header by entering a Display Name of "Commercial" and clicking **Save**. Optionally enter a description to help with identification in the future.
- 17. Create a Context Sensitive Segment by clicking Create and enter the values as shown in this table.

Field	Value
Name	Industry
Data Type	Character
Value Set	OKC_CH_TYPE_DFF
Default Type	Parameter
Default Value	ChrType
Prompt	Industry
Display Type	Hidden
Bl Enabled	enabled (checked)

- **18.** Click **Save and Close** to return to the Edit Context: Commercial page.
- 19. On the Context Sensitive Segments toolbar, click the Create icon.
- 20. Create another segment for the Commercial context by clicking Create and enter the values as shown in this table.



Field	Value
Name	Customer Budget
Data Type	Character
Value Set	OKC_CH_TYPE_DFF
Default Type	Parameter
Default Value	ChrType
Prompt	Customer Budget
Display Type	Hidden
BI Enabled	enabled (checked)

- 21. Click Save and Close to return to the Edit Context: Government page.
- 22. Click Save and Close to return to the Manage Contexts page.
- 23. Click **Done** to return to the Edit Descriptive Flexfield page.
- 24. Click Save and Close to return to the Manage Descriptive Flexfields page.

Deploy the Modified Contracts Header Descriptive Flexfield

You deploy the edited descriptive flexfield to expose the field in the application and make it available for use when creating user-defined criteria.

- 1. On the Search Results toolbar on the Manage Descriptive Flexfields page, click Deploy Flexfield.
- 2. Monitor the progress of the deployment and click **OK** when it completes.
- 3. Click **Done** to return to the Search page.
- 4. Click **Done** to return to the Setup and Maintenance Overview page.

Create the Contract Type with Context for User-Defined Criteria

Use the Contracts work area to complete this task with the default values for fields unless the steps specify other values.

- 1. Click the Contracts Type task.
- 2. On the Search Results toolbar, click Create.
- 3. Complete the Create Contract Type fields, as shown in this table.

Field	Value
Class	Enterprise contract
Set	Common Set
Name	Commercial



Field	Value
Intent	Sell
Allow lines	disabled (unchecked)
Buyer Role	Customer
Seller Role	Supplier
Contract Owner Role	Contract administrator
Code	Commercial
	Note: This ties the contract type to the descriptive flexfield segment previously defined.

- 4. Click **Save and Close** to return to the Manage Contract Types page.
- 5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 to create a contract type named Government with a Code of Government.

Create a Contract and Associate User-Defined Criteria

Use the Contracts work area to complete this task with the default values for fields unless the steps specify other values.

- 1. Click the Create Contracts task.
- 2. Create a new contract using the entries as shown in the following table.

Field	Value
Business Unit	Vision Operations
Legal Entity	Vision Operations
Туре	Commercial
Number	HA151101-1
Primary Party	General Associates
Intent	Sell
Description	Contract to demonstrate automated context sensitive descriptive flexfield.

- 3. Click **Save and Close** on the Create Contract window to continue to the Edit Contracts page and accept any defaulted fields or enter as indicated in the table above.
- **4.** On the Edit Contracts page open the Additional Information section and verify that the correct context sensitive segments are displayed.
- 5. Click **Submit** to return to the Contracts work area page.



Enterprise Scheduler Processes

Enterprise Scheduler Processes for Enterprise Contracts: Overview

Oracle Enterprise Contracts provides predefined Enterprise Scheduler Processes. The processes can be set up to run automatically at periodic intervals using the Scheduled Processes task from the Navigator.

The following table lists the predefined scheduler processes and summarizes when they are needed:

Enterprise Scheduler Process	Description	Related Feature	Recommended Frequency
Adopt Global Clauses for a New Business Unit	Adopts all approved global clauses for use in a new local business unit.	Terms Library Clause Adoption	Daily
Assign Contract Owner	Assigns a new contract owner or replaces an existing contract owner.	Contract Assignees	As needed
Build Keyword Search Index for Contract Clauses	Enables clause searches in the Contract Terms Library using the Keyword field by building an index of the Clause Title, Display Title, Description, and Text fields.	Terms Library Search Clauses	Daily
Build Keyword Search Index for Contract Terms Templates	Enables contract terms template searches in the Contract Terms Library using the keyword field by building an index of the Terms Template Name and Description fields.	Terms Library Search Terms Templates	Daily
Generate Contract PDFs for Text Search	Used to generate PDF documents for all draft contracts to enable indexing of terms for text search.	Service Contract Billing	Daily
Import Contract Clauses from Interface Table	Validates clauses and variables in the open interface table and imports the valid clauses into the Contract Terms Library.	Contract Text Search	As needed
Import Contract Clauses from XML File	Validates clauses and variables from an XML spreadsheet and imports the spreadsheet into the Contract Terms Library.		As needed
Migrate Contract Users	Migrates contract users who are employees to be resources.		At upgrade for on-premise implementations
Optimize Keyword Search Index for Contract Clauses	Optimizes the clause text index to improve clause performance		Daily



Enterprise Scheduler Process	Description	Related Feature	Recommended Frequency
	of searches using the Keyword field in the Contract Terms Library.		
Optimize Keyword Search Index for Contract Terms Templates	Optimizes the contract terms template text index to improve performance of terms template searches using the Keyword field in the Contract Terms Library.		Daily
Purge Contract Clause Import Tables	Purges data from the clause interface table after clause import has completed.		As needed
Purge Contract Import Interface Tables	Purges error records of the contract import interface tables.		As needed
Purge Contract Temporary Tables	Purges all contract temporary tables.		As needed
Send Contract Expiration Notifications	Sends contract expiration notifications to contract owners.		Daily
Send Contract Fulfillment Notifications	Sends notifications to contract fulfillment notification recipients based on the notification rules set up for the fulfillment line.		Daily
Send Contract Terms Deliverable Due Date Notifications	Sends due date notifications to the responsible party for the contract terms deliverable.		Daily
Send Contract Terms Deliverable Escalation Notifications	Sends escalation notifications to the escalation contact, the internal contact, and the requester of contract terms deliverables. The requester is the internal employee who requested the deliverable.		Daily
Send Contract Terms Deliverable Overdue Notifications	Sends overdue notifications to the requester and to the responsible party for a contract terms deliverable. When the responsible party is external, then the internal party is notified as well.		Daily
Track Electronic Signature Status	Track electronic signature status of contract.		Hourly
Track Purchasing Activity	Retrieve the number and the status of the purchasing documents created by the		As needed



Enterprise Scheduler Process	Description integrated procurement application from the contract fulfillment line.	Related Feature	Recommended Frequency
Update Contract Status	Updates the status of contracts that are dependent on time. For example, updates the status to expired when the end date is reached.		Daily

Caution: Oracle recommends that you do not edit any existing Enterprise Scheduler Jobs.

Related Topics

- Scheduled Processes: Explained
- · Setting Reports Up to Run as Scheduled Processes: Points to Consider

How can I Manage Enterprise Scheduler Processes for Enterprise Contracts?

You can view the predefined enterprise scheduler jobs for Oracle Enterprise Contracts from the application:

- 1. Select Navigator Setup and Maintenance.
- 2. Search for and select the Enterprise Contracts offering.
- 3. On the Setup and Maintenance page, click Setup.
- 4. Select the Enterprise Contracts functional area. The tasks available for Enterprise Contracts display.
- 5. Select the Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs for Enterprise Contracts task.
- 6. In the **Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs for Enterprise Contracts** page, enter search criteria to search and view available Enterprise Scheduler Jobs.

△ Caution: It is recommended to not edit any existing Enterprise Scheduler Jobs.

Related Topics

• Scheduled Processes: Explained

Managing Contract Party Roles and Sources

Setting Up Contract Party Roles and Making Them Available in Contracts: Explained

Party roles provide a way of specifying the roles of different parties in the contract. For example, a sales contract may include the customer, a partner, and the internal business unit selling the product and service. The application comes with predefined party roles, but you can create additional roles and specify how the roles are used in sales, purchasing, and project contracts.



This topic:

- Lists the predefined party roles and explains how you can add your own.
- Explains how you make those party roles available for use in buy-intent and sell-intent contracts.

Managing Party Roles

The application comes with the following predefined party role names in the lookup type OKC_PARTY_ROLE. You can add additional lookup codes in the Setup and Maintenance work area by selecting the **Manage Contract Party Roles** task.

Lookup Code	Meaning
CUSTOMER	Customer
INTERCOMPANY	Internal party
PARTNER	Partner
SUPPLIER	Supplier
THIRD_PARTY	Third party

Making Party Roles Available for Use in Contracts

To make party roles available for use in contracts, you must:

- Associate each party role to the appropriate party source by selecting the Manage Contract Roles Sources task in the Contracts work area.
- 2. While managing contract types using the **Manage Contract Types** task in the Setup and Maintenance work area, add each party role to the contract types where you want the party role to be used. You can add a party role either as one of the two primary contract parties (the Buyer Role and the Seller Role) or as a secondary party. You can only have one Seller Role and one Buyer Role in a contract. You can have multiple secondary parties with the same role.

The application includes the following party sources which you cannot modify:

Party Source Code	Name	Description
OKX_PARTY	Customer	Parties in the Trading Community Architecture (TCA) where the party usage is External Legal Entity.
OKX_OPERUNIT	Business Unit	Internal business units.
OKX_VENDOR	Supplier	Parties in TCA where the party usage is Supplier.
OKX_INT_COMP_PARTY	Internal party	Internal parties available for Oracle Fusion Projects interproject billing.
OKX_PARTNER	Partner	Partners. This source is reserved for Oracle Fusion Partner Relationship Management.



Party Source Code Name Description

You can use the same party role for both buy-intent and sell-intent contracts by associating the party role to different sources. This figure shows how you can reuse the role Customer in both buy and sell contracts. The customer for sales contracts is a TCA party (Customer). The customer for buy contracts is an internal business unit.

To reuse the same party in buy and sell contracts, you:

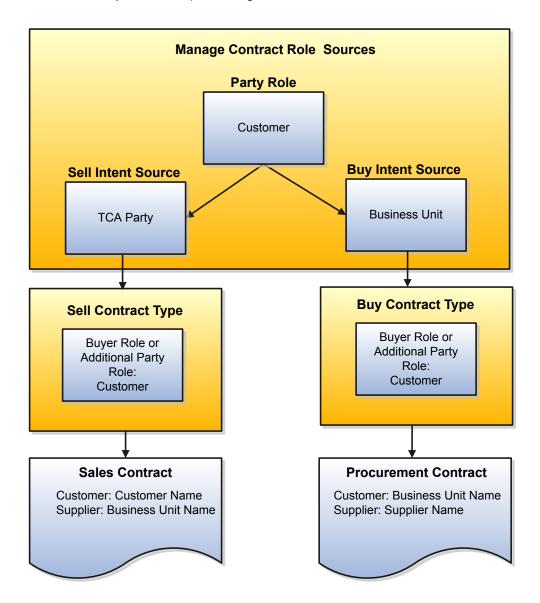
- 1. Select the **Customer** party role in the Manage Contract Role Sources page.
- 2. Set the Sell Intent Source to Customer and the Buy Intent Source to Business Unit.
- **3.** To use the party role in a contract, you must also enter it in contract types where you want to use it as one of the primary contact parties or as a secondary party.

The setup in this figure has the following effect:

When you create a sales contract, the Customer list of values lists external parties.



When you create a purchasing contract, the Customer list of values lists business units.



Managing Party Contact Roles

Setting Up Party Contact Roles and Making Them Available for Use: Explained

Contact roles specify the roles that party contacts play in the contract. Your application provides predefined contact roles, but you can set up additional contact roles for use with different parties in the contract.



This topic:

- Lists the predefined contact roles and explains how you can add your own.
- Explains how you associate the contact roles with party roles and contact role sources.

Predefined Contact Roles

The application provides the following predefined contact roles in the extensible lookup type OKC PARTY CONTACT ROLE:

Lookup Code	Meaning
BUYER	Buyer
CONTRACT_ADMIN	Contract administrator
EMPLOYEE	Employee
PARTNER_ CONTACT	Partner contact
PARTY_CONTACT	Customer contact
RESOURCE	Resource
RESOURCE_ORG	Resource organization
SALESPERSON	Salesperson
VENDOR_CONTACT	Supplier contact

You can add additional contact roles by selecting the **Manage Contract Contact Roles** task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Making Contact Roles Available for Use in Contracts

For a contact role to be available for use in contracts, you must navigate to the Manage Contract Role Sources page by selecting the **Party Role and Contact Sources** task in the Contracts work area. Make the following entries for each of the party roles where you want the contact role to be available:

- 1. Select the party role.
- 2. Add the contact role.
- **3.** Enter the sell-intent contact source or the buy-intent contact source, or both. The contact sources you can enter depends on the party source settings for the party role.

The following contact sources are predefined in the application in the system lookup type OKC_PARTY_CONTACT_SOURCE. You can't edit the contract role sources or add additional ones.

Lookup Code	Meaning	Description
OKX_PARTNER_CONTACT	Partner contact	Used exclusively for Oracle Fusion Partner Management contracts.



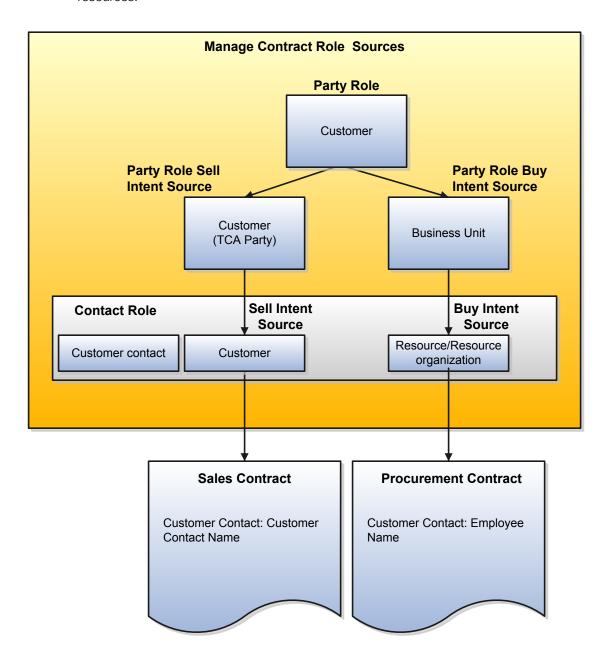
Lookup Code	Meaning	Description
OKX_PCONTACT	Customer contact	Contacts of parties in the Trading Community Architecture (TCA) where the party usage is External Legal Entity.
OKX_RESOURCE	Resource	The internal resource.
OKX_ RESOURCE_ORG	Resource organization	The internal resource organization.
OKX_VCONTACT	Supplier contact	Contacts of parties in TCA where the party usage is Supplier.

The following figure illustrates the setup required to make a contact role available in both customer and supplier contracts.

- The party role Customer is associated with both a sell intent and buy intent source. In a sales contract, a Customer party is a TCA party (party source Customer). In a buy-intent contract, the Customer is an internal business unit.
- You make the contact role available in both customer and supplier contracts by specifying the **Sell Intent Source** as **Customer contact** and the **Buy Intent Source** as **Resource or Resource organization**.



• In sales contracts, customer contacts are now TCA party contacts. In procurement contracts, customer contacts are resources.



User Statuses and Transitions



User Statuses and Transitions: Explained

A contract has predefined statuses that characterize its lifecycle. In addition, you can define user statuses and their transitions.

For example, as contract manager you may want to pass the contract for a more thorough review of its sections by the appropriate team such as Legal, Financial, and Accounts. You can do this using the user statuses and transitions that you defined.

Defining User Statuses and Transitions

Define these user statuses and their transitions using the contract setup task of Manage User Statuses and Transitions and save your changes.

Note: While defining user statuses, ensure that you select the Allow Assignment check box for each of the user transitions. This enables you to assign the contract to named assignees during a user transition.

Setting Up The State-Based Event Model

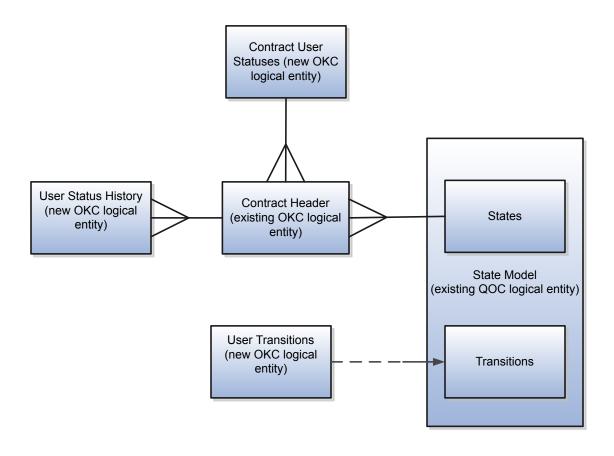
Use the Event Models setup task to create new events and actions for the business object, oracle.apps.contracts.coreAuthoring.header.model.view.ContractHeaderVO.

Set these events up for each To and From state of the user transition. For seeded states you can select from available events and actions. An example of an action could be a groovy script.

Save this new State based event model and specify the condition or contract type that can use this. For contracts of the specified condition, the user statuses and transitions that you created are available as Action menu items. You can use these action menu items to pass a contract between teams for review before submitting the contract for approval.

Note: User statuses and transitions apply only to contracts that satisfy the condition defined in the Event Model. They cannot be used for contract templates.





Related Topics

• Contract Assignment and Workload Management: Explained

Managing Contract Types



Contract Types: Explained

A contract type is a contract category that you must select when creating a contract. It is a mandatory setup that determines the nature of the contract. For example, this step determines if the contract is a project contract, a purchasing contract, or simple nondisclosure or employment agreement. A contract type also specifies what kind of information you can enter and what contract lines, parties, and party contacts are permitted.

The contract type also specifies if electronic signature is required for contract acceptance and activation and if yes, then the standard email format to be used for notifying signers. In turn, the requirement for electronic signature means that you must designate contacts as signers on the contract. It also means that additional statuses and contract header actions are available.

This topic provides an overview of the super set of contract type setups for a broad range of contracts. When setting up individual contract types, only a subset of the fields listed here are visible. For example, the project billing option entries are visible only in contract types with a sell-intent, and the notifications fields appear only for contract types with a buy-intent.

Create contract types by selecting the **Manage Contract Types** action from the Setup and Maintenance work area. You can also create contract types in the Contracts work area by selecting **Contract Types** under the Setup task heading. In each contract type you can:

- Specify document numbering sequences for the category of global, ledger, legal entity or business unit level to enable automatic contract numbering on contracts.
- Specify if the contract includes lines and what can be entered into them.
- Specify if external item masters can be referenced.
- Make it mandatory to manually capture customer acceptance after internal contract approval.
- If electronic acceptance is required, enable the contract for electronic signature integration.
- Specify what primary and secondary parties can be entered during contract creation.
- Specify if one or more contacts on the contract must be designated as signers for electronic signature acceptance.
- Specify the layout templates that will be used for printing the contract and the contract terms.
- Specify if and when the contract owner is to be notified before the contract expires.
- Specify the billing options for project contracts.
- Enable the capture of contract risks.
- Enable the ability to relate a contract to other contracts.
- Permit the authoring of contract terms using the Contract Terms Library.

Common Contract Type Entries

The following table describes the common contract type entries:

Field or Option	Description
Class	Indicates the category of the contract you are authoring:
	 Enterprise Contract: Used for authoring both buy and sell contracts where you are buying or selling items and services now. Examples of contracts of this class include contract purchase agreements, project contracts, and repository contracts.
	 Agreement: Used for authoring a sell intent contract to create a sales agreement. Purchase Agreement: Used for negotiating a future purchase of goods and services.
	 Partner Agreement: Used exclusively for Oracle Fusion Partner Management.



Field or Option	Description	
	You cannot change the class after the contract type is created.	
Set	Determines the data security for contracts of this type.	
Name	The name of the contract type that you select when authoring contracts.	
Description	Description that you can see when managing contract types.	
Allow lines	Selecting this option makes it possible for you to specify what line types can be added to the contract. You cannot change the setting after the contract type is created.	
Use external item master	Selecting this option lets you reference items from an external item source master.	
	Note: This option is available only for sell intent contracts if you selected the available Allow lines option.	
Enable Automatic Numbering	Enables automatic numbering of contract lines during contract authoring.	
Requires Signature	Determines if customer signature is required for contract acceptance before this type of contract can become active. After approval, the contract is set to the Pending Signature status and requires you or the signer to enter the date of customer approval to make the contract active.	
Enable Electronic Signature	Determines if designated signers must sign the contract before the contract becomes active. In this case, after approval the contract moves to the Pending Signature status and when the contract is sent for signature, the contract moves to the Sent for Signature status.	
Contract Numbering Method, Contract Numbering Level, and Contract Sequence Category	Specifies if you must enter the contract number manually or if it is generated automatically based on the numbering level and the document sequence category that you specify.	
Intent	Contracts can have either a sell intent (project contracts and partner agreements) or buy intent (purchase contracts).	
	You cannot change the intent after the contract type is created.	
Buyer Role	The party role of the recipient of the goods and services in the contract. For a sales or a project contract, this is the role you set up for the customer. For a purchasing contract, it is the role you set up for the business units in your organization. You cannot edit the entry in this field after contract type creation. For sell-side contracts, the source of party role can be Customer, Internal Party or All Eligible Customers.	
Seller Role	The party role of the party delivering the goods and services covered by the contract. For a sales or a project contract, this is the role you set up for one of the internal business units. For a purchasing contract, it is the role you set up for the supplier. You cannot edit this field after contract type creation.	
Contract Owner Role	The contact role assigned to the owner of the contract. Contract ownership is automatically assigned to the employee who creates the contract. The owner is automatically assigned the role you specify here.	



Field or Option	Description	
Buyer Contact Role	The role you specify in this field specifies the role of the buyer that will be copied from the contract header to the contract fulfillment lines created for contract lines. This option is available for purchase contracts only:	
Requester Contact Role	In purchase contracts only: The role of employee who will be used as the creator of a requisition in Oracle Fusion Purchasing.	
Contract Layout Template	The Oracle BI Publisher template that is used to print the entire contract. This option is not available if you enabled Use external item master.	
Terms Layout Template	The Oracle BI Publisher template used to print the contract terms. This option is not available if you enabled Use external item master.	
Notify Before Expiration, Days to Expiration, and Contact Role to be Notified	Selecting this option sends a notification before contract expiration to the individual with the role specified in the Contact Role to Be Notified the number of days specified the Days to Expiration field.	
	 Note: These options are not available if you enabled Use external item master. For the notifications to appear, the process "Send Contract Expiration Notifications" must be running. 	

Line Types

You can enter the line types permitted by the class you selected for the contract type and only if you selected the **Allow Lines** option during the contract type creation. The following table describes the possible line types.

Line Type	Description	Line Type Source
Free-form	Enables entry of items not tracked in inventory for purchasing. You can create master agreements in the purchasing application from lines of this type.	Buy agreement
Free-form	Enables entry of items not tracked in inventory for purchasing. You can create purchase orders in the purchasing application from lines of this type.	Buy intent
Item	Enables entry of inventory items for purchasing. You can create master agreements in the purchasing application from lines of this type.	Buy agreement
Item	Enables entry of inventory items for purchasing. You can create purchase orders in the purchasing application from lines of this type.	Buy intent



Line Type	Description	Line Type Source
Free-form, project	Enables entry of items not tracked in inventory and displays project-related tabs and fields in a contract. You can associate and bill the line to a project in Oracle Fusion Projects.	Sell intent, project-based
Item, project	Enables entry of inventory items and displays project-related tabs and fields in a contract. You can associate and bill the line to a project in Oracle Fusion Projects.	Sell intent, project-based
Product	Enables entry of a line representing the negotiated terms for future sale of an item.	Product, sell agreement, standalone
Group	Enables entry of a line representing the negotiated terms for future sale of a product group.	Group, sell agreement

If you enable Use external item master when creating a contract type, you can create only the following line types:

Line Type	Description	Line Type Source
Subscription	This line type applies to sell contracts and describes the sale of subscription items that are tracked in inventory.	Sell Intent, Subscription
Bundle	This line type applies to sell contracts and describes the sale of bundled items tracked in inventory. Bundles can include other bundles or items.	Sell Intent, Bundle

Additional Party Roles

You can add party roles that can be added to a contract in addition to the primary parties specified in the **Buyer Role** and **Seller Role** fields. You can add multiple additional parties with the same role to the contract.

Project Billing Options

For contract types created for projects (sales-intent contract types of class Enterprise Contract and at least one project line type), you can set the following project billing options:

Option	Description
Intercompany	Enables project billing between internal organizations.
Interproject	Enables billing to other projects.



Option	Description
Enable Billing Controls and Billing Limit Type	Enables billing controls for each contract line, making it possible for you to specify a hard limit or a soft limit as the Billing Limit Type . A soft limit warns you if the billing limit is reached. A hard limit prevents you from billing above the limit.

Enabling Contract Fulfillment Notifications for Purchase Contracts

For purchase contracts, you can use the Notifications tab to specify what contract fulfillment notifications will be sent to what contact role. Available notifications are slightly different for each type of contract:

Note: For the notifications to appear, the process "Send Contract Fulfillment Notifications" must be running.

For contracts with purchase order fulfillment lines, you can notify contacts with a specific role:

- · A specified number of days before or after the fulfillment due date
- When a purchase order is created from a fulfillment line
- When a purchase order cannot be created from a fulfillment line
- When a fulfillment line is placed on hold
- When purchasing activity is complete on a fulfillment

For contracts with blanket purchase agreement fulfillment lines or contract purchase agreement fulfillment lines, you can notify:

- · When an agreement is created from a fulfillment line
- When an agreement cannot be created from a fulfillment line
- When purchasing activity is complete on a fulfillment
- When an agreement is placed on hold
- A specified number of days before or after the agreement end date

Enabling Contract Terms Authoring and Other Advanced Options

If you do not enable Use external item master, you can enable contract terms authoring and other advanced contract terms authoring options on the Advanced Authoring Options tab.

Note: If you enable Use external item master, the Advanced Authoring Options tab is not available but Related Contracts option is automatically enabled.

The advanced authoring options are described in the following table:

Option	Description	
Enable Terms Authoring	Displays the Contract Terms tab in contracts and enables contract terms authoring using contract terms templates from the Contract Terms Library. You must set up the content of the library from the Terms Library work area before you can take advantage of this feature.	
	Note: When this option is disabled, you can attach contract terms along with other supporting documents.	



Option	Description	
Enable Risk Management	Enables the entry of contract risks.	
	You must set up contract risks selecting the Manage Contracts Risks task in Oracle Fusion Functional Setup Manager.	
Enable Related Contracts	Makes it possible for you to relate contracts to each other.	

Enabling Customer E-Signature

For a contract created from a contract type enabled for electronic signature, the contract must be signed by all designated signers on the contract before the contract can become active. Before enabling a contract type for electronic signature, you must have used the Manage Electronic Signature setup task to set up contract user accounts with the electronic signature solution provider.

You can then select the predefined terms layout template appended with signature tags as the default template for the contract type and enable the contract for signature. In the e-Signature tab, you can further enable the contract type for electronic signature and optionally create the standard e-mail to be used when sending the contract document to signers and recipients during the integrated electronic signature process.

On the contract that you create from a contract type enabled for electronic signature, you must designate one or more contacts on the contract as signers. Only the user with edit privileges on the contract can manage the signature process. This includes sending the contract for signature, editing the contract and sending it out again, withdrawing the contract from the signature process, and cancelling the contract sent for signature.

Note: For an explanation of how to set up e-signature, please see the topic Setting Up Enterprise Contracts: Procedure Part 1, which is listed in the links below.

Related Topics

- Contract Numbering: Explained
- Setting Up Enterprise Contracts: Part 1

Contract Line Types: Explained

Using the **Manage Contract Line Types** task, you can rename the types of lines available for selection when you create contract types. This optional implementation task is available by selecting **Setup and Maintenance** from the Tools menu and searching on the task name.

Line Types

Line types are names you give to the contract lines.

You must associate each line type name with one of the fixed set of predefined line sources. A line source determines what item you can enter in a contract line and enables functionality of one of the integrated applications to that line. For example, project line sources expose Oracle Fusion Projects fields in contracts and make it possible for contract authors to relate lines to projects. Buy sources make it possible to create contract deliverables for the line and use those contract deliverables to create and manage purchase orders and purchase agreements in Oracle Fusion Purchasing or other integrated purchasing systems.



The application includes a set of predefined line type names for all available line sources. You may create additional names for use in different contract types. The predefined line types names are the same as the line source names they are associated with.

Line Type Sources

The application includes the following predefined line type sources, which you cannot modify or extend. If you do not enable the Use external item master option, you can create the following line type sources only:

Line Type Source	Description	
Free-form, buy agreement	Enables entry of items not tracked in inventory. You can create master agreements in the purchasing application from lines of this type.	
Item, buy agreement	Enables entry of inventory items. You can create master agreements in the purchasing application from lines of this type.	
Free-form, buy	Enables entry of items not tracked in inventory. You can create purchase orders in the purchasing application from lines of this type.	
Item, buy	Enables entry of inventory items. You can create purchase orders in the purchasing application from lines of this type.	
Free-form, project-based, sell	Enables entry of items not tracked in inventory. You can associate and bill the line to a project in Oracle Fusion Projects.	
Item, project-based, sell	Enables entry of inventory items. You can associate and bill the line to a project in Oracle Fusion Projects.	
Group, sell agreement	Enables grouping of items with shared negotiated terms for the future sale of that product group. The sales are tracked by group in the sales catalog.	
Product, sell agreement, standalone	Enables entry of inventory products. You can create sales agreements from lines of this type.	

If you enable Use external item master, you can create the following line type sources only:

Line Type Source	Description
Subscription, sell	This line type applies to sell contracts and describes the sale of subscription items that are tracked in inventory.
Bundle, sell	This line type applies to sell contracts and describes the sale of bundled items tracked in inventory. Bundles can include other bundles or items.



Setting Up Contract Types for Different Kinds of Contracts: Points to Consider

This topic explains how to set up contract types for different kinds of enterprise contracts.

Your contract type setup depends on the type of contract you are setting up. The main types are:

Customer Contracts

Your organization is selling goods and services.

Supplier Contracts

Your organization is purchasing goods and services.

For these types of contracts, the key contract type settings are based on the following questions:

Are you selling or buying?

For Intent, you select either Sell or Buy.

 Are you buying or selling now or negotiating a long-term contract with terms, such as pricing, that will govern a future purchase or sale?

For **Class**, select **Enterprise Contract** if you are buying or selling now. If you are negotiating a future purchase or sale, select one of the agreement classes, for instance **Purchase Agreement** for a future purchase.

Does the contract involve the purchase or sale of specific items?

If the contract involves the purchase or sale of specific items, then you can specify how those items are entered into contract lines by adding different line types to the contract type. Some line types permit contract authors to select items tracked in inventory; others permit the entry of any item as text, for example, for free-form services.

Some of the line types support integration with other Oracle applications, for example, project line types support the billing of items through Oracle Project Billing. Buy-intent lines allow the capture of pricing information and support integrations to purchasing systems to create POs or blanket purchase agreements.

The combination of answers to these questions result in the numbered cases in this figure and are described in the different sections of this topic. Some functionality is planned for a future release.

There are other special kinds of contracts where these questions are less relevant or do not apply. These include:

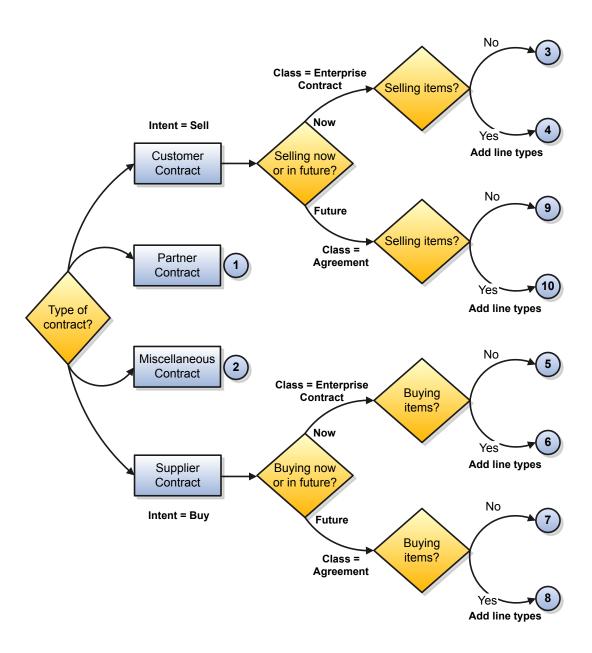
Partner Agreements

Contracts with partners.

Miscellaneous Contracts



Contracts such as nondisclosure agreements.





Customer Contracts

This section describes the settings for sell-intent contracts.

Case 1: Customer Contracts with No Lines

Use the following contract type settings to create simple sales contracts with no lines.

Purpose of Contract	Contract Type Settings
Simple customer contract with no lines.	 Class: Enterprise Contract Intent: Sell Allow Lines option: Deselected

Case 2: Customer Contracts with Lines

The following table describes the key contract type settings for sell-intent contracts for items or services. In this release, you can add lines for selling items and services that are executed as part of a project, for example, project manufactured items or professional services. Lines for selling services and regular inventory-based tangible items are planned for a future release.

Purpose of Contract	Contract Type Settings
Sell items and services that are tracked and billed to one or more projects.	 Class: Enterprise Contract Intent: Sell Allow Lines option: Selected You can add two types of lines: Free-form, project For selling items not tracked in inventory. Item, project For selling inventory items. On the Advanced Options tab, leave the Contract Terms Authoring option not enabled. Note: If you use Contract Terms Library, then there is no functional link between the contract terms and the Oracle Fusion Projects application. Therefore you cannot monitor the adherence of a project to the terms in the contract.

Case 3: Contracts for Future Sales Without Lines

This table describes the key contract type setups for future-sale contracts without lines.

Purpose of Contract	Contract Type Settings
Contract for future sales, without specifying the goods and services as contract lines.	 Class: Agreement Intent: Sell Allow Lines option: Leave not enabled



Case 4: Contracts for Future Sales with Lines

This table describes the key contract type setups for future-sale contracts with lines.

Purpose of Contract

Contract Type Settings

Create this type of contract when you know the detail of the goods or services you plan to sell to a specific customer in a period, but you do not yet know the detail of your delivery schedules. You can use this type of contract, sometimes called a blanket sales agreement, a standing order, or a blanket order, to specify negotiated prices for your items before actually selling them. Use this type of contract when the customer has negotiated volume discounts and want to create releases against these negotiated volumes, or commits to specific items, quantities, or amounts.

- Class: Agreement
- Intent: Sell
- Allow Lines option: Selected
- You can add the following types of lines:
 - Group
 - Product

Supplier Contracts

This section describes contract type settings for buy-intent contracts.

Case 1: Supplier Contracts Without Lines

The following table describes the key contract type setups for supplier contracts where you are negotiating purchase of items or services without specifying the actual items to be purchased.

Purpose of Contract

Contract Type Settings

Contract where you negotiate specific terms and conditions or a purchase without specifying the goods and services as contract lines. Contract authors can create a corresponding purchase agreement within Oracle Fusion Purchasing or another integrated purchasing application by adding a contract deliverable for the contract. You can use the deliverable to monitor the status of the agreement, but purchase orders are created and tracked in purchasing.

- Class: Enterprise Contract
- Intent: Buy
- Allow Lines option: Leave not enabled



Case 2: Supplier Contracts with Lines

The following table describes the key contract type setups for supplier contracts for immediate purchase of specific items or services.

Contract Type Settings

Purchase goods and services. This type of contract makes it possible for contract authors to create purchase orders in Oracle Fusion Purchasing or another integrated purchasing application from individual contract lines by adding contract deliverables. You can monitor the status of each purchase order directly from the deliverables.

- Class: Enterprise Contract
- Intent: Buy
- Allow Lines option: Selected
- You can add two types of lines:
 - Free-form

For items not tracked by inventory.

Item

For items tracked by inventory.

Case 3: Contracts for Future Purchases Without Lines

This table describes the key contract type setups for future-purchase contracts without lines.

Purpose of Contract

Contract Type Settings

Contract for future purchases, without specifying the goods and services as contract lines.

- Class: Agreement
- Intent: Buy
- Allow Lines option: Leave not enabled

Case 4: Contracts for Future Purchases with Lines

This table describes the key contract type setups for future-purchase contracts with lines.

Purpose of Contract

Contract Type Settings

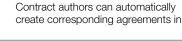
Create this type of contract when you know the detail of the goods or services you plan to buy from a specific supplier in a period, but you do not yet know the detail of your delivery schedules. You can use this type of contract, sometimes called a blanket purchase agreement, a standing order, or a blanket order, to specify negotiated prices for your items before actually purchasing them. Use this type of contract when you have negotiated volume discounts and want to create releases against these negotiated volumes, or when you commit to specific items, quantities, or amounts. You can issue a blanket release against a blanket purchase agreement to place the actual order (as

- Class: Agreement Intent: Buy
- Allow Lines option: Selected
- You can add the following types of lines:
 - Free-form

To purchase items not tracked by inventory.

Item

To purchase items tracked by inventory.



agreement effectivity dates).

ORACLE

long as the release is within the blanket

Purpose of Contract	Contract Type Settings
Oracle Fusion Purchasing or other integrated purchasing applications by adding contract deliverables and monitor the execution of those agreements from the deliverables.	

Special Contracts

This section describes the settings you want to use for partner agreements and for miscellaneous contracts.

Case 1: Partner Agreements

Use the following contract type settings for partner agreements in Oracle Partner Relationship Management.

Purpose of Contract	Contract Type Settings	
Partner enrollment agreement	Oracle Fusion Partner Relationship Management uses contract types only for applying contract terms templates with boilerplate contracts, so most of the contract type entries do not apply or have no effect.	
	 Class: Partner Agreement Intent: Sell You must enable contract terms authoring by selecting the Enable Terms Authoring option. 	

Case 2: Miscellaneous Contracts

The following table lists the key contract type settings for nondisclosure and other simple contracts.

Purpose of Contract	Contract Type Settings
Nondisclosure agreement	 Class: Enterprise Contract Intent: Sell Allow Lines option: Leave not enabled

Contract Types FAQ

Why can't I delete a contract type?

You cannot delete a contract type after it is used to create a contract. However, you can enter an end date to prevent its use in future contracts.

Do I have to create contract types to author contract terms on purchase orders or sourcing documents such as RFQs?

If you want to author contract terms on individual purchase orders or other Oracle Fusion Sourcing documents, such as RFQs, you are not required to set up contract types. This is because no enterprise contracts are created. The documents



themselves are the contracts. All setups to enable contract terms templates and contract terms authoring are done from within Oracle Fusion Purchasing and Sourcing applications.

Contract Relationships

Contract Relationships: Explained

Contract relationships are associations between contracts. Contract relationships provide supporting and referential information for negotiating contracts. For example, a software sales contract can be related to a hardware purchase contract, so that software pricing discounts can be calculated based on the volume of hardware purchases.

You can add, update, and remove contract relationships. Before you define a contract relationship, you must set the Enable Related Documents option in the contract type. You can create relationships only at the header level, and not at the line level.

The following rules apply to contract relationships:

- Contract relationships are one-sided. If contract A is related to contract B, contract B is not automatically related to contract A unless explicitly added.
- You can create or update relationships only for valid contracts.

Managing Contract Risks

How can I set up contract risk?

You select the Manage Risks task from the Setup and Maintenance work area. Contract authors use this list during contract authoring to record contract risks.

Recording contract risks helps your organization prepare for potential problems. It doesn't affect contract processing.

Note: Risk names must be unique.

Related Topics

How can I specify contract risk?

Enabling Different Levels of Contract Terms Editing During Contract Authoring: Explained

The level of editing a contract author can perform on contract terms depends on the privileges granted to them during security setup. This topic describes the different levels of editing privileges that system administrators can assign a contract author from the basic to the most advanced.



Privilege Levels and What They Permit

The following table lists the privileges that grant different levels of editing abilities from the basic to the most advanced. Each privilege adds additional authoring capabilities to the privileges before it, but the privileges are not cumulative. The contract author with a higher privilege must be granted privileges for the lower levels too. For example, a contract author with a level 3 privilege must be granted the level 1 and level 2 privileges as well.

Level	Privilege	Description
1	Author Standard Contract Terms and Conditions	Restricts contract authoring to applying contract terms templates, validating the contract, and running Contract Expert when required. It includes the ability to change the template or attach the contact terms as a file.
2	Author Additional Standard Contract Terms and Conditions	Adds the ability to add, delete, and move the standard clauses and sections after the contract terms template is applied. This includes the ability to select alternate clauses.
3	Author Nonstandard Contract Terms and Conditions	Allows authoring of nonstandard terms and conditions in the contract. This includes editing standard clauses, creating nonstandard clauses, removing contract terms, and importing edits made offline in Microsoft Word.
4	Override Contract Terms and Conditions Controls	Adds the ability to edit protected clauses and delete mandatory clauses and sections in contract terms.

Related Topics

How can I make a clause mandatory in a contract?

Setting Up Contract Text Search: Highlights

If you have implemented the Oracle Enterprise Crawl and Search Framework, you can enable text searches of contracts and their attachments from within the contracts application by running the following indexing schedules:

Indexing Schedule Name	Description
Enterprise Contracts	Indexes and enables text search on contracts created in Oracle Contracts.
Purchasing Contracts	Indexes and enables text search in the POs and agreements within Oracle Purchasing.
Sourcing Contracts	Indexes and enables text search in the RFIs and other negotiation documents in Oracle Sourcing.
Contract Documents	Indexes and enables text search in documents attached to Oracle Contracts.



Indexing Schedule Name	Description		
Purchasing Contract Documents	Indexes and enables text search in documents attached to Oracle Purchasing POs and agreements.		
Sourcing Contract Documents	Indexes and enables text search in the documents attached to Oracle Sourcing RFIs and other negotiation documents.		

Running Indexing Schedules

The management of indexing schedules is fully described in the Managing Search with Oracle Enterprise Crawl and Search Framework chapter in the Oracle Fusion Applications Administrator's Guide.

Deploying and starting indexing schedules.

See: Managing Index Schedules

Custom Validation of Contracts

Defining Custom Validation for Contracts: Procedure

In addition to the standard validation process that is done for all contracts, you can define your own custom validation for your contracts.

To define custom validation for your contracts, proceed as follows:

- 1. Create the custom packages only in the fusion_dynamic schema.
- 2. To prevent the object-does-not-exist compilation error, identify all Fusion objects to be queried, and grant access to those objects before creating the custom package. For example, the grants could be as follows:
 - GRANT SELECT ON okc validate contract t TO fusion dynamic;
 - GRANT INSERT ON okc_validate_contract_t TO fusion_dynamic;
 - o GRANT SELECT ON okc_k_headers_all_b TO fusion_dynamic;
- 3. Sign in as the Fusion user, and using the API ADM DDL.DO DDL(I stmt), create the custom package as follows:
 - Package : OKC_CUSTOM_VALIDATION_DYD
 - Procedure : CUSTOM_VALIDATIONS
 - Parameters: IN
 - p_contract_id : Contract Id of the contract i.e okc_k_headers_all_b.id
 - o p major version: Major Version of the contract i.e okc k headers all b.major version
 - o p sequence id: Use this sequence id to insert errors or warning into okc validate contract t
- 4. Define custom validation messages prefixed with OKC_CUSTOM_ in FND_MESSAGES under the product OKC.
- 5. Add custom validation logic to the procedure OKC_CUSTOM_VALIDATION_DYD.CUSTOM_VALIDATIONS.



Note: Please see the related topic mentioned below for an example.

How can I define custom validation for my contracts?

The following code is an example of defining custom validation for contracts as explained in the topic Defining Custom Validation for Contracts: Procedure.

```
Package Header
DECLARE
1 stmt clob;
BEGIN
L stmt := 'CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE OKC CUSTOM VALIDATION DYD AUTHID CURRENT USER AS '||'PROCEDURE
CUSTOM_VALIDATIONS ( '||'p_contract_id IN NUMBER, p_major_version IN NUMBER, p_sequence_id IN NUMBER) ; '||
'END OKC CUSTOM VALIDATION DYD ; ';
ADM_DDL.DO_DDL(l_stmt);
END;
Package Body
DECLARE
1_stmt clob;
BEGIN
L stmt :=
'CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE body OKC CUSTOM VALIDATION DYD AS
PROCEDURE CUSTOM_VALIDATIONS(p_contract_id IN NUMBER, p_major_version IN NUMBER, p_sequence_id IN NUMBER) IS
CURSOR csr_test_val IS
SELECT h.id , h.major version, h.contract number, h.contract number modifier FROM fusion.okc k headers all b h
WHERE h.id = p_contract_id AND h.major_version = p_major_version AND 1 = 1;
BEGIN
FOR rec_test_val IN csr_test_val
LOOP
INSERT INTO fusion.okc_validate_contract_t
SEQUENCE_ID,
DOCUMENT_TYPE,
DOCUMENT ID,
DOCUMENT VERSION,
OBJECT GROUP,
OBJECT TYPE,
OBJECT ID,
OBJECT NAME,
CONTRACT_NUMBER,
CONTRACT_NUMBER_MODIFIER,
ERROR SEVERITY,
QA CODE,
MESSAGE_NAME,
MESSAGE TOKEN1,
MESSAGE VALUE1
MESSAGE TOKEN2,
MESSAGE VALUE2,
MESSAGE TOKEN3,
MESSAGE_VALUE3,
MESSAGE TOKEN4
MESSAGE VALUE4,
MESSAGE_TOKEN5 ,
MESSAGE VALUE5,
PROBLEM SHORT DESC,
PROBLEM DETAILS,
PROBLEM DETAILS SHORT,
SUGGESTION,
REFERENCE COLUMN1,
REFERENCE COLUMN2,
REFERENCE_COLUMN3,
```



```
REFERENCE_COLUMN4,
REFERENCE_COLUMN5,
OBJECT VERSION NUMBER,
CREATION_DATE,
CREATED_BY,
LAST UPDATED BY,
LAST UPDATE DATE,
LAST_UPDATE_LOGIN
)
VALUES
(
p_sequence_id, --SEQUENCE_ID,
''ECM'', --DOCUMENT_TYPE,
rec_test_val.id, --DOCUMENT_ID,
rec_test_val.major_version, --DOCUMENT_VERSION,
''CONTRACT'', --OBJECT GROUP,
''HEADER'', --OBJECT_TYPE,
rec test val.id, --OBJECT ID,
rec_test_val.contract_number , --OBJECT_NAME,
rec_test_val.contract_number , --CONTRACT_NUMBER,
rec_test_val.contract_number_modifier , --CONTRACT_NUMBER_MODIFIER,
''E'', -- ERROR SEVERITY,
''CHECK CUSTOM_VALIDATION1'', -- QA_CODE,
''OKC CUSTOM TEST VAL1'', -- MESSAGE NAME DEFINED BY CUSTOMER,
NULL, -- MESSAGE_TOKEN1,
NULL, -- MESSAGE_VALUE1 ,
NULL, -- MESSAGE_TOKEN2,
NULL, -- MESSAGE VALUE2,
NULL, -- MESSAGE TOKEN3,
NULL, -- MESSAGE VALUE3,
NULL, -- MESSAGE TOKEN4,
NULL, -- MESSAGE_VALUE4,
NULL, -- MESSAGE_TOKEN5 ,
NULL, -- MESSAGE_VALUE5,
NULL, -- PROBLEM_SHORT_DESC,
NULL, -- PROBLEM DETAILS,
NULL, -- PROBLEM_DETAILS_SHORT,
NULL, -- SUGGESTION,
NULL, -- REFERENCE COLUMN1,
NULL, -- REFERENCE COLUMN2,
NULL, -- REFERENCE COLUMN3,
NULL, -- REFERENCE_COLUMN4,
NULL, -- REFERENCE COLUMN5,
1, -- OBJECT_VERSION_NUMBER,
SYSTIMESTAMP, --CREATION_DATE,
-1, --CREATED_BY,
-1, -- LAST_UPDATED_BY,
SYSTIMESTAMP, --LAST UPDATE DATE,
-1 --LAST UPDATE LOGIN
);
commit work:
END LOOP ;
EXCEPTION
WHEN OTHERS THEN
IF (csr_test_val%ISOPEN) THEN
CLOSE csr_test_val;
END IF;
END CUSTOM_VALIDATIONS ;
END OKC CUSTOM VALIDATION DYD ; ';
ADM DDL.DO DDL(1 stmt);
END:
/
```



Approving Contracts

Predefined Approval Flows for Oracle Contracts: Explained

In Oracle Contracts, you can configure approval rules for the approval of contracts, clauses, and terms templates. To do this, you use the Approvals Management Extensions (AMX) of the Oracle Service-Oriented Architecture (SOA) suite and Oracle Business Process Management Suite (BPM). BPM provides the interface to administer the approval rules. BPM Worklist administrators can access the approval rules in the BPM Worklist. Oracle Contracts provides predefined approval flows or approval tasks and predefined rule sets for them. You can use the BPM Worklist to configure the rules for a predefined approval task rule set and configure the approval group for each task. Using Oracle JDeveloper, you can edit this flow and create additional approval flows for contracts with different approval requirements.

Oracle Contracts has three predefined approval flows or approval tasks each with a predefined rule set for which you can configure the rules and approval groups based on your approval requirements.

Approval Task	Rule Set	Approval Group	Default Approver in Group	Purpose
ContractsApproval (1.0)	ContractApprovalStage : ContractsApproval	ContractApprovalGroup	customer_ contract_ manager_ vision_ operations	To approve contract attributes or contract deviation attributes before using the contract
ContractClauseApproval (1.0)	ClauseApprovalStage : ContractClauseApproval	ClauseApprovalGroup	Business Practices Director Operations	To approve clause or term attributes before adding them to the Terms Library
TemplateApprovalHumanTas TermsTemplateApprovalStag TemplateApprovalGroup (1.0) TemplateApproval			Business Practices Director Operations	To approve terms template attributes before using the terms template for a contract

As a contract administrator, you can see an Administration link displayed in the upper right corner of the BPM Worklist. To create new rules or modify existing rules, click the Administration link, click the Task Configuration tab, select the required task in the left panel, click the Data Driven tab, and select the appropriate rule set. To create or modify approval groups, click the Administration link, click the Approval Groups tab, and select the required approval group in the left panel.

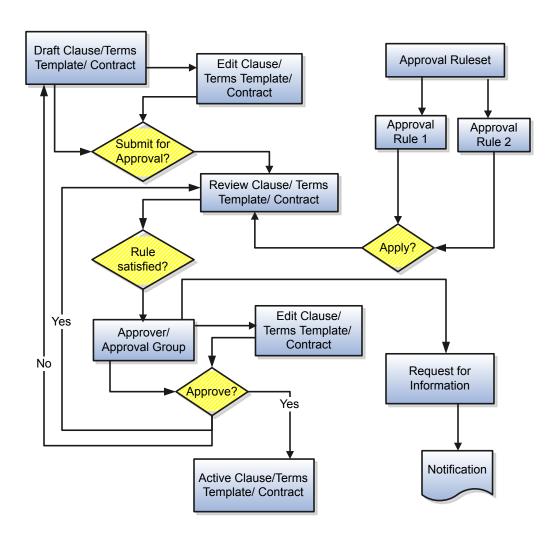
The approval process is the same for a supplier contract and a customer contract. Therefore, when you submit a clause, terms template or contract for approval in Procurement or in Sales, the contract approval process is invoked, which in turn invokes a set of approval rules created in AMX to build the list of approvers. AMX then sends out approval notifications to the first set of approvers and then again to the next set of approvers in the approval list every time it receives a response to an approval notification. This process is repeated until all approvals are complete.



To configure approval rules for Contracts, you can access approval tasks from the list of Tasks to be Configured using the following methods:

- Click the Setup and Maintenance link in the navigator and search for Approval Management tasks. Expand Define Approval Management for Customer Relationship Management and click on the Go to Task button under Manage Task Configurations for Customer Relationship Management.
- Click on the Administration link displayed in the upper right corner of the BPM Worklist application and then click the Task Configuration tab.

The following figure illustrates the predefined approval flows.



The approval process is described below.

- 1. When the contract, clause, or terms template is submitted, based on whether it satisfies the task payload attributes of the approval rule and its conditions, it is routed to the approver or approval group specified in the approval rule. The approver or majority of approvers in the group can then do any of the following:
 - o Approve the contract, clause, or terms template as is



- A link for viewing the contract is included in contract notifications by default. However, the link can be hidden using personalization
- Reject the contract, clause, or terms template

If approved and the contract, clause, or terms template satisfies other approval rule attributes and conditions, the approval process continues as described above. If rejected, the approval process ends.

2. If the contract, clause, or terms template does not satisfy any further approval rules, based on the last approval rule result, the approval process either ends or the contract, clause, or terms template is activated.

Approval Management Extensions (AMX) configuration options for Oracle Contracts determine most of the actions that are available to the participants in the approval process. For example, as an approver:

- You can reject the contract, clause, or terms template.
 - By default, the approval process stops when the contract, clause, or terms template is rejected and the contract, clause, or terms template returns to draft status for further editing and resubmission.
 - By default, the next approver or approval group of the next applicable approval rule is notified when you
 approve the contract, clause, or terms template.
 - You can also request more information from the other approver, the person who submits for approval, or both. Such requests do not affect control of the approval process, but the person from whom information is requested receives a worklist notification.
- You cannot edit a contract in pending approval status. You can enter comments in the Notification Task Details page and reject it, so that, the approval requestor can edit it.
- You can perform ad hoc insertion of approvers.
- You can delegate your approval responsibilities to other approvers.
- You can claim the approval and respond. By default, the approval process stops at the first response and the response of the first approver that responds becomes the response for the approval group.

If you change the default settings of the AMX configuration options, then different actions or action outcomes become available to this approval flow.

The approval flows for Contracts contains the following predefined rule sets:

- Approval of contract based on estimated contract amount
- Approval by clause approval group based on contract intent
- Approval by template approval group based on contract intent

Approval of Contract Based on Estimated Contract Amount

The predefined rule set for approval of contracts is called ContractApprovalStage: ContractsApproval rule set.

The predefined rules include the following:

- Approval for a contract with no estimated amount
- Approval for contracts with an estimated amount that is more than 30,000
- Approval for contracts with an estimated amount that is equal to or less than 30,000

You can change the predefined rules, delete the rules, or add additional rules as needed.



Rule	Field	Predefined Value	Description
Estimate_ Amount_Rule1	Condition	Task. payload. getContractHeaderResponse. result. estimatedAmount	Applicable for a total estimated contract amount of 30,000 or less.
	List Builder	Resource	The name of the approver
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Participants - Users	customer_ contract_ manager_ vision_ operations	The name or ID of the contract manager.
	Participants - Groups	null	The group ID of the contract manager is not required.
	Participants - Apps Role	null	The role of the contract manager in the application is not required.
Estimate_ Amount_Rule2	Condition	Task. payload. getContractHeaderResponse. result. estimatedAmount	Applicable for a total estimated contract amount of more than 30,000.
	List Builder	Approval Group	Configurable list of approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Approval Group	ContractApprovalGroup	The group of approvers configured to approve the contract.
	Allow empty groups	True	The group may have only the one default approver of contract manager.
Estimate_ Amount_Rule3	Condition	Task. payload. getContractHeaderResponse. result. estimatedAmount	Applicable for a total estimated contract amount of null.
	List Builder	Resource	The name of the approver
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Participants - Users	customer_ contract_ manager_ vision_ operations	The name or ID of the contract manager.
	Participants - Groups	null	The group ID of the contract manager is not required.



Rule	Field	Predefined Value	Description
	Participants - Apps Role	null	The role of the contract manager in the application is not required.

Approval by Clause Approval Group Based on Contract Intent

The predefined rule set for approval of contract clauses by the approval group is called ClauseApprovalStage: ContractClauseApproval rule set.

This rule set has two predefined rules:

- Approval by the group if the clause is of intent sell.
- Approval by the group if the clause is of intent buy

You can change the predefined rules, delete the rules, or add additional rules as needed.

Rule	Field	Predefined Value	Description
SellIntentClauseApproval	Condition	Task. payload. getContractClauseApprovalRuleAttril result. articleIntent	Applicable for approval of a new clause of intent sell.
	List Builder	Approval Group	Configurable list of approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Approval Group	ClauseApprovalGroup	The group of approvers configured to approve the new clause.
	Allow empty groups	False	The group must have one or more approvers.
BuyIntentClauseApproval	Condition	Task. payload. getContractClauseApprovalRuleAttril result. articleIntent	Applicable for approval of a new clause of intent buy.
	List Builder	Approval Group	Configurable list of approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Approval Group	ClauseApprovalGroup	The group of approvers configured to approve the new clause.
	Allow empty groups	False	The group must have one or more approvers.



Approval by Template Approval Group Based on Contract Intent

The predefined rule set for approval of a terms template by a group of approvers is called TermsTemplateApprovalStage: TemplateApproval rule set

This rule set has two predefined rules:

- Approval by the group if the terms template is of intent sell.
- Approval by the group if the terms template is of intent buy.

You can change the predefined rules, delete the rules, or add additional rules as needed.

Rule	Field	Predefined Value	Description
Rule_1	Condition	Task. payload. getTermsTemplateResponse. result.intent	Applicable for approval of a new terms template of intent buy.
	List Builder	Approval Group	Configurable list of approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Approval Group	TemplateApprovalGroup	The group of approvers configured to approve the terms template.
	Allow Empty Groups	False	The group must have one or more approvers.
Rule_2	Condition	Task. payload. getTermsTemplateResponse. result.intent	Applicable for approval of a new terms template of intent sell
	List Builder	Approval Group	Configurable list of approvers.
	Response Type	Required	The approval notification requires a response.
	Approval Group	TemplateApprovalGroup	The group of approvers configured to approve the terms template.
	Allow Empty Groups	False	The group must have one or more approvers.



Configuring Approval Rules for Contracts: Explained

Approval rules are rules that you configure in Approval Management Extensions (AMX) for the approval of contracts, contract clauses, and terms templates. Oracle Fusion Enterprise Contracts provides three predefined human tasks for contract approval, clause approval, and terms template approval. The contract approval human task has eight rule sets that are connected in a combination of series and parallel stages. The clause approval and terms template approval human tasks each provide one rule set. By using the BPM Worklist, you can define new approval rules or modify existing ones in AMX. To manage approval rules, you must be a BPM Worklist administrator.

If you are authorized to manage approval rules, you can:

- Modify existing approval rules
- Define new approval rules
- Understand and apply properties of rules and rule sets

If you are authorized to manage approval rules, click on the Administration link in the upper right corner of the BPM Worklist. To define new approval rules or modify existing ones, click the Task Configuration tab and select the appropriate approval task for Contracts from the panel on the left under Tasks to be configured. Then navigate to the Rules tab. The participant tree displays all the stages of approval and the rule sets for each stage. Each rule set contains one or more approval rules. Each approval rule has an approval condition and a list of approvers. The list of approvers derived for each rule set is called a Participant. To modify rules, first click on the Edit icon and then click on the Participant. You can now modify or add rules. To generate the list of approvers, each rule requires a list builder to be associated with it.

For approval, each contract, clause, or terms template must satisfy at least one rule within a rule set. If it does not satisfy any rule in a rule set, the approval process errors and an incident is reported in Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control.

Modifying Existing Approval Rules

You can use the Edit icon in the Tasks to be configured pane and select the approval stage to modify rules in the rule set. You can now add, modify, or delete rules within the specified rule set. Expand the rule to view the existing if then conditions. You can change the condition criteria or values or the result or consequent action of the condition. Click on the Commit Task icon in the Tasks to be configured pane for the changes to take effect. Clicking on the Save icon saves the changes, but does not activate them. To undo changes, use the Reset icon.

Defining New Approval Rules

To create new rules, you must provide values for the following rule components:

- · Condition: Criteria that a contract, contract clause, or terms template must satisfy
- Response type: Required or FYI. A response from the approver is required or the notification is informational.
- List builder: Creates a list of approvers for a specific notification

To define a condition, select a Payload Type value from the list of values in the left-most condition field in the IF region. The Condition Browser displays. In the Condition Browser, open a view object (folder) and select the attribute that you want to use as the criteria. You can add multiple conditions to a rule. An example of a condition is:

getContractHeaderResponse.result,estimatedAmount more than 30,000.

The following table lists view objects (folders) that are visible in the Condition Browser with their associated attributes and descriptions.



Note: The values in this table are the only ones that are relevant for you to select as conditions for contract approval rules.

View Object in Condition Browser	View Object Attribute	Description
PayloadType	getContractHeader	Contract identifier
PayloadType	getContractHeaderResponse	All contract header attributes listed under the Result subfolder such as estimated contract amount, contract type, freight terms, payment type, tax, and risk code
PayloadType	getDeviationResponse	Deviation attributes listed directly under Payload Type such as invalid, non standard, and missing clauses, policy deviation, party, and submitter
PayloadType	articleVersionId	Clause version
PayloadType	clauseTitle	Clause title or name
PayloadType	getContractsClauseApprovalRuleAttributes	All contract clause attributes such as intent, clause type, organization ID, and display name
PayloadType	getTermsTemplate	Terms template identifier
PayloadType	getTermsTemplateResponse	All terms template attributes such as intent, layout name, organization ID, terms template language, and contract expert enabled

Each approval notification generated from an approval rule must have a response type of Required or FYI. You specify the applicable response type in the THEN region on the Data driven configuration page of the BPM Worklist. If the approver should take an action in response to the notification, click the Required radio button. If the approval notification is designed as information only, click the FYI radio button.

Each rule requires a list builder to build the list of approvers. The following table shows the list builder types that are available in the BPM Worklist with their associated descriptions.

List Builder Type	Description
Supervisory	Ascends the primary supervisory hierarchy, starting at the contract submitter or at a given approver, and generates the approval chain.
Job Level	Ascends the supervisory hierarchy, starting at a given approver and continuing until an approver with the appropriate job level is found.
Position	Ascends the position hierarchy, starting at a given approver's position and continuing until an approver with the appropriate position is found.



List Builder Type	Description
Resource	A list of approvers. You can choose a user name or a function that returns a set of approvers.
Approval Group	Group of approvers. You can create approver groups consisting of a list of users for use in the rule sets.

Each list builder type requires values for specific fields to build its approval list. In the THEN region on the Data driven configuration page of the BPM Worklist, select a type of list builder from the List Builder drop-down list and click the **Create Action** button. The Add Variable dialog box displays where you add specific variables for specific list builders.

The following table indicates the fields associated with each list builder type for which you must select specific values.

List Builder Type	Field	Description	Values to Select and Sample Data
Resource	Participants	Participants can be users, groups, or application roles. For users, use a static user name or a function to retrieve a user name.	For example, use customer_ contract_ manager_ vision_ operations as the user.
Approval Group	Approval Group	Enter the approval group name. To select an approval group as a list builder, you must create the static approval groups in the BPM Worklist.	For example, use ContractApprovalGroup.

Creating Deviation-Based Rules and Rerouting Approval

You can create new approval rules for specific contract deviations in the Rules tab for the Contract Approval Human Task. To reroute approval for the Contract Approval task, select the participant level in the approval hierarchy or participant tree in the Rules tab at which to add the new deviation-based rule.

Click on the Edit icon, and then click on the Participant. You can now add a new rule to the ContractsApproval rule set. Select the required IF condition from the Condition Browser and expand the condition object to select the appropriate attribute and in the IF section of the equalsIgnoreCase condition row expand the TermsDeviations object, select the appropriate attribute and enter the contract deviation value for which you are creating additional approval routing. In the THEN section of the row, select the Approval Group List Builder, the Required Response Type, and the appropriate new approval group for the deviation that the contract approval routing must now include.

Note: You must have set up the required Approver Groups in the Approval Group tab.

For example, in the case of standard clause jurisdiction being added to the contract, you can choose to additionally route the approval to the Legal team. In this case you would select the Legal Team as the Approver Group for the Jurisdiction condition value for the attribute articleTitle. The test would be for the condition value of OKC_STD_ARTICLES_ADDED for the deviationCategoryCode attribute.

Understanding and Applying Properties of Rules and Rule Sets

The following are properties of rules and rule sets that you need to understand and apply.

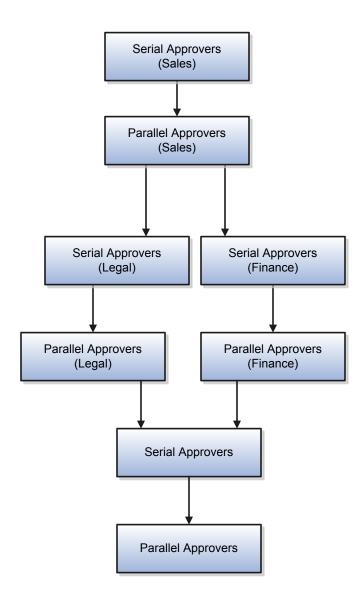
New rule sets can only be created using Oracle JDeveloper.



- For each contract, clause, or terms template, one rule must be true within each rule set. If not one rule in the rule set is satisfied, the approval process will error.
- Since there can be only one rule that applies in a rule set for each contract, contract clause or terms template, you must configure the rules at the most granular level applicable and use priority within the rule to differentiate overlapping conditions. AMX does not support nested conditions.
- All rule sets are executed in parallel or in serial with respect to the Approval Stage of the contract, clause, or terms template.
- Serial rule sets are designed to execute the approval process in a sequential order. The approvers in the approval list
 for any rule included in these rule sets are notified in a sequential order.
- To deactivate a rule set, check the **Ignore this participant** check box for that rule set.
- If the participants cannot be determined, then AMX sends out a failure notification to the user with an incident identifier. Administrators can access the incident details through the Support Workbench of the Oracle Enterprise



Manager Grid Control application and restart the approval process in Oracle Enterprise Manager Grid Control after resolving the issues in the incident report.



Related Topics

- Approval Management: Highlights
- Reviewing Contract Deviations: How It Works



Contract Preview and Printing

Contract Printing and Layout Templates: Explained

Previewing and printing clauses, reports, contracts, and contract terms uses a number of Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher layout templates which specify what information is displayed in the contract and supply the headers, footers, text style, and pagination. The layout templates are RTF files stored in the BI Presentation Catalog. The application comes with samples of all the required layout templates. You can copy the sample layout templates described here, and edit the copies to add your own boilerplate text, font styles, and logos.

You can copy and edit layout templates used for:

- Printing enterprise contracts, including partner agreements
- Printing purchasing and sourcing documents
- Printing the report of contract deviations that can be attached to contract approval notifications
- Previewing contract terms templates
- Previewing and importing clauses into the Contract Terms Library

The sample layout templates are available in different subfolders within the Enterprise Contracts folder in the catalog. You can navigate to the folders in the catalog either from the Reports and Analytics pane or by selecting the **Reports and Analytics** link in the Navigator. Contact your system administrator to grant you the appropriate BI duty roles if these are not available.

You can download the sample templates, copy them, and edit the copies. When you upload your edited copy to the same directory, it becomes immediately available for use within the application. For specific details of customizing BI templates, see the Reports chapter in the "Oracle Sales Cloud Creating Analytics and Reports" manual.

▲ Caution: The catalog includes additional layout templates which are used internally by the application. You can edit only the layout templates listed below.

Printing Enterprise Contracts

The application uses two layout templates for printing enterprise contracts, including partner agreements:

• The contract layout template

This layout template provides the layout for printing the contract except for the contract terms.

There are two sample layout templates available for you to copy and edit. Both sample layout templates are available in the same directory. The following lists layout templates that are used for contract header information:

Sample Layout Template Name	Description	Location in BI Publisher Catalog Directory
SupplierContract	The layout of contract information for buy- intent contracts.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Printing/ Contract Preview
CustomerContract	The layout of contract information for sell-intent contracts, including partner agreements.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Printing/ Contract Preview



Sample Layout Template Name	Description	Location in Bl Publisher Catalog Directory
SalesAgreement	The layout of contract information for sell-intent agreements.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Printing/ Contract Preview

The contract terms layout template

This template provides the layout of the structured terms for printing and for downloading the contract terms for editing offline in Microsoft Word.

If printing an amended contract, the layout template selected determines whether only a summary of amendments is printed, or both the amendment summary and the amended contract terms and conditions are printed.

Note: You cannot download the amendment summary to Word. The following is a listing of the layout templates used for structured terms:

File Name	Description	Location in Bl Publisher Catalog Directory
ContractTermsECM	The layout for printing the contract terms in enterprise contracts when the contract terms are authored in the application.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Download and Preview
ContractTermsAmendmentsOnlyECM	The layout for only printing a summary of the amendments made to contract terms in enterprise contracts.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Preview
ContractTermsPlusAmendmentsECM	The layout for printing the contract terms in enterprise contracts when the contract terms are authored in the application. In addition, for a contract that is under amendment, a summary of the amendments made to contract terms is included.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Preview

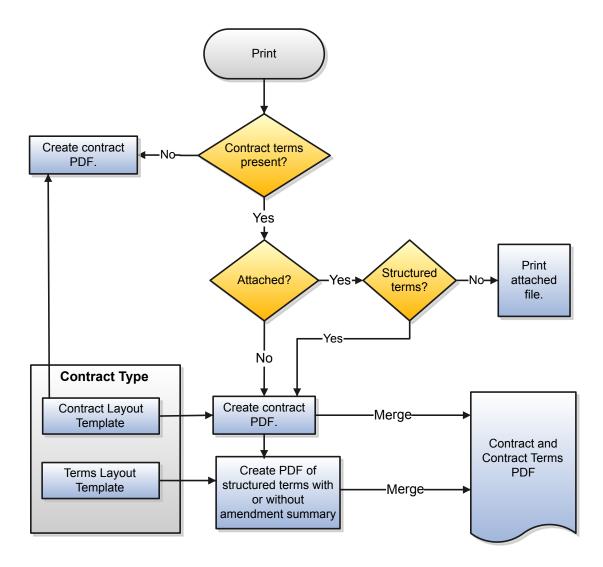
You specify which templates you want to use during contract type setup. This means that you can create different layout templates for each contract type. To set up contract types, select **Manage Contract Types** action from the Setup and Maintenance work area or **Contract Types** under the Setup task heading in the Contracts work area.

The following figure outlines how the application uses the layout templates when you print an enterprise contract:

- The application uses the contract layout template, specified in the Contract Layout field of the contract type, to
 create a PDF of the contract. If the contract does not include any contract terms, this is the only layout template
 used.
- If the contract includes structured terms, then the application uses the contract terms layout template specified in the **Terms Layout Template** field to create the contract terms PDF. To create the contract terms PDF, you must set the terms layout template in contract type.
- If you made amendments to the contract terms and the terms layout template specified includes an amendment summary, then the application creates a PDF document of the amendment summary. If amendments were made and the specified terms layout template includes both the amendment summary and the amended terms of the contract, then the application creates a PDF document of both.



- If the contract terms are attached as a file and the file retains the structured terms format, the application creates the contract terms PDF from the file. Contract terms attached as a file can retain the structured XML format if the file was downloaded from the application using the **Download Contract** action.
- The application then merges the two generated PDFs (one for the basic contract and the other for contract terms)
 into a single PDF.
- If the contract terms are attached in a file that is not structured, then the application prints only the contents of
 the file. It does not print the contract information in the application or use either layout template. If you need help
 in editing the layout templates, download the sample XML file provided in Enterprise Contracts/Contract Printing/
 ContractPrintDm.



Printing of Contract Terms on Purchase Orders and Sourcing Documents

For printing purchasing documents with structured terms, Oracle Procurement uses two layout templates.

- The document layout template supplied by Oracle Procurement which is located in the Procurement folder.
- The contract terms layout template.



The following table lists the sample files provided:

File Name	Description	Location in BI Publisher Catalog Directory
ContractTermsProcurement	The layout for printing the contract terms in enterprise contracts when you author contract terms in the application.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Download and Preview
ContractTermsAmendmentsOnlyProcurement	The layout for only printing a summary of the amendments made to contract terms in enterprise contracts.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Download and Preview
ContractTermsPlusAmendmentsProcurement	The layout for printing the contract terms in enterprise contracts when you author the contract terms in the application. In addition, for a contract that is under amendment, a summary of the amendments made to contract terms is included.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Download and Preview

You select both of these templates while setting up business unit properties using the **Configure Procurement Business Function** task available by navigating to the Setup and Maintenance work area.

If you attach the contract terms rather than authoring them in the application and the attached file is not structured, then Procurement uses a third layout template which includes a brief sentence explaining that the contract terms are contained in a separate document. That template is:

File Name	Description	Location in BI Publisher Catalog Directory
ContractTermsNoMerge	This layout template includes the following text: The contract terms for this (doc type) are listed in a separate document which is either attached to the e-mail you received or sent separately. These contract terms should be read in conjunction with this {doc type}. The document type name is substituted in the printed contract.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Attached Contract Preview

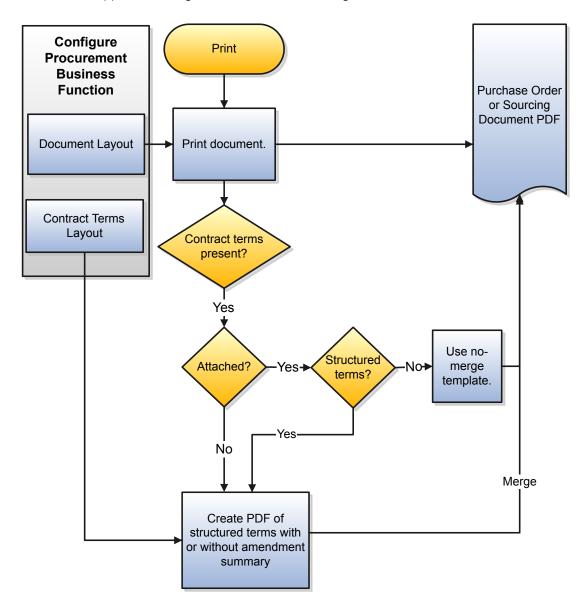
▲ Caution: If you edit the contractTermsNoMerge layout template, then you must save it under the same name in the same directory.

The following figure outlines how the procurement application uses these layout templates for printing:

- 1. The application uses the document layout template specified in the Document Layout field in the PO or purchase agreement to create the PDF.
- 2. If the contract includes structured terms, then the application uses the contact terms layout template to generate the contract terms PDF.
- 3. If the contract terms are attached as a file and the file retains the structured terms format, then the application creates the contract terms PDF from the file. Contract terms attached as a file can retain the structured XML format if the file was downloaded from the application using the **Download Contract** action.
- **4.** If the contract terms are attached as a file that is not structured, then the application creates a small PDF of the message contained in the layout template **contractTermsNoMerge**.



5. The application merges the two PDFs into a single document PDF.



Printing the Contract Deviations Report

The application uses the contract deviations layout template to generate a PDF report of deviations of a contract from company standards. This report can be automatically attached to the notification sent to the contract approvers during contract authoring. You can create different layout templates for each business unit. You specify which layout template you want to use in a specific business unit using either the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** or the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** tasks. These tasks are available in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Separate sample layout files are available for buy-intent and sell-intent contracts. Both are located in the same directory: The following is a list of the layout templates used for the contract deviations report:



File Name	Description	Location in Bl Publisher Catalog Directory
SupplierContractDeviations	The layout for printing the contract deviations for all buy-intent contracts.	Enterprise Contracts/ Deviations Report/ Deviations Report
SupplierContractDeviations	The layout for printing the contract deviations for all sell-intent contracts.	Enterprise Contracts/ Deviations Report/ Deviations Report

Previewing Contract Terms Templates

Contract Terms Library administrators as well as contract authors can preview the content of a template by selecting the preview icon. For example, a contract author may want to preview a template to verify they are selecting the correct one. The preview lists all the clauses and sections the template contains and any boilerplate included in the layout template. It does not list any additional clauses inserted by Contract Expert rules.

You can create different layout templates for each contract terms template. You specify the layout template to be used for the preview on the General tab while editing the contract terms template. The sample layout template is:

File Name	Description	Location in BI Publisher Catalog Directory
ContractTermsTemplate	This layout template specifies the layout of the contract terms template preview.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Download and Preview

Previewing and Importing Clauses

The application uses the clause layout template for:

- Formatting individual clauses for preview:

 Library administrators can use the preview icon to view preview of individual clauses on the clause search page.
- Formatting clauses imported from outside the application. This applies only to non-Cloud installations.

You can specify which template you want to use in a specific business unit using either the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** or the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** tasks. These tasks are available in the **Setup and Maintenance** work area.

The sample layout template provided is:

File Name	Description	Location in BI Publisher Catalog Directory
ContractTermsLibraryClause	Specifies the layout of clause text in the Contract Terms Library.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Clause Export and Preview

Related Topics

- · Creating and Editing Report Layouts: Overview
- Contract Terms Templates: How They Work
- Importing Clauses into the Contract Terms Library: Explained



Contract Preview and Printing FAQ

Can I print a contract if there are no layout templates specified for a contract type?

No, you cannot print or create a PDF of a contract if no contract layout template is specified in the contract type that was used to create the contract. If you do not specify the terms layout template, you cannot preview the contract terms as a PDF.

What's a layout template?

A RTF document that contains the contract layout for printing and preview. The templates, which can include both formatting, graphics, text, and other layout elements, are stored in the Oracle BI Publisher library. You must specify layout templates when you create a contract type to enable printing and preview of contract, contract terms and conditions, and summary of amendments made to contract terms.





10 Setting Up Procurement Contracts Configurations

Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties

Supplier Contracts Business Unit Setup: Explained

You can specify a variety of business function settings for supplier contracts in a specific business unit using the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** task, available by selecting Setup and Maintenance from the Navigator and searching on the task name.

The selections you make for these business functions impact how the Contract Terms Library behaves during supplier contract authoring.

Note: The customer must select a default currency in the customer or supplier business function properties page, if not automatically populated from the ledger assigned to the business unit in the assign business function setup task.

Managing Contract Terms Library Setup Options

The setup options available for the Contract Terms Library are applicable to both customer and supplier contracts, and are described in the business unit setup topic for the Contract Terms Library. That topic is available as a related link to this topic.

Related Topics

Contract Terms Library Business Unit Setup: Explained

Contract Terms Library Business Unit Setup: Explained

You can specify a wide variety of Contract Terms Library settings for either customer or supplier contracts within each business unit, by using either the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** or the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** tasks. These tasks are available by navigating to the **Setup and Maintenance** work area and searching on the task name.

For the Contract Terms Library in each business unit, you can:

- Enable clause and template adoption.
- Set the clause numbering method.
- Set the clause numbering level for automatic clause numbering of contracts.
- For a contract with no assigned ledger or legal entity, set the document sequence to Global or Business Unit level.
- Enable the Contract Expert enabling feature.



Specify the layout for printed clauses and contract deviation reports.

Enabling Clause Adoption

If you plan to use clause adoption in your implementation, then set up the following:

1. Specify a global business unit

You must designate one of the business units in your organization as the global business unit by selecting the **Global Business Unit** option. This makes it possible for the other local business units to adopt and use approved content from that global business unit. If the **Global Business Unit** option is not available for the business unit you are setting up, this means that you already designated another business unit as global.

2. Enable automatic adoption

If you are implementing the adoption feature, then you can have all the global clauses in the global business unit automatically approved and available for use in the local business by selecting the **Autoadopt Global Clauses** option. If you do not select this option, the employee designated as the Contract Terms Library Administrator must approve all global clauses before they can be adopted and used in the local business unit. This option is available only for local business units.

3. Specify the administrator who approves clauses available for adoption

You must designate an employee as the Contract Terms Library administrator if you are using adoption. If you do not enable automatic adoption, then the administrator must adopt individual clauses or localize them for use in the local business unit. The administrator can also copy over any contract terms templates created in the global business unit. The clauses and contract terms templates available for adoption are listed in the administrator's Terms Library work area.

Setting Clause Numbering Options

You can set up automatic clause numbering for the clauses in the business unit by selecting Automatic in the **Clause Numbering** field and setting the clause numbering level. Then select the appropriate clause sequence category for the specified numbering level. You must have previously set up document sequences for the document sequence categories of global, ledger, and business unit. If clause numbering is manual, contract terms library administrators must enter unique clause numbers each time they create a clause.

You can choose to display the clause number in front of the clause title in contracts by selecting the **Display Clause Number in Clause Title** option.

Enabling Contract Expert

You must select the **Enable Contract Expert** option to be able to use the Contract Expert feature in a business unit. This setting takes precedence over enabling Contract Expert for individual contract terms templates.

Specifying the Printed Clause and Deviations Report Layouts

For each business unit, you can specify the Oracle BI Publisher RTF file that serves as the layout for:

The printed contract terms

Enter the RTF file you want used for formatting the printed clauses in the Clause Layout Template field.

The contract deviations report

The RTF file you select as the **Deviations Layout Template** determines the appearance of the contract deviations report PDF. This PDF is attached to the approval notification sent to contract approvers.



Related Topics

- How the Selection of a Business Unit Affects Clauses and Other Objects in the Library
- Contract Expert: How It Works
- Contract Printing and Layout Templates: Explained

Configuring Supplier Contract Fulfillment

Types of Contract Fulfillment: Explained

This topic explains what types of contract fulfillment lines you can create in a supplier contract, and how you can use them to create and monitor purchasing documents in your purchasing applications.

Types of Contract Fulfillment You Can Create

You can create two types of contract fulfillment:

Contractual

Fulfillment lines that are covered by the terms of the contract. You can initiate standard purchase orders or purchase agreements from contractual fulfillment lines, depending on the purpose of the contract.

Noncontractual

Fulfillment lines that aren't negotiated as part of the contract, which are used to monitor the progress or quality of contractual fulfillment lines. You can also create purchase orders and purchase agreements from noncontractual fulfillment lines.

A contract fulfillment of either type can have one or two directions:

Inbound

The fulfillment is the responsibility of the external party, such as the supplier for buy-intent contracts.

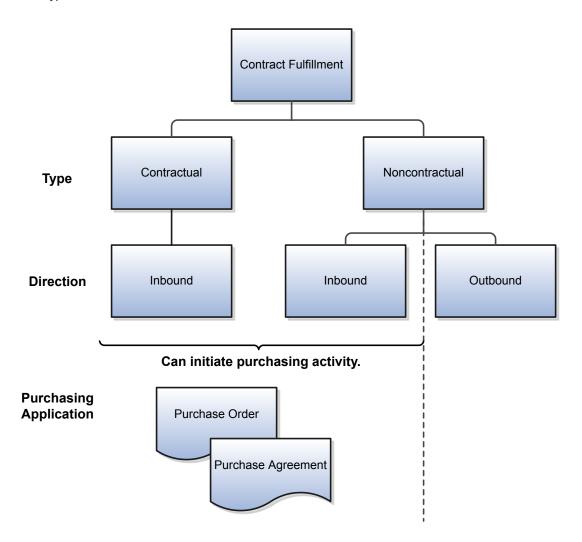
Outbound

The fulfillment is the responsibility of the internal party, such as the buyer for buy-intent contracts.

You can initiate purchasing activity for buy intent contracts only from inbound fulfillment lines. Contractual fulfillment lines are always inbound for buy contracts.



The following figure illustrates the different contract fulfillment types. The purchasing activity you can initiate and track from each type is discussed in the next section.



Types of Purchasing Activities That a Contract Fulfillment Can Initiate

You can initiate purchase orders or purchase agreements from fulfillment lines, depending on the purpose of the contract.

- 1. The contract is used for immediate purchases and has at least one contract line item defined.
 - You can create purchase orders from the fulfillment lines of such contracts. The contract type class for such contracts must be **Enterprise Contract**.
- 2. The contract is used for future purchases and has at least one contract line item defined.
 - You can create blanket purchase agreements from the fulfillment lines of such contracts.
- 3. The contract is used for future purchases and doesn't have contract line items defined.
 - You can create contract purchase agreements from the fulfillment lines of such contracts.



The following table lists the purchasing documents that you can create from different contract fulfillment lines in Oracle Fusion Purchasing, the purchasing application that is integrated with Oracle Fusion Enterprise Contracts.

Fulfillment Properties	Purchasing Document Created in Oracle Fusion Purchasing
 The fulfillment is inbound. Contract is for immediate purchase. The contract includes contract lines. 	Purchase order You can create only one purchase order from each fulfillment line, but you can create multiple fulfillment lines for each contract line if you have to stagger the purchases or ship to different destinations, for example. You can also combine multiple fulfillment lines to create one purchase order.
 The fulfillment is inbound. Contract is for immediate purchase. The contract has no contract lines. 	Purchase order You can duplicate a fulfillment line to create multiple fulfillment lines if you have to create multiple purchase orders.
 The fulfillment is inbound. Contract is for future purchase. The contract includes contract lines. 	Planket purchase agreement You can create only one blanket purchase agreement from each fulfillment line, but you can create multiple fulfillment lines for each contract line if you have to stagger the purchases or ship to different destinations, for example. You can also combine multiple fulfillment lines to create one blanket purchase agreement.
 The fulfillment is inbound. Contract is for future purchase. The contract has no contract lines. 	Contract purchase agreement You can duplicate a fulfillment line to create multiple fulfillment lines if you have to create multiple contract purchase agreements.

Contract Fulfillment: How It Works

Contract fulfillment makes it possible for you to track goods, services, reports and other fulfillment items you are purchasing in buy-intent contracts. Depending on the type of contract you are creating, you can use contract fulfillment to initiate the creation purchase orders or purchase agreements within Oracle Fusion Purchasing or in other integrated purchasing applications and monitor their fulfillment from within the contract. This topic explains how you create and work with contract fulfillment.

The figure below illustrates how you can create and work with both contractual and noncontractual fulfillment lines and how you can initiate purchasing activity from those fulfillment lines:

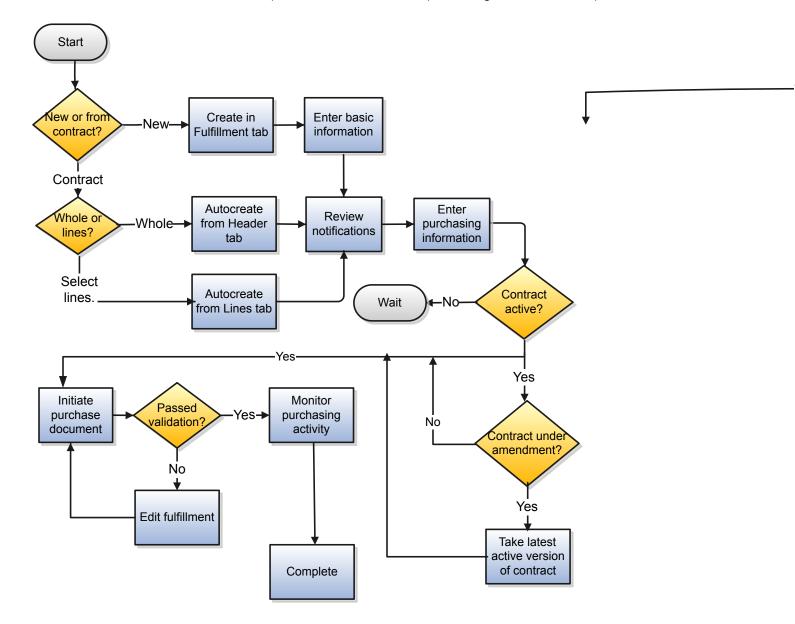
- You can create a fulfillment either on the contract header or on individual contract lines by selecting either the
 Autocreate Fulfillment Lines or the Create fulfillment actions. The Autocreate Fulfillment Lines action creates the
 fulfillment line and copies the contract basic header or contract line information to the fulfillment line so you do not
 have to enter it manually.
 - Selecting the **Autocreate Fulfillment Lines** action from the header automatically creates one fulfillment line per contract line. If there are no contract lines, then the application creates one fulfillment based on the header details provided the contract type is of class Purchase Agreement. You cannot autocreate fulfillment lines for contracts without contract lines if the contract type class is Enterprise Contract.
- 2. Review the notifications that are sent automatically to interested parties regarding fulfillment progress and deadlines. The contract type can be set up to automatically specify who gets notified and when. You can change and add additional notifications for the contract.



- 3. If you are using the fulfillment to initiate the purchase of goods and services using the integrated purchasing applications, then you must enter the required purchasing details. For autocreated fulfillment, these details are copied automatically from the corresponding contract lines.
- **4.** When the contract is approved and becomes active, you can initiate the creation of the purchasing documents in one of the purchasing applications. When you do, the application validates the information you entered to make sure it meets all the requirements of the purchasing application and creates the purchasing document. If it does not you must edit the fulfillment to enter additional information.
 - Note: If the contract goes into amendment after being approved, you cannot create any further fulfillment lines or edit existing ones. If you initiated the creation of purchasing documents when the contract became active, you can still continue to execute the fulfillments on the purchasing document. In the event that you did not initiate a purchasing document for the approved contract before it went into amendment, you can create one based on the latest active version of the contract and treat this as an active contract on which you can execute existing fulfillment lines.
- After the purchasing document is created in the purchasing application, you can monitor the progress of its execution.



6. You can mark a fulfillment as complete after execution of the purchasing document is completed.



Creating a Contract Fulfillment

If the fulfillment you are creating is related to the information entered in the contract, then you can select the **Autocreate Fulfillment Lines** action to create a fulfillment line in either the contract Header tab or the Lines tab. Using Autocreate

Fulfillment Lines on the contract header creates a single fulfillment line for each contract line. On the Lines tab, you can select individual contract lines where you want to create a fulfillment.

Select the Create fulfillment action in the Fulfillment tab to create a completely new fulfillment.

Note: The Create Fulfillment and Autocreate Fulfillment Lines actions are not available for a contract that is under amendment.





Vip: You can create multiple fulfillment lines for a single contract line if you need the fulfillment line items to be shipped to different destinations, for example. This is accomplished by autocreating a fulfillment line, duplicating it, and then editing the fulfillment line information.

Setting Up Fulfillment Notifications

You can specify which internal contacts are automatically notified about contract fulfillment milestones and when.

You can notify internal contacts:

- A specified number of days before or after the fulfillment due date
- When the fulfillment line is placed on hold
- When a purchasing document is created from one or more fulfillment lines
- When purchasing document creation fails for the fulfillment
- When purchasing activity is complete for a fulfillment line

Different notification types are available for different fulfillment types. Some notifications may already be specified for you by the contract type you selected to create your contract.

Creating the Purchasing Document

Before you initiate the purchasing document by selecting either the Create Purchase Order or Create Purchase Agreement actions, you must enter all purchasing information required by the purchasing document you are creating and wait until the contract is approved.

You can create one purchase document from multiple contract fulfillment lines. For example, selecting all the fulfillment lines created from contract lines when creating a purchase order, creates one PO with lines corresponding to each of the fulfillment

The application validates your entries to make sure you have entered all the required information. You must correct any errors you receive and resubmit you request. You know that the purchase document is successfully created when the fulfillment status changes to the PO Created or Agreement Created status.

Note: Purchase orders are created automatically in Oracle Fusion Purchasing, but agreements are created only when you run the Import Blanket Agreements and Import Contract Agreements processes from the Purchasing work area as described in a related topic.

Monitoring Purchasing Activity

You can monitor the status of the purchasing activity for the fulfillment on the Purchasing Activity tab.

Note: For all agreements and purchase orders created in Oracle Fusion Purchasing, the tab information is updated each time you run the Track Purchasing Activity process as described in a related topic.

Specifying Purchasing Activity for a Fulfillment is Complete

You can specify the purchasing activity on a fulfillment is complete by selecting the **Complete** action on the Fulfillment tab. You also use this action to indicate fulfillment lines with no purchasing documents are complete.

Related Topics

Can I create multiple contract fulfillment lines for a single contract line?



- What Actions You Can Use on Contract Fulfillment Lines and When: Explained
- Initiating a Single PO from a Contract Line to Ship Items to Different Destinations: Example
- Enabling the Creation and Monitoring of Agreements in Oracle Sales Cloud Purchasing: Explained





11 Setting Up Contract Terms and Clause Library Configurations

Contract Terms Library Setup Overview

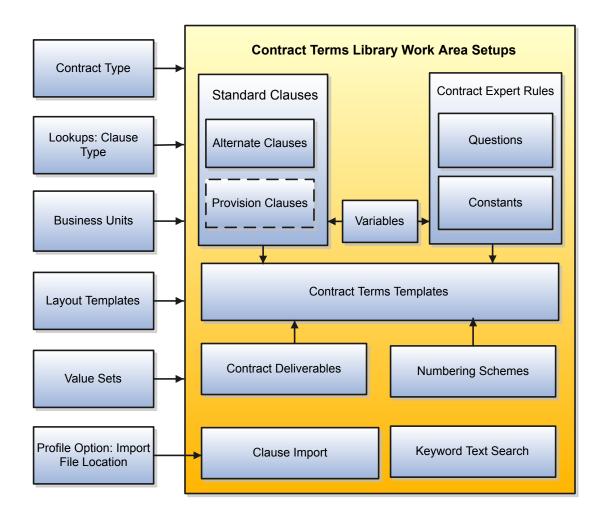
Contract Terms Library Setups: How They Work Together

This topic provides a brief overview of setups for the Contract Terms Library.

The following figure outlines the main setups for the Contract Terms Library which are described in the sections of this topic. The setups on the left are accomplished using tasks from the Setup and Maintenance work area. To set up most of the



Contract Terms Library features, including clauses and contract terms templates, you must navigate to the Terms Library work area. Dashed boxes highlight features that are available only in procurement contracts.



Setups in Oracle Fusion Functional Setup Manager

Different Oracle Fusion Functional Setup Manager tasks enable or affect Contract Terms Library features. These setups include:

Setting Up Contract Types to Work with the Contract Terms Library

Contract types specify properties of different contracts including the type of permitted contract lines, party roles, contract validation checks, and the contract acceptance and signature requirements. For the Contract Terms Library, you can use the **Manage Contract Types** task to:

Enable contract terms authoring

You must enable contract terms authoring for a contract type to use any of the library features for contracts of that type.



- Specify the Oracle BI Publisher layout template that will be used to format the printed contract terms for contracts of this type.
- Defining Clause Types

If you want to categorize the clauses in the library, select the **Manage Contract Clause Types** task to set up clause types.

Configuring Business Units for Contracts

The use of most of the Contract Terms Library content is restricted to the business unit where you create it. This includes clauses, contract terms templates, and Contract Expert business rules. Using either the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** or the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** tasks, you can:

- o Enable content adoption between business units and automatic approvals for content
- Specify the Contract Terms Library administrator, the employee who will receive approvals and other notifications regarding library content.
- Enable the Contract Expert feature for the business unit.
- Creating Contract Layout Templates

Using Oracle BI Publisher, you can set up layout templates that determine the formatting of clauses, contract terms template previews, the contract deviations report, and the contract itself.

Download the sample layout templates provided with your application from the Oracle BI Publisher library. You can copy and edit the sample layout templates and upload them.

- Note: For an example on how to use XML to build your own layouts, see the topic Setting Up Enterprise Contracts Part 2.
- Creating Contract Terms Value Sets

Select the **Manage Contract Terms Value Sets** task to set up value sets for use in contract terms variables and Contract Expert questions.

Specifying the Location of the File Used for Clause Import

You can import legacy clauses into the Contract Terms Library, either from a file or from an interface table using Oracle Fusion Enterprise Scheduler processes.

If you are importing clauses from a file, then you must specify the location of the file by setting the system profile option **Specify Contract Clause Import XML File Location** by selecting the **Manage Clause and Template Management Profiles** task.

Contract Terms Library Work Area Setups

The Contract Terms Library is built using the tasks within the Terms Library work area:

Creating Clauses

Create standard clauses for use during contract terms authoring, including alternate clauses, clauses included by reference, and provision clauses. By specifying different clause properties, you can modify clause behavior. For example, you can make clauses mandatory in contracts or protect them from editing by contract authors.

Creating Variables



You can use variables in the Contract Terms Library to represent information within individual clauses and for use within Contract Expert rule conditions. Your application comes with predefined variables, called system variables. You can create additional variables, called user variables, with or without programming.

Creating Numbering Schemes

You can set up additional clause and section numbering for contract terms. You can select which numbering scheme you want to use with each contract terms template.

Creating Contract Terms Templates

Create contract terms templates to insert boilerplate terms and conditions into contracts during contract authoring. Contract authors can apply the templates manually, or the application can apply the templates automatically using default rules you set up.

Creating Contract Expert Business Rules

Set up business rules that ensure compliance of contracts with corporate standards.

Contract Expert helps you to set up business rules that can:

Apply the appropriate contract terms template to a contract

For example, apply the contract terms template Software License and Service Agreement if the contract is authored in the North America Operations business unit and the contract amount exceeds one million dollars.

o Insert additional clauses into specific predetermined locations in the contract

For example, add an audit clause if an audit is required.

Report contract deviations from corporate policies

For example, report a contract worth one million dollars or more that includes payment terms greater than 90 days.

You can base Contract Expert rule conditions on the values of variables in the contract, the presence of other clauses, or you can set up questions that contract authors must answer during authoring.

For example, you can ask authors a series of questions about the nature of the materials being shipped to customers and insert additional liability clauses based on their answers.

If you are setting up business rules with numeric conditions (for instance, insert a special payment terms clause if the contract amount exceeds \$1 million) then you must set up constants to hold the numeric values. You cannot enter the numeric values directly.

Contract Deliverables

Contract deliverables track both contractual and non-contractual commitments that must be completed as part of negotiations, purchasing, and enterprise contracts between businesses and suppliers or customers based on contract intent. These deliverables can be used in purchasing and sourcing documents that include contract terms and in enterprise contracts.

Importing Clauses

You can import clauses from legacy applications by running Oracle Fusion Enterprise Scheduler (ESS) processes from the Terms Library work area by selecting the **Import Clauses** task or from the Setup Manager by selecting the **Manage Processes** task.

Setting Up and Maintaining the Index for Clause Text Searches Using the Keyword Field



By selecting the **Manage Processes** task in the Terms Library work area, you can also run the ESS processes required to set up and maintain the text index required for searches of clauses and contract terms templates using the Keyword field.

Related Topics

• Setting Up Enterprise Contracts: Part 2

How the Contract Terms Library Supports Translation: Explained

You can set up your contract terms library to handle the translation of clauses, templates, and other content in multiple languages.

This topic discusses the features included in Oracle Fusion Enterprise Contracts that support translation, making it possible for you to

- Indicate a localized clause is a translation of another
- Manage contract terms template translations

These two features are only a small part of a translation solution, however. The rest of the setup is very much open-ended. For instance, when you have different business units that operate in different languages, you can use the adoption and localization feature of contracts to keep separate libraries in different languages. Alternately if you are using only one business unit, you can create separate numbering or naming schemes to keep the content in multiple languages separate.

Indicating a Localized Clause is a Translation of Another

If you have set up the multiple business unit structure that supports clause adoption and localization, you can use the localization feature to translate clauses. The global clause you create in the global business unit becomes the clause you are translating from. To translate the global clause, you localize it using the localize action and enter the translation on the Localize Clause page. The Localize Clause page displays both the original and translated text. You can indicate the localized clause is a translation-only clause by selecting a check box. This check box is for informational purposes only and can be used to generate reports.

Note: Unlike contract terms templates, clauses have no language field that tracks the language of the clause.

Tracking Contract Terms Template Translations

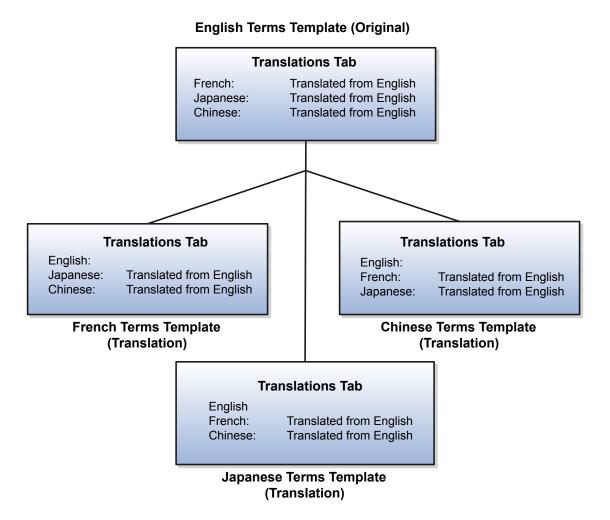
For each contract terms template you can specify the template language and the template it was translated from, if it is a translation.

The Translations tab in the contract terms template edit page shows all of the templates related by translation. For instance, if you translate an English template into French, Japanese, and Chinese, then each of the templates lists the translations as shown in the following diagram.

 All of the templates listed display the source template in the Translated From column except for the source template in which this column is blank.



• In this example, you can tell the English template is the source template for the French, Chinese, and Japanese translations because there is no entry in the Translated From column.



To manage the translated templates, you can search for all of the templates in a particular language and for all templates translated from a specific template.

Setup Overview FAQ

How can I set up the content of the Contact Terms Library?

You must navigate to the Terms Library work area to set up the content of the Contract Terms Library.

What drafts display in the Terms Library Overview page?

The Drafts region of the Contract Terms Overview page displays drafts or revisions that you either created or last updated.



Setting Up Business Units for the Contract Terms Library

Contract Terms Library Business Unit Setup: Explained

You can specify a wide variety of Contract Terms Library settings for either customer or supplier contracts within each business unit, by using either the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** or the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** tasks. These tasks are available by navigating to the **Setup and Maintenance** work area and searching on the task name.

For the Contract Terms Library in each business unit, you can:

- Enable clause and template adoption.
- Set the clause numbering method.
- Set the clause numbering level for automatic clause numbering of contracts.
- For a contract with no assigned ledger or legal entity, set the document sequence to Global or Business Unit level.
- Enable the Contract Expert enabling feature.
- Specify the layout for printed clauses and contract deviation reports.

Enabling Clause Adoption

If you plan to use clause adoption in your implementation, then set up the following:

- Specify a global business unit
 You must designate one of the business units in your organization as the global business unit by selecting the
 Global Business Unit option. This makes it possible for the other local business units to adopt and use approved
 content from that global business unit. If the Global Business Unit option is not available for the business unit you
- are setting up, this means that you already designated another business unit as global.

 2. Enable automatic adoption
 - If you are implementing the adoption feature, then you can have all the global clauses in the global business unit automatically approved and available for use in the local business by selecting the **Autoadopt Global Clauses** option. If you do not select this option, the employee designated as the Contract Terms Library Administrator must approve all global clauses before they can be adopted and used in the local business unit. This option is available only for local business units.
- 3. Specify the administrator who approves clauses available for adoption
 You must designate an employee as the Contract Terms Library administrator if you are using adoption. If you do not
 enable automatic adoption, then the administrator must adopt individual clauses or localize them for use in the local
 business unit. The administrator can also copy over any contract terms templates created in the global business unit.
 The clauses and contract terms templates available for adoption are listed in the administrator's Terms Library work
 area.

Setting Clause Numbering Options

You can set up automatic clause numbering for the clauses in the business unit by selecting Automatic in the **Clause Numbering** field and setting the clause numbering level. Then select the appropriate clause sequence category for the specified numbering level. You must have previously set up document sequences for the document sequence categories of global, ledger, and business unit. If clause numbering is manual, contract terms library administrators must enter unique clause numbers each time they create a clause.



You can choose to display the clause number in front of the clause title in contracts by selecting the **Display Clause Number in Clause Title** option.

Enabling Contract Expert

You must select the **Enable Contract Expert** option to be able to use the Contract Expert feature in a business unit. This setting takes precedence over enabling Contract Expert for individual contract terms templates.

Specifying the Printed Clause and Deviations Report Layouts

For each business unit, you can specify the Oracle BI Publisher RTF file that serves as the layout for:

• The printed contract terms

Enter the RTF file you want used for formatting the printed clauses in the Clause Layout Template field.

The contract deviations report

The RTF file you select as the **Deviations Layout Template** determines the appearance of the contract deviations report PDF. This PDF is attached to the approval notification sent to contract approvers.

Related Topics

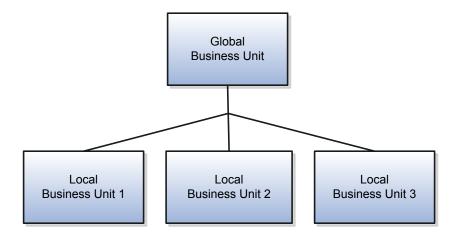
Contract Printing and Layout Templates: Explained

How the Selection of a Business Unit Affects Clauses and Other Objects in the Library

The choice of a business unit while creating many Contract Terms Library objects restricts where you can use these objects. Objects affected include clauses, contract terms templates, and Contact Expert rules. Objects created in a local business unit can only be used in that local business unit. Objects created in a global business unit can be adopted or copied over to other business units provided they are specified as global. This topic details the impacts of the business unit choice on the different library objects.



The following figure shows a hypothetical implementation with four business units: one global business unit and three local business units. You can designate one business unit as global during Business Unit setup. The other business units are local business units.



How Business Units Affect Terms Library Objects

This table details how the selection of a business unit affects different objects in the Contract Terms Library.

Terms Library Object	Impact of Business Unit
Clauses	Different restrictions apply depending on business unit type:
	 Local Business Unit Use restricted to the local business unit where it is created. Global Business Unit Clauses created in the global business unit, can be made available to other business units by selecting the Global check box. Local business units can either adopt the clause as is or localize it.
Contract terms templates	Different restrictions apply depending on business unit type:
	 Local Business Unit Use restricted to the local business unit where it is created. Global Business Unit Contract terms templates created in the global business unit, can be made available to other business units by selecting the Global check box. Local business units can copy the templates to their business units.
Contract Expert rules	Use of rules is restricted to the business unit where you create them.
Contract Expert questions	Use of questions is restricted to the business unit where you create them.
Contract Expert constants	Use of constants is restricted to the business unit where you create them.
User variables	No effect.



Terms Library Object	Impact of Business Unit User variables created in any business unit and are available across all business units.
Contract terms sections	No effect. Contract terms sections can be created in any business unit and are available across all business units.
Clause numbering schemes	No effect. Numbering schemes can be created in any business unit and are available across all business units.

Managing Clauses in the Contract Terms Library

Contract Terms Library Clauses: Explained

You can create different types of clauses for different uses and use clause properties to specify if a clause is protected from edits by contract authors, if it is mandatory, and if it is related to or incompatible with other clauses. A clause you create in the Contract Terms Library is available for use within the business unit where you create it after it is approved.

The types of clauses you can create include:

- Standard clauses
- Clauses included by reference
- Provision clauses for contracts with a buy intent

Using different clause properties you can:

- Make a clause mandatory in a contract.
- Protect it from edits by contract authors.
- Specify that a clause can be selected by contract authors as an alternate of another clause.
- Specify that the clause cannot be in the same document as another clause.
- Make a clause created in a global business unit available for use in other business units.

Creating Standard Clauses

Any clause you create in the library becomes a standard clause that can be used in the business unit where you create it after it is approved. Unless you specify that the clause is protected, contract authors can edit the clause in a specific contract. Any edits they make are highlighted in a clause deviations report when the contract is approved. Similarly, contract authors can delete the clause from a contract, unless you specify the clause is mandatory.

Including Clauses by Reference

For clauses, such as Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR), you can print the clause reference in the contract instead of the clause text itself. During contract creation, you enter the reference on the Instructions tab of the clause edit page and select the **Include by Reference** option.



Creating Provision Clauses for Contracts with a Buy Intent

For contracts with a buy intent, you can create provision clauses, clauses that are included in contract negotiations but are removed after the contract is signed. Provision clauses are used primarily in Federal Government contracting.

Altering Clause Behavior with Clause Properties

Using different clause properties, you can alter the behavior of a clause, You can:

Make a clause mandatory.

A mandatory clause is highlighted by a special icon during contract terms authoring and cannot be deleted by contract authors without a special privilege. You can make a clause mandatory for a particular contract terms template by selecting the Make Mandatory action after you have added the clause to the template. A clause is also become mandatory if it is added by a Contract Expert rule and you have selected the Expert Clauses Mandatory option in the template.

Protect it from edits by contract authors.

A protected clause is highlighted by a special icon during contract terms authoring and cannot be edited by contract authors without a special privilege. You can protect any clause by selecting the protected option during clause creation or editing.

Specify that a clause can be selected by contract authors as an alternate of another clause.

You can specify clauses to be alternates of each other on the Relationships tab of the create and edit clause pages. When editing contract terms, contract authors are alerted by an icon that a particular clause includes alternates and can select an alternate to replace the original clause.

Specify that the clause cannot be in the same document as another clause

You can use the Relationship tab to specify a clause you are creating is incompatible with another clause in the library. The application highlights incompatible clauses added by contract authors in the contract deviations report and during contract validation.

Make a clause available for use in other business units.

Clauses you create in the library are normally available only within the same business unit where you create them. If you create the clause in the business unit that is specified as global during business unit setup, then you can make the clause available for adoption in other business units by selecting the **Global** option during clause creation or edit. This option appears only in the one business unit specified as global.

Alternate and Incompatible Clause Relationships: How They Work

While creating or editing a clause you can specify its relationship to other clauses in the Contract Terms Library.

There are two clause relationships to choose from:

Alternate

Use the alternate relationship to indicate clauses that authors can substitute for a standard clause in a contract.

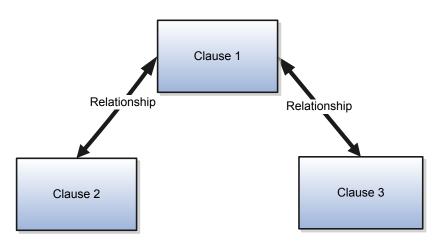
Incompatible

Use the incompatible relationship to highlight clauses that cannot be present in the contract at the same time.



Both of the relationships you establish are bidirectional but not transitive as illustrated in the following figure:

Clause Relationships



Other relationship properties include:

- Relationships you create are valid for all future clause versions.
- You can only establish relationships between clauses of the same intent and within the same business unit.
- Provision clauses used in procurement applications can only have relationships with other provision clauses.
- For clause adoption, the relationships are copied from the global business unit to the local business unit automatically only if you are adopting clauses as is.

Setting Up the Alternate Relationship

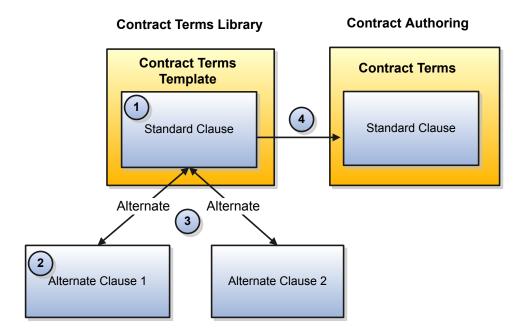
Set up alternate clauses if you want to let contract authors decide when to substitute an alternate clause for a standard clause in a contract.

The following figure illustrates alternate clause setup:

- 1. Create the standard clause and include it in a contract terms template.
- 2. Create the alternate clause or clauses.
 - ▼ Tip: By using variables to represent differences between clauses, you can reduce the number of alternate clauses you must create.
- 3. Specify the alternate relationships between the standard clause and the alternate clauses.



4. During contract authoring, the contract terms template applies the standard clause in the contract terms, but the contract author can replace it with either one of the alternate clauses.



During contract terms authoring, contract authors are alerted to the presence of alternate clauses by a special clause icon. If they choose to substitute one of the alternate clauses for a standard clause, the substitution is recorded as a clause deviation in the contract deviations report.

In addition, by selecting the **Analyze Clause Usage** action, you can determine which contracts are using alternate clauses.

Setting Up the Incompatible Relationship

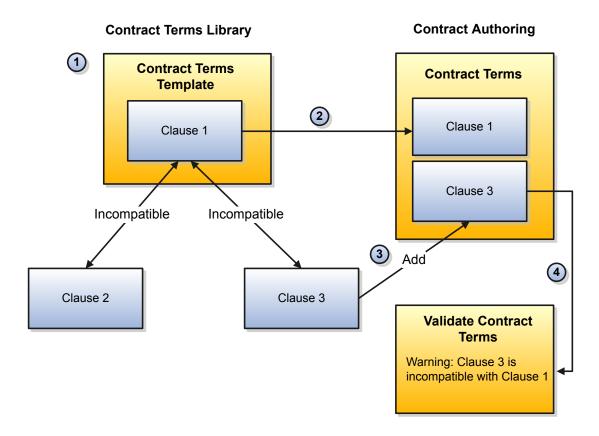
When you specify a group of clauses to be incompatible, the presence of more than one incompatible clause in a contract results in a warning during contract terms validation.

The following figure uses an example to illustrate the setup of incompatible clauses.

- 1. During setup, you specify Clause 2 and Clause 3 as incompatible to Clause 1 and associate Clause 1 to a contract terms template.
- 2. The contract author or a Contract Expert rule applies the contract terms template (including Clause 1) to a contract.
- 3. The contract author or a Contract Expert rule adds Clause 3 to the contract terms.



4. The application displays a warning during validation.



Setting Up Alternate Clauses: Examples

This topic uses the example of jurisdiction clauses to illustrate two different ways of setting up alternate clauses.

Suppose for example, that the standard jurisdiction for your contracts is the State of Delaware but you want to permit contract authors to select the following jurisdictions:

- San Jose, California
- San Mateo, California,
- Miami-Dade County, Florida

There are two ways of setting up the alternate clauses:

- Create a separate alternate clause for each jurisdiction
 - During authoring agents must find and select the clause they want to use.
- Create one alternate clause and use a variable to supply the different alternate jurisdictions

During authoring, agents select the alternate clause and then supply the jurisdiction by entering the variable value while running Contract Expert.



Creating Separate Alternate Clauses

Use this method to create one clause for each jurisdiction. Here is the setup for this example:

- 1. Create the standard jurisdiction clause for State of Delaware.
- 2. Associate the standard clause with a Contract Terms Template that will be used to default it into contracts.
- 3. Create the three alternate clauses:
 - o Alternate Clause 1: San Jose, California
 - Alternate Clause 2: San Mateo, California
 - Alternate Clause 3: Miami-Dade County, Florida

Because you want each alternate clause to have the same title, Jurisdiction, you must use both the Clause Title and the Display Title fields when you create each alternate. Your entry in the Clause Title must be unique, for example, Jurisdiction_1, Jurisdiction_2, and Jurisdiction_3. But you can enter Jurisdiction in the Display Title field to make the same title appear in the printed contract for all the clauses.

- 4. Specify the alternate relationship between the different clauses:
 - o The standard clause is an alternate of Alternate Clause 1
 - The standard clause is an alternate of Alternate Clause 2
 - The standard clause is an alternate of Alternate Clause 3
 - o Alternate Clause 1 is an alternate of Alternate Clause 2
 - Alternate Clause 2 is an alternate of Alternate Clause 3
 - Alternate Clause 1 is an alternate of Alternate Clause 3

During authoring, agents are alerted to the presence of the alternate clauses by an icon and can select any one of the alternate clauses to replace the standard clause.

Creating One Alternate Clause with Variables

If you want to minimize the number of alternate clauses you must create to just one, use this alternate setup:

- 1. Create the standard jurisdiction clause for Delaware.
- 2. Associate the standard clause with a Contract Terms Template that will be used to default it into contracts.
- 3. Create one alternate clause with two variables: one for the county and one for the state: This agreement is governed by the substantive and procedural laws of [@State of Jurisdiction@] and you and the supplier agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of, and venue in, the courts in [@County of Jurisdiction@] County, [@State of Jurisdiction@], in any dispute arising out of or relating to this agreement.
- 4. Specify the alternate relationship between the standard clause and the alternate clause.

During authoring, agents are alerted to the presence of the alternate clause by an icon. Agents who select the alternate clause must run Contract Expert and enter the state and county variable values.

Clause Versioning: Explained

To make changes in an approved clause, you must create a new version. Versioning permits you to make changes to outdated clause text in contracts.



You create a new version of a clause by selecting from the Actions menu in the clause search page. Keep the following points in mind:

- Clause versioning is restricted by status.
- A new clause version is not effective until it is approved.
- Not all attributes are versioned.
- Creating a new version doesn't affect the setup of contract terms templates or rules.
- You can view all clause versions and compare version text, but you can't restore an old version.

Clause Versioning Is Restricted by Status

You can create versions for clauses in the approved or expired statuses only. You don't create new versions to edit clauses that were rejected in the approvals process. You must edit and resubmit them for approval.

A New Version Is Not Effective Until It's Approved

When you create a new version of an approved clause, your edits don't take effect until the new version is approved. In the meantime, contract authors can continue to use the last approved version if there is one.

Not All Attributes Are Versioned

Not all clause attributes are versioned, so editing them immediately affects all versions, even those currently in use in contracts. These attributes are:

- Clause relationships
- Folders
- Templates
- Translations

Viewing Versions and Comparing Text

You can view and compare clause versions, but you can't restore a previous version:

- If you want to view the different clause versions that are available in the library, select the **Include All Versions** check box in the clause search page.
- If you want to compare the text of the old versions of a clause with the current version, open the clause in the edit page and click the History tab.

Related Topics

How does creating a new clause version affect existing contracts, templates, and Contract Expert rules?

Changing the Title of a Clause After the Clause Is Approved: Example

While you cannot change the entry you make in the Clause Title field after a clause is approved, you can change the title that is printed in contracts in subsequent versions by making an entry in the Display Title field. The display title overrides the original title in contracts.

Scenario

Suppose you want to change the title of the clause Liability to Limited Liability, but the clause is already approved and in use.



In this case, you:

- 1. Create a new clause version.
- 2. Enter Limited Liability in the Display Title field.
- 3. Submit the new version for approval.

Contract authors can start using the new version of the clause after it is approved.

Different Ways of Removing a Clause from Use: Points to Consider

You can remove a clause from use by deleting it, putting it on hold, or entering an end date. Each of these actions is available and appropriate in different circumstances.

Deleting a Clause

You can delete a clause only when it is in the **Draft** or **Rejected** status. If the clause already exists in an approved version, then that original version can continue to be used in contract terms templates, Contract Expert rules, and in contracts.

Putting a Clause On Hold

You can place an approved clause temporarily on hold by selecting the **Apply Hold** action and remove the hold by selecting **Remove Hold**.

You can still add a clause that is on hold to contract terms templates and Contract Expert rules, but you receive a warning when you try to activate them. Similarly, contract authors receive a warning when they validate a contract with a clause that was on hold and record the hold in the contract deviations report.

Entering an End Date

Enter a past date as the end date while editing a clause in the Contract Terms Library. This removes an approved clause permanently from use and sets the clause to the **Expired** status. You can search and view the most recently expired version of a clause in the Contract Terms Library and copy it to create a new clause.

Setting Up Numbering for Clauses in the Contract Terms Library: Explained

For each business unit, you can specify either automatic or manual numbering for clauses stored in the Contract Terms Library.

You specify the clause numbering method individually for each business unit during business unit setup by selecting either the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** or the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** tasks from the Setup and Maintenance work area.

If you specify manual numbering, requiring users to enter a unique number manually each time they create a clause in the library, then no further setup is required.

If you want the clauses to be numbered automatically, then you must:

 Select a clause numbering level. The default clause numbering level for a contract that is not project-based is business unit.



• Select the appropriate clause sequence category for the specified numbering level. This requires the setting up of a document sequence category and a document sequence as described in related topics before setting up the numbering method in the business unit. Use the following values for your setup.

Values to Use for Document Sequence Categories

When creating document sequence categories for numbering clauses in the Contract Terms Library, use the following values:

Application: Enterprise ContractsModule: Enterprise ContractsTable: OKC_ARTICLES_ALL

Values to Use for Document Sequences

When creating document sequences, use the following values:

Application: Enterprise Contracts

· Type: Automatic

Module: Enterprise Contracts

Determinant Type: Global, Business unit, Ledger (if a primary ledger has been assigned to the business unit)

Related Topics

• Document Sequence Categories: Explained

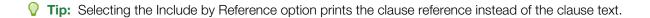
• Document Sequences: Explained

Including a Clause by Reference: Example

This example illustrates how to create a clause that is printed in contracts as a reference.

Scenario

Suppose you want to include a Federal Acquisition Regulations clause 52.202-1 by reference. In this case, you would fill in the following information:



Field	Entry
Number	52.202-1
Title	52.202-1
Display Title	Definitions
Description	Clauses About Definitions
Instructions	As prescribed in 2.201, insert the following clause:



Field	Entry
Text	Definitions (July 2004) (a) When a solicitation provision or contract clause uses a word or term that is defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR).
Reference	http://www. acqnet. gov/far/
Reference Description	This contract incorporates one or more clauses by reference, with the same force and effect as if they were given in full text. Upon request, the Contracting Officer will make their full text available. Also the full text of a clause may be accessed electronically at this address: http://www.acqnet.gov/far/
Include by reference	Select this option.

Related Topics

• What's a clause reference and when do I include a clause by reference?

Importing Clause Text from Microsoft Word: Points to Consider

You can enter the text of a clause in the Contract Terms Library using one of the following options:

- Enter the text using the built-in text editor
- Import the text from a file created with Microsoft Word 2007 or later

Entering Clause Text Using the Built-In Rich Text Editor

Use the built-in rich text editor to enter and edit clause text whenever possible. This supports all of the application features.

Importing Clause Text from Microsoft Word 2007 or Later Version

Import clause text from a document created in Word instead of entering the text directly into the application. This helps preserve complex formatting not supported by the application's editor or if using Word is more convenient.

Note the following:

- The file you are importing must be saved in the XML file format.
- The built-in text editor is disabled after you import the text for the first time. To modify the clause, you must download it to a file, edit the clause in Word 2007 or later, and upload again.
- Contract authors must also use Word 2007 or later if they want to edit the clause during contract authoring.
- Importing clause text prevents contract authors from using some features of this application. For example, contract authors cannot compare the text between two clause versions or control clause formatting with a layout template.
- Note: To import large numbers of clause records rather than the text of individual clauses, use the Import Clauses from XML File concurrent program.



Managing Clauses FAQ

What are the clause statuses and what do they mean?

Clause statuses in the Contract Terms Library reflect the state of the current version you are editing and restrict what actions you can take. The table that follows describes the clause statuses and explains their implications:

Status	Description	Effect
Draft	A clause is automatically set to the Draft status after you create a clause initially or when you create a new version.	 Available for authoring and adoption? Not available. Effect contract approval? No effect. Contracts do not include draft clauses. Editing? No restriction. Inclusion in contract terms templates and Contract Expert rules? You can include a draft clause version, but the templates or rules cannot be activated until the clause version is approved. Deletion? Yes. You can delete versions in the Draft and Rejected statuses
Pending Approval	The status of a clause after it's submitted for approval.	 Available for authoring and adoption? Not available. Effect on contract approval? None. Contracts do not include clause versions in this status. Editing? Limited to description and the end date. Inclusion in contract terms templates and Contract Expert rules? You can include clauses with their latest versions pending approval, but the templates and rules cannot be activated until the clause version is approved. Deletion? Not directly but indirectly by first withdrawing it from approval and thus reverting the clause to its original Draft status. Stop Approval? Yes. You can withdraw the clause from approval using the Stop Approval action. Withdrawing the clause from



Status	Description	Effect
		approval reverts the clause to Draft status.
Rejected	The approvers rejected the clause version. You can edit clauses in this status and resubmit them for approval.	 Available of version for authoring and adoption? Not available. Effect contract approval? Contracts do not include clause versions in this status. Editing? Unrestricted. Inclusion in contract terms templates and Contract Expert rules? You cannot add a clause with its latest version rejected. Deletion? Yes.
Approved	The clause was approved.	 Available for authoring and adoption? Yes. Effect contract approval? None. Editing? Edits restricted to end date and description. Inclusion in contract terms templates and Contract Expert rules? Yes. Deletion? No.
Expired	The clause is past its end-date. The application automatically enters a clause end date in the old version when a new version is approved. You can also manually enter an end date in an approved clause.	 Available for authoring and adoption? No. Effect contract approval? Creates an error during contract approval validation. The clause must be removed before submitting the contract for approval. Editing? No edits permitted. Inclusion in contract terms templates and Contract Expert rules? You cannot add an expired clause. If the latest version of a clause becomes expired when it's already in a template or rule, then the application displays an error during template or rule activation. Deletion? No.
On Hold	Another Contract Terms Library administrator placed a hold on the clause version.	Available for authoring and adoption?No.Effect contract approval?



Status	Description	Effect
		Creates an error during contract approval. The clause must be removed before submitting the contract for approval.
		Editing?
		No.
		 Inclusion in contract terms templates and Contract Expert rules?
		Cannot add clauses with the latest version on hold.
		Existing templates and rules use the previously approved version, if one exists.
		Deletion?
		No deletion possible.

Related Topics

• How can I withdraw a clause or a terms template from approval?

How can I find clauses that I drafted or that require my action?

You can view clauses that you drafted and clauses that require your action on the Terms Library Overview page.

How do I use the Clause Title and Display Title fields?

The title you enter in the Clause Title field must be unique for each clause within a business unit and cannot be changed after the clause is approved. You can use the Display Title field, which has no uniqueness requirement, to modify the title that appears in contracts or to specify the same title for multiple alternate clauses.

How can I create clauses with the same title?

You cannot have two clauses with the same title entered in the **Clause Title** field in the Contract Terms Library, but by entering the same title in the **Display Title** field for each clause, you can create multiple clauses with the same printed title. The **Display Title** overrides the **Clause Title** in printed contracts.

How can I search for a clause in the library by its text?

You can search for clause text using the **Keyword** field. This field also searches clause title, display title, and description.

How can I set up the clause title to include the clause number?

You can have the clause number automatically added to the front of the clause title as a prefix in printed contracts by selecting the **Include Clause Number in Display** option during business unit setup. You should only do this if the clause number is meaningful in some way, for example when it refers to a number of a government regulation. The clause number is a number of the clause in the Contract Terms Library and it is usually generated by the application automatically. It is not the number of the clause in the contract generated by the numbering scheme.

How does Contract Expert identify where to insert clauses into contracts?

If you are using a Contract Expert rule to insert clauses into a contract, then Contract Expert inserts the clause in the location that is predefined for the clause in the terms template. If the clause location is not defined in the terms template, then Contract Expert inserts the clause into the section that is specified in the Default Section field in the General Information region on the create and edit clause pages. If you do not specify a default section for the clause, then Contract Expert uses the default section specified in the Contract Expert region on the General tab in the create and edit contract terms template



pages. If the section doesn't already exist in the contract where the clause is being inserted, Contract Expert adds the section along with the clause.

Related Topics

• How can I predefine locations of Contract Expert clauses in the contract?

How does creating a new version of a Contract Expert rule affect contracts?

Activating a new version of a rule makes that new version effective whenever the contract author runs Contract Expert. Authors who validate or submit for approval contracts that used a previous version of the rule receive an error asking them to run Contract Expert again. Approved contracts are not affected.

What can I use clause analysis for?

Use clause analysis to find out how the Contract Terms Library clauses, contract terms templates, and Contract Expert rules are used in contracts:

Use clause analysis to:

- · Identify which contracts make use of a legal concept.
- Identify contracts that use a given set of clauses.
- Research the effectiveness of standard policies and standards defined in the Contract Terms Library.

For example, you can find out if you need to revise a standard clause by searching for the nonstandard versions of the standard clause.

What do I enter as the clause text if I plan to include the clause reference instead?

Even if you are printing the clause reference instead of the clause text in a contract, you must still enter text in the clause text field. The text you enter in this field is not printed in the contract, but it is used for searching clauses by text. For this reason, it is preferable if you enter the text of your referenced clause.

How can I embed a question response in a clause?

You can embed a question response in a clause by inserting the associated variable of the question in the clause text.

To associate a question response to a variable, the value sets of the question response and the variable must be identical.

What information is copied over when I duplicate a clause?

Duplicating a clause copies all information about the clause except for its historical information (the templates where it is used and adoption history). You can edit all of the information about the new clause except for its business unit.

Note: To copy a clause to another business unit, you must recreate the clause in that business unit.

Why can't I find a clause when I search by clause text?

You may not be able to find a clause by searching for its text if the clause text has not been indexed. The application administrator must periodically index clause text by running two processes: Build Keyword Search Index for Contract Clauses and Optimize Keyword Search Index for Contract Clauses.

How can I find clauses that are adopted by other business units?

If you are in the global business unit, you can search clauses that have been localized or adopted by other business units using the Search Clauses page (you select the business unit and the adoption type). In a local business unit, you can use the analyze clause usage action instead.



What's the difference between the clause Instructions and the clause Description fields?

You use the clause **Instructions** field for contract authors on how to use a clause, but use the **Description** field to enter information describing the clause.

Further details:

- Both text fields are visible to contract authors during contract terms authoring.
- The text of both fields can be searched using the **Keyword** field.
- Neither field is printed in contracts.

What's a clause intent?

The clause intent specifies if the clause is going to be used for sales or procurement contracts. You can only create a clause for one intent.

What's the difference between saving a clause and submitting a clause?

Saving a clause saves it as a draft.

Submitting a clause triggers validation checks and submits the clause for approval. While a clause is in the approval process, you cannot make any edits. The clause must be either approved or rejected for you to edit it again.

What's the difference between setting up multiple alternate clauses and one with a variable?

There are two ways of setting up alternate clauses:

- You create multiple separate alternate clauses
- You create just one alternate clause and include variables to supply the different variants

This table highlights the differences between the two setup methods:

Setup Method	Advantages	Disadvantages
Multiple Alternate Clauses	 You can use clause analysis to track usage of the clause and its alternates One-step selection: Contract authors select the clause from a list. Language of the alternate clauses you create can vary. 	 Must create and maintain a large number of clauses. Authors are restricted to the alternates you create. Authors may have to search for the clause they want if there are many.
Single Alternate Clause with Variables	 Permits you to create and maintain just one alternate clause. Supports unlimited number of alternates. 	 Two-step selection: Authors select the alternate and then run Contract Expert to fill in the variable values. Language of the alternate clause cannot change. The only difference is the information supplied by the variables.

Who can edit protected and mandatory clauses?

Only users with the Override Contract Terms and Conditions Controls privilege can edit mandatory and protected clauses. Contact your application administrator with questions about the privileges granted to you.



Why can't I edit the clause information?

You cannot edit clause information if you lack the proper privileges or if the clause is not in the draft status. When the clause is pending approval, the approvers must approve or reject the clause before you can edit it. If the clause is rejected or approved, you must create a new version before editing.

Why can't I edit the clause text?

You cannot edit the clause text if it was imported from a Word document or if you do not have adequate privileges assigned to you. To edit imported clause text, download the clause text, use Word 2007 or later version to make your edits, and then import your changes. To edit protected or mandatory clauses, you must obtain the Override Contract Terms and Conditions Controls privilege from the application administrator.

Why can't I edit the clause title?

You cannot edit the clause title after you first save the clause. However, you can change the clause title in printed contracts by entering a new title in the Display Title field. The display title replaces the clause title in printed contracts.

Managing Contract Terms Templates

Contract Terms Templates: How They Work

You can create contract terms templates in the Contract Terms Library to insert appropriate terms and conditions into contracts during contract authoring. You can apply the templates manually while authoring contracts or the application can apply the templates automatically using defaulting rules you set up.

Contract terms templates:

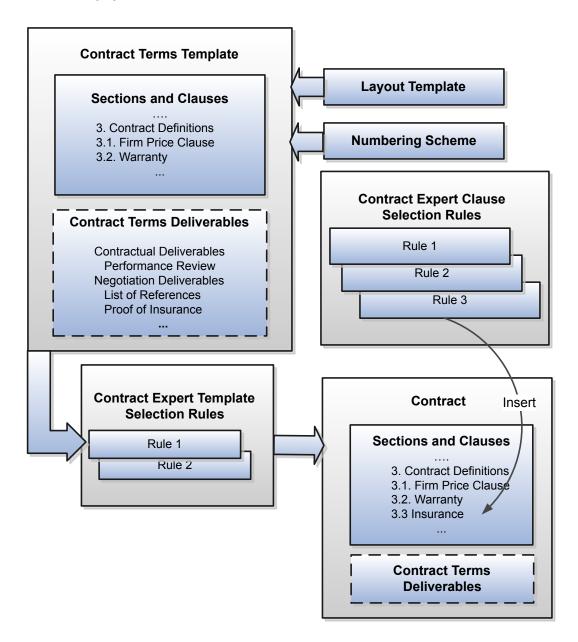
- Contain sections and clauses from the Contract Terms Library.
- Are created in the Contract Terms Library separately. You cannot create them directly from an existing contract.
- Are specific to one business unit.
- Apply to enterprise contracts of the contract types you specify in the template.
- Are specific to either sell-intent or buy-intent contracts.
- Can default contract terms directly on purchase orders and sourcing documents, and on enterprise contracts. For these documents, contact terms templates can also include contract deliverables which can be used to track the completion of contractual tasks in the contract.

In addition, for a contract terms template you can:

- Set up Contract Expert rules to recommend additional clauses for contracts that use the template and insert these clauses in specified locations in the contract if marked as conditional.
- Associate a layout template for previewing the template.
- Specify a contract terms numbering scheme for the template.
- Set up template selection rules to default the template into a contract automatically.



The following figure illustrates the different aspects of contract terms templates:



Adding Sections

You can add sections that you have created in the library or create sections that are specific to the template itself.

Adding Clauses

You can add clauses in one of two ways:

Add a clause from the Contract Terms Library directly into a section in the template.

You can create the clause in the library from the template if the library does not have what you need.



 Create Contract Expert rules to add clauses to the contract terms in a contract depending on the specifics of the contract.

For example, you may want to add a boilerplate jurisdiction clause directly into the template, but use a Contract Expert rule to insert the appropriate liability clause. This way a contract that calls for the shipment of hazardous materials will get a liability clause that's different from a contract that does not include any, for example.

The properties that you set up in the clause apply automatically. If you set up a clause as mandatory, you will not be able to delete the clause after it is inserted by the template unless you have the special Override Contract Terms and Conditions Controls privilege. If you set up a clause with alternates, then you can substitute any of the alternate clauses in the contract.

Note: You are not required to add any sections or clauses to a template directly. You can use Contract Expert rules exclusively, if appropriate.

Enabling Contract Expert on the Template

To use Contract Expert in a contract where the template is applied, select the **Enable** option in the Contract Expert region of the Create Terms Template or Edit Terms Template pages. When Contract Expert rules enabled for the template suggest additional clauses, these additional clauses are presented for your review before they are inserted in the default section specified in each clause. Depending on privileges, you can choose which clauses to insert and which to omit. If you make Contract Expert suggestions mandatory for the template, then you can reject the recommendations only if you have the special Override Contract Terms and Conditions Controls privilege.

You can also place recommended clauses for insertion n their predetermined locations, if the clauses are marked as conditional clauses and their locations are defined in the terms template associated with the contract.

Adding Contract Deliverables to Purchase Orders, Sourcing Documents, and Enterprise Contracts

For Oracle Fusion Purchasing purchase orders, Oracle Fusion Sourcing documents, and enterprise contracts, you can track compliance of tasks that the contract parties have agreed to execute as part of the agreement by adding contract deliverables.

You can use deliverables to record the status of the tasks, keep everyone notified of past and future deadlines, and as a repository of the deliverable documents themselves. For example, vendors agreeing to supply a monthly report can log in to their sourcing portal and attach the report or ask for an extension. If they fail to respond by the specified deadline, the deliverable can trigger an automatic notification that the deliverable is overdue.

Assigning a Layout Template for Previewing the Contract Terms Template

You must assign a layout template for the contract terms template so you can preview the template content, when you need to make a template selection, for example. The layout template, which you select on the General tab while editing the contract terms template, specifies what gets displayed in the preview, including the fields displayed, graphics such as a company logo, page numbering, headers and footers, and boilerplate text. This layout template is not used for printing the contract.

If you marked Contract Expert recommended clauses as conditional on the terms template, then these are displayed in gray font in the print preview to distinguish them from regular clauses.

The layout template is an RTF file stored in the Enterprise Contracts folder in the Business Intelligence Presentation Catalog. A sample layout template is provided with your application. You can copy the sample template and edit it to create your own as described in a related topic.



Specifying a Numbering Scheme

You can associate a numbering scheme to the template that will automatically number sections and clauses in the contract. Several predefined numbering schemes are available with your application, and you can create additional numbering schemes of your own.

Making the Template the Contract Default

You can have a contract terms template apply automatically in all contracts based on:

- Contract type
- Contract Expert rules that select the template based on the specific information in the contract itself

If you enabled the feature Enable Contract Terms in Fusion Procurement for Procurement Contracts during implementation, then you can also apply templates to procurement documents based on document type.

The following document types become available:

- Auction
- Bid
- Blanket Purchase Agreement
- Contract Purchase Agreement
- Standard Purchase Order
- RFI
- RFI Response
- RFQ
- Sourcing Quote

While editing the contract terms template, you specify a template to be the default for a contract type or document type in the Document Types region. You can set up only one template as the default for each contract type or document type. You set up the Contract Expert template selection rules separately as described in a related topic. You can have multiple rules recommend the same template.

Here is how the defaults you enter in the Document Types region and the Contract Expert template selection rules interact to select and apply a template during contract authoring:

- Contract Expert template selection rules always take priority. If the rules specify a single template for a contract, then it gets applied regardless of the default you entered in the Document Type region.
- If the Contract Expert rules recommend different templates, then the application uses the default from the Document Type region as a tiebreaker.
- If no Contract Expert selection rule applies and you specified a default, then the application uses the default.
- If you did not set up any rule or default for a contact type or document type, then you must select the template from a list while authoring.

Related Topics

Contract Printing and Layout Templates: Explained



Activating and Revising Contract Terms Templates: Explained

For a contract terms template to be available for use by contract authors, it must pass an automatic validation check and be approved by the contract terms administrator. If you need to make changes after the template is approved and in use, you can create a new version by editing the approved template and submitting it for approval. After the revision is approved, it replaces the original automatically.

This topic discusses:

- The validation checks for common errors that you must correct
- The approvals process
- Contract terms statuses, what they mean, and how they affect what actions you can take
- The creation of new template versions or revisions

Validation Checks

The application performs the following validation checks for all contract terms templates. You must fix all errors before templates can be sent for approval. Fixing warnings is optional.

The following table lists the validations for terms templates including validations for terms template that contain deliverables.

Validation Check	Туре	Action
The template contains incompatible clauses.	Warning	Remove one of the incompatible clauses.
A clause you added to the template is in the draft status.	Error	While you can add draft clauses when creating a contract terms template, these clauses must be approved before the template can be sent for approval.
		If you create the draft clauses as part of the contract terms template, then these clauses are submitted for approval along with the template.
A clause in the template is in inactive, on hold, or rejected status.	Error	You must obtain approval for the clause and resubmit the template for approval.
If a previous approved version of the clause is available, then this message does not appear. The template continues to use the previously approved version.		
The template contains more than one alternate clause.	Error	You must remove one of the alternates.
Contract Expert suggested clauses specific to the activated rules associated with the terms template are not marked as conditional clauses on the terms template.	Warning	You must mark these clauses as conditional clauses on the terms template.
Contract Expert suggested clauses specific to the activated rules associated with the	Warning	You must mark these clauses as conditional clauses on the terms template.



Validation Check	Туре	Action
terms template are flagged as unconditional clauses on the terms template.		
The template contains conditional clauses that are not Contract Expert suggested clauses specific to the activated rules associated with the terms template.	Warning	You must either remove these clauses or mark them as unconditional clauses on the terms template.
If the template is a translation of another template, then the template it was translated from must be valid on the date you validate the translation.	Error	Obtain approval of the template you are translating before resubmitting.
Template contains no clauses.	Warning	Clauses are not required in a template.
The requester or the internal and escalation contacts in the deliverable are invalid.	Error	You must enter different requester or contacts. The internal contact and requester must be employees with e-mail addresses to receive notifications.
Supplier / customer contact is invalid.	Error	The supplier or customer must be entered as a contact with an e-mail address.
Deliverable dates are missing.	Error	Enter the missing dates.

Template Approval

After you submit a template for approval and it passes validation, the application sends a notification to the approvers specified in the Oracle BPEL Process Manager notification service process. If you have created clauses as part of the contract terms template, then the clauses are automatically submitted for approval and approved along with the template.

For clauses that you added to the terms template from the Terms Library, terms template approval has no effect on them. You can, however, stop the approval of each of these clauses from the Edit Clause page or from the worklist approval notification.

Stopping Template Approval

If for some reason, after you submit a terms template for approval, you want to withdraw it from approval, you can use the Stop Approval action on the Edit Terms Template page to do so. Stopping terms template approval, automatically stops the approval of clauses that you created or added and submitted for approval with the terms template. The Stop Approval action is not available for such clauses individually on the Edit Clause page.

Stopping the approval of a terms template reverts it to its previous Draft or Revision status and reverts the status of the clauses that you submitted for approval with the terms template to their previous Draft status. For clauses in Pending Approval status that you added to the terms template from the Terms Library, stopping the approval of the terms template has no effect on these clauses. These clauses remain in their Terms Library statuses.



Template Statuses

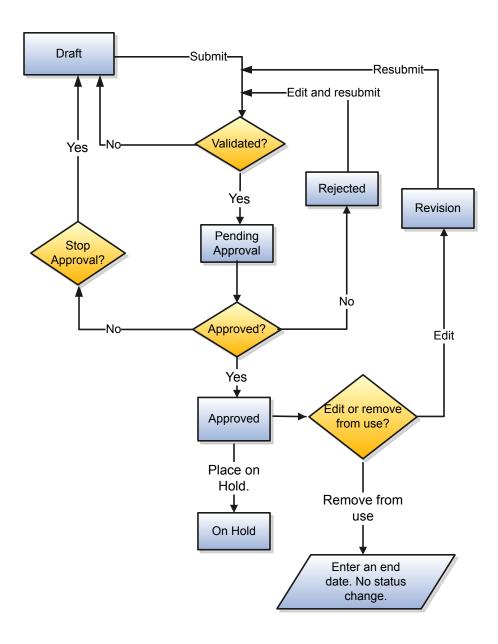
Contract terms template statuses are set automatically during the template lifecycle.

The following diagram shows the available statuses and the permitted transitions and actions in each stage of the template lifecycle:

- When you create a contract terms template it is automatically set to the Draft status.
 - You can edit and delete templates in this status.
- When you submit a draft template for approval and it is successfully validated, it is set to the Pending Approval status. You cannot edit, delete, or enter an end date for templates in this status. The approvers must either approve or reject the template or you can withdraw the terms template from approval.
- An approved template is automatically available for use in the business unit where it is created.
- You can edit an approved template to create a new version. The edited version is set to the Revision status until it is validated and approved.
- If the approvers reject the template revision, you can edit it and resubmit it for approval.
- You can place an active template on hold, temporarily removing it from use until the hold is removed. You cannot edit templates in this status.



You can remove an approved template from use permanently by entering an end date. You cannot edit a template
that is past its end date. The only available action is to copy it to create a new one. Entering an end date does not
change the status of the template even past the end date.



Creating Contract Terms Template Revisions

You can create a revision of a terms template by editing an active template. After the revision is approved, it automatically replaces the current version in the Contract Terms Library. The application does not save previous versions of templates.

If the template is a global template that was adopted by other business units, those business units must copy over the revision. The new template revision appears in the Available for Adoption region of the Terms Library Overview page.



Contact Terms Templates FAQ

How can I add a clause to a contract terms template?

You can add sections and clauses to a contract terms template on the **Clauses** tab while editing the template. Alternately, you can set up Contract Expert rules to suggest clauses based on the circumstances of each contract.

Use the outline region on the left of the Clauses tab to add sections and clauses that will be present in all contracts created with the template. You must add at least one section using the Actions menu before you can add clauses. If you do not find the clause you need while adding clauses, you can create one from the Add Clauses window. You must refresh the preview of your template by clicking the **Refresh** icon on the right side of the tab to see your latest edits.

Also, you can create rules to add clauses that vary contract to contract. Contract Expert can add clauses based on variable values and answers to questions contract authors supply when they author the contract.

What's a default contract terms template?

A contract term template that is specified as the default template for a document type. A document type can be a buy or sell document that is considered a contract, such as a purchase order or a blanket sales agreement.

What's the difference between document types and contract types?

While both document types and contract types are contracts, document types encompass all purchasing and sales documents that are deemed contracts. Contract types include only enterprise contracts.

For sales, the list of document types is restricted to contract types, those contracts created within the Oracle Fusion Enterprise Contract Management (ECM) application itself. If you enabled the Enable Contract Terms in Fusion Procurement feature for the option Procurement Contracts during implementation, then the following procurement document types are available:

- Auction
- Bid
- Blanket Purchase Agreement
- Contract Purchase Agreement
- Standard Purchase Order
- RFI
- RFI Response
- RFQ
- Sourcing Quote

Contract type is an administrator-created classification for enterprise contracts which determines contract functionality, including the presence of lines and contract terms. You create contract types during contract setup by selecting the **Create Contract Types** task.

Related Topics

Contract Types: Explained

What validation checks are performed for contract terms templates?

The application performs the following validation checks for all contract terms templates. You must fix all errors before templates can be sent for approval. Fixing warnings is optional.



The following table lists the validations for terms templates including validations for terms template that contain deliverables.

Validation Check	Туре	Action
The template contains incompatible clauses.	Warning	Remove one of the incompatible clauses.
A clause you added to the template is in the draft status.	Error	While you can add draft clauses when creating a contract terms template, these clauses must be approved before the template can be sent for approval.
		If you create the draft clauses as part of the contract terms template, then these clauses are submitted for approval along with the template.
A clause in the template is in inactive, on hold, or rejected status.	Error	You must obtain approval for the clause and resubmit the template for approval.
f a previous approved version of the clause is available, then this message does not appear. The template continues to use the previously approved version.		
The template contains more than one alternate clause.	Error	You must remove one of the alternates.
Contract Expert suggested clauses specific of the activated rules associated with the erms template are not marked as conditional clauses on the terms template.	Warning	You must mark these clauses as conditional clauses on the terms template.
Contract Expert suggested clauses specific to the activated rules associated with the terms template are flagged as unconditional clauses on the terms template.	Warning	You must mark these clauses as conditional clauses on the terms template.
The template contains conditional clauses that are not Contract Expert suggested clauses specific to the activated rules associated with the terms template.	Warning	You must either remove these clauses or mark them as unconditional clauses on the terms template.
the template is a translation of another emplate, then the template it was translated rom must be valid on the date you validate he translation.	Error	Obtain approval of the template you are translating before resubmitting.
emplate contains no clauses.	Warning	Clauses are not required in a template.
The requester or the internal and escalation contacts in the deliverable are invalid.	Error	You must enter different requester or contacts. The internal contact and requester must be employees with e-mail addresses to receive notifications.



Validation Check	Туре	Action
Supplier / customer contact is invalid.	Error	The supplier or customer must be entered as a contact with an e-mail address.
Deliverable dates are missing.	Error	Enter the missing dates.

What's a global contract terms template?

A contract terms template that is created in a business unit designated during setup as the global business unit. A global template is automatically listed in the Term Library Overview page in the local business units and can be adopted by duplicating it.

What's a layout template?

A RTF document that contains the contract layout for printing and preview. The templates, which can include both formatting, graphics, text, and other layout elements, are stored in the Oracle BI Publisher library. You must specify layout templates when you create a contract type to enable printing and preview of contract, contract terms and conditions, and summary of amendments made to contract terms.

When do I create a clause as part of a contract terms template?

If you are creating a contract terms template and a clause you want to add does not exist in the Contract Terms Library, then you can quickly create the missing clause by clicking the **Create Clause** button. Creating a clause in this way automatically associates it to the terms template. While this abbreviated creation method does not permit the entry of some details, including clause instructions, references, and relationships to other clauses, you can always add any missing information later by editing the clause.

Creating clauses in this way also enables you to submit them for approval all at one go along with the terms template. Otherwise, you would have to create each clause using the Create Clause task and submit each one in turn for approval.

Similarly, withdrawing the terms template from approval, stops approval of all the draft clauses submitted for approval with the terms template. This includes draft clauses that you added from the Terms Library. On stopping approval these draft clauses revert from their Pending Approval status to Draft status. Clauses in Pending Approval status that you added to the terms template from the Terms Library stay in their Terms Library statuses when you withdraw the terms template from approval.

When do I need to make a contract terms template the default for a document type?

Specify a contract terms template as the default for a document type when you want that template to be automatically applied to a contract of that type.

You can also apply contract terms templates to contracts using Contract Expert rules. If a Contract Expert rule specifies a default contract terms template, the application ignores the document type default you specify here. However, should the Contract Expert rules you set up pick multiple templates, then the application uses the document type default you set here as a tiebreaker.

Why am I reviewing draft clauses when submitting a contract terms template for approval?

A contract terms template can be approved for authoring only when all of its clauses are approved as well. If any of the clause versions you added to the template are drafts, then the application lets you review a list of those drafts and submit them for approval along with the contract terms template. The draft clauses can include any draft clause versions as well as clauses drafted specifically as part of the contract terms template using the **Create Clause** button.



If any of the clauses are already available in an approved version, then you can choose to use the approved version in the template instead of submitting the drafts for approval. You can make the substitution on the review page by deselecting the draft.

Why are some clauses missing from a contract terms template I copied over for use in a local business unit?

You can copy a contract terms template from a global business unit for use in a local business unit. Before you do, you must ensure that any clauses you want copied along with the template are either adopted or localized. Any clauses in the copied template that are not adopted or localized in the local business unit are automatically removed.

Why can't I edit the contract terms template?

You cannot edit the contract terms template if you have insufficient privileges or the contract terms template is in a status that does not permit you to make modifications.

Why can't I add clauses to the contract terms template?

You must add at least one section to the contract terms template before you can add clauses and the template must be in a status that permits editing.

Why do I want to enable Contract Expert in a contract terms template?

You must enable Contract Expert in a contract terms template if you want to use Contract Expert rules with the template. Contract Expert rules can default the template to a new contract, recommend additional clauses, and flag any policy deviations in contracts that use the template.

Note: If you do not enable Contract Expert on a template, contract authors cannot run Contract Expert in contracts that use the template and no Contract Expert rules apply, not even those you specify as valid for all templates.

Setting Up Contract Expert

Contract Expert: How It Works

Use Contract Expert to enforce corporate policies and standards for all types of contracts, including enterprise contracts, purchase orders, and sourcing contracts.

Contract Expert helps you to set up business rules that can:

Apply the appropriate contract terms template to a contract

For example, apply the contract terms template Software License and Service Agreement if the contract is authored in the North America Operations business unit and the contract amount exceeds one million dollars.

Insert additional clauses into specific predetermined locations in the contract

For example, add an audit clause if an audit is required.

· Report contract deviations from corporate policies

For example, report a contract worth one million dollars or more that includes payment terms greater than 90 days.



Contract Expert consists of two components.

Rule Setup

Administrators create the rules that are stored in the Contract Terms Library. A rule can be based on the following conditions:

The values of variables in the contract

For example, recommend an additional clause if the shipment date on an order is greater than 90 days.

Answers that you as contract authors provide to questions

For example, recommend an additional liability clause depending on a response to a question about hazardous materials.

The presence of clauses in the contract.

For example, if the contract includes a hazardous materials clause, then insert additional insurance clauses.

The first two condition types require your input during authoring.

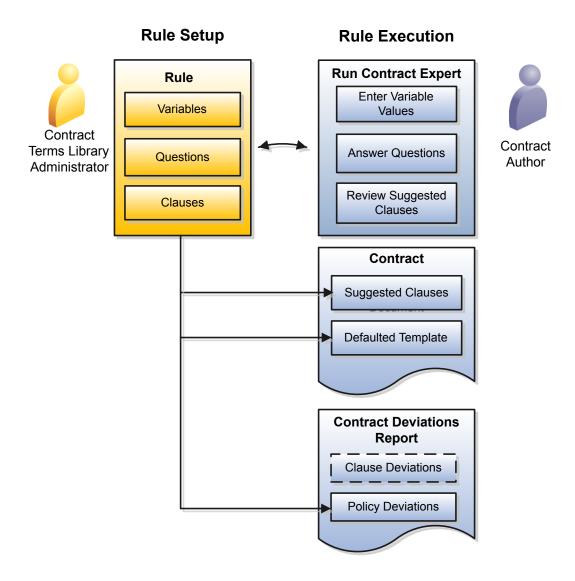
Rule Execution

During contract authoring, Contract Expert evaluates the rules. For rules with conditions that require your input, Contract Expert asks you to provide missing variable values and to answer questions when you select the Run Contract Expert action. You can then evaluate any recommended clauses for insertion in the contract. Such clauses can also be inserted in predetermined locations, if you defined these locations in the terms template associated with the contract.

You can review any policy and clause deviations by selecting the **Review Contract Deviations** action. Clause deviations are shown in a dashed box because they do not require Contract Expert rules.



The following figure illustrates the two components:



Contract Expert Rule Setup

Depending on the type of rule that you are creating, you can base rule conditions on:

Variables

This condition is based on the value of a variable in the contract. The application either derives the value automatically from the contract, or you enter the value when you run Contract Expert.

Questions

This condition is based on answers to questions you supply when you run Contract Expert.

Clauses

This condition is based on the presence of a specific clause in the contract.



Contract Expert rules apply only to contract terms templates where Contract Expert is enabled. You can specify if you want a rule to apply to all or selected terms templates.

Contract Expert Rule Execution During Contract Authoring

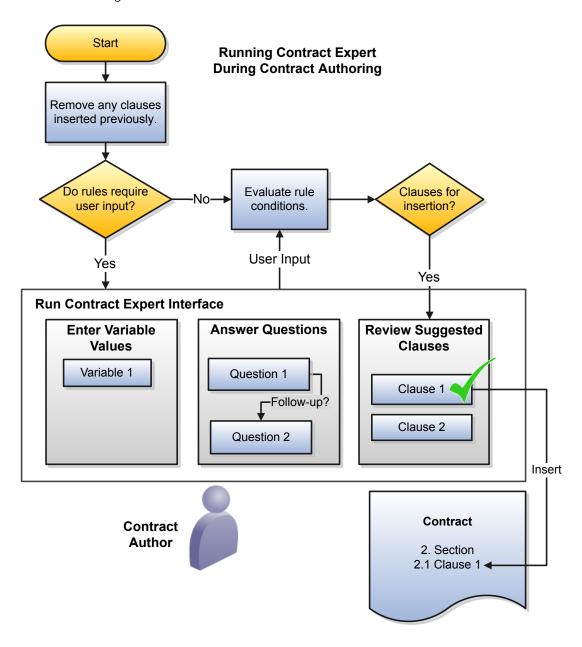
Depending on their type, all active rules for the contract terms template used in a contract are evaluated automatically during contract terms authoring or when you run Contract Expert in the Contract Terms tab.

The following figure illustrates what happens when you run Contract Expert during contract authoring:

- 1. If rule conditions require user input, Contract Expert prompts you to enter variable values and answer questions. Answers to questions can trigger follow-up questions. In this figure, the answer to Question 1 triggered the follow-up Question 2.
- 2. Contract Expert displays any recommended clauses for your review. You can choose which of the recommended clauses to insert into the contract provided that you have sufficient privileges.
- 3. Contract Expert inserts the clauses in the contract terms section specified during clause setup in the Contract Terms Library. If no section is specified in the clause, the application uses the default section specified in the contract terms template. Contract Expert automatically inserts the default section if it does not already exist in the contract. The clauses recommended for insertion may also be placed in their predetermined locations, if you defined these locations in the terms template associated with the contract.



4. On subsequent runs, Contract Expert first removes any clauses that it inserted into the contract in earlier runs, including clauses that have been moved or have been made nonstandard.



If you do not make all the required entries or forget to run Contract Expert altogether, expect to receive warnings when you validate the contract terms or when you review the contract deviations report.

Contract Expert Rules: How They Work

You can set up Contract Expert rules to apply contract terms templates automatically to contracts, to suggest additional clauses for insertion during contract terms authoring, and to flag any contract deviations from company policy.

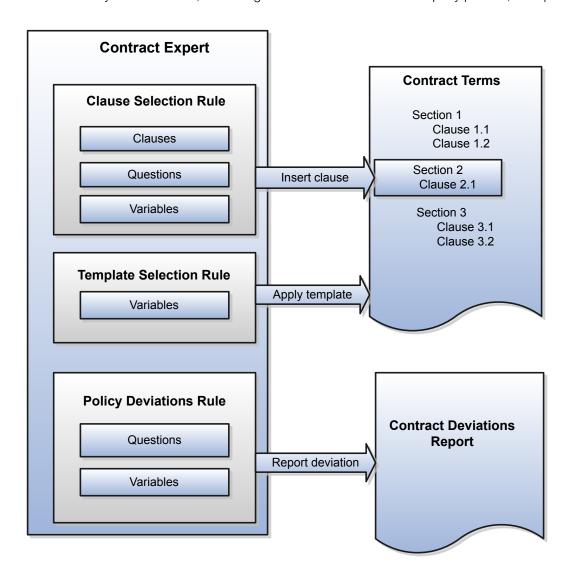


Each rule comprises conditions that must be met and the rule results. You can base rule conditions on:

- The presence of another clause already in the contract
- The value of a system variable or a user variable
- Questions that the contract author must answer

Different Contract Expert rule types support different condition types, as illustrated in the following figure.

- Clause selection rules, which can default individual clauses and sections into a contract, can be based on clauses, questions, and variables.
- Template selection rules, which identify the default contract terms template for the contract, can be based on variables only.
- Policy deviation rules, which flag contract deviations from company policies, use questions and variables only.



Key rule properties include:

All rules can use multiple conditions linked together with either the AND or OR logical operators.



- The values of non-numeric conditions are supplied by value sets.
- The values for numeric conditions are supplied by constants.
- Rule types that permit the inclusion of questions can trigger follow-up questions, permitting you to chain rules together.
- Rules are restricted to the specific business unit and the contract intent where you create them.
- Rules do not get copied when you copy a global contract terms template to another business unit.
- Conditions support both logical and numeric operators:
 - 。 IS
 - IS NOT
 - IN (allows the selection of multiple values)
 - NOT IN (allows the selection of multiple values)
 - >=: (greater than or equal to)
 - <=: (less than or equal to)</p>
 - =: (equal to)
 - > (greater than)
 - < (less than)</p>

Clause Selection Rules

Clause selection rules permit you to insert one or more clauses and sections into a contract.

The following table describes the rule properties.

Rule Property	Details
Rule outcomes	The rule can:
	Recommend one or more clauses for insertion into the contract
	Contract authors can review the Contract Expert recommendations before the clauses get inserted into the contract. By setting the Expert Clauses Mandatory option when creating a contract terms template, you can specify if you want the clause insertion to be mandatory or if the authors can ignore the recommendations.
	If you make the insertion mandatory, then only contract authors with the Override Contract Terms and Conditions Controls privilege, a special privilege that allows deleting mandatory clauses from the contract, can reject the recommendations. Similarly, if the recommended clauses are standard clauses, then the authors must have the Author Additional Standard Contract Terms and Conditions privilege to reject the recommendations. This privilege allows the deletion of standard clauses from the contract.
	If you marked recommended clauses as conditional and specified the location of these clauses in the terms template, then Contract Expert inserts the clause in the contract in the location that you specified. If the location of an Expert suggested clause isn't specified in the terms template, Contract Expert inserts each clause in the section specified as the default for the clause in the Contract Terms Library. If no default section is specified in the clause, then Contract Expert inserts the clause into the default section specified in the contract terms template. Contract Expert automatically inserts the default section if it doesn't already exist in the contract. • Ask follow-up questions



Rule Property	Petails You can ask follow-up questions by adding them in the Additional Questions region of the Results tab. Any additional question that you add must be part of another rule. Adding the follow-up question chains the rules together.
When the rule is evaluated	The rule is evaluated every time that a user runs Contract Expert.
	Users receive an warning message during contract validation if they fail to run Contract Expert.
Conditions	Conditions can be based on:
	• clauses
	• questions
	 variables
	You can use both predefined system variables and user variables. Both types of user variables are supported: those that require entry by contract authors and those where the values are supplied by a Java procedure.
Where it applies	The rule applies only within the business unit and for the intent that you specify. You can have the rule apply to one of the following:
	Specific contract terms templates
	All contract terms templates for the business unit

Contract Terms Template Selection Rules

Contract terms template selection rules permit you to automatically apply a contract terms template to a contract.

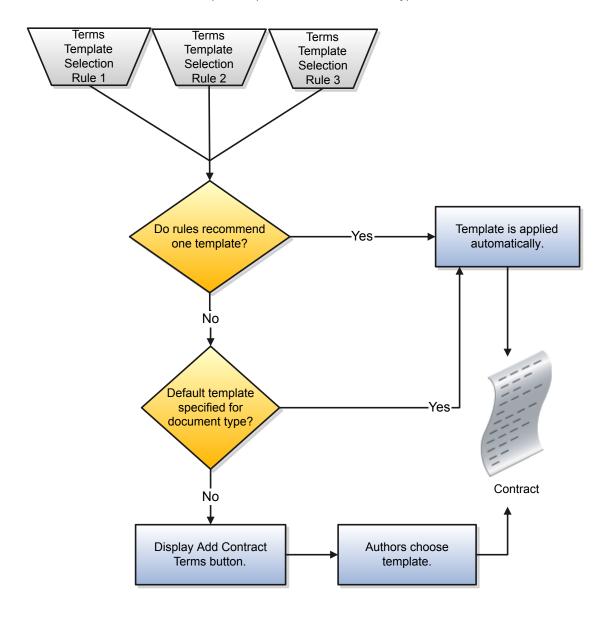
The following table describes the rule properties.

Rule Property	Details
Rule outcomes	The application automatically applies a contract terms template to a contract. Or, if the author removed the contract terms using the Actions menu, the template displays the template name as the default when applying a new template.
When the rule is evaluated	The application evaluates the rule whenever the author navigates to the Contract Terms tab as long as no contract terms template is applied. If a contract terms template is applied to the contract, the template selection rules are not executed again, even if changes to the contract would result in a different rule outcome.
	The rule is also evaluated to determine if the contract contains the recommended template whenever the contract author: • Runs the clause deviations report
	Validates the contract terms or the contract
	In both cases, the rule generates a warning if the author applied a different template from that recommended by the rule.
Conditions	Variables only
	You can use predefined system variables and those user-defined variables where the values are supplied by a Java procedure.



Rule Property	Details
Where it applies	The rule applies only within the business unit and for the intent specified in the rule.

Contract Expert doesn't apply a contract terms template if the contract terms template default rules you set up recommend multiple terms templates for a single contract. Instead, Contract Expert applies the contract terms template specified as the default for the business document type during contract terms template setup. If no document type default is specified, then the application displays the **Add Contract Terms** button and permits authors to select a template of their own choice. The choices are restricted to the templates specified for the contract type.



Policy Deviation Rules

Policy deviation rules flag deviations from company policies on the contract deviations report. This report is run by the contract author before submitting a contract for approval.

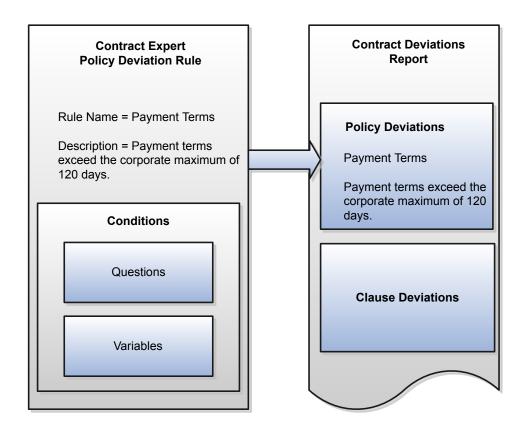


The following table lists the rule properties.

Rule Property	Details
Rule results	The rule displays a deviation in the contract deviations report.
	The rule name becomes the deviation.
When the rule is evaluated	The rule is evaluated whenever the user:
	Runs the contract deviations report
	Validates the contract terms or the contract
Conditions	Conditions can based on:
	Questions
	 Variables
	Both predefined system variables and those user-defined variables where the values are supplied by a Java procedure.
Where it applies	The rule applies only for the contract terms templates within the business unit and for the intent that you specify.



The following figure illustrates the policy deviation rule setup. You can build rule conditions out of both questions and variables. In the contract deviation report, your entry in the **Rule Name** field becomes the deviation name and your entry in the rule **Description** field becomes the deviation description.



Policy deviation rules list policy deviations in the contract deviations report, along with any clause deviations that are flagged automatically by the application. Contract authors can run the report before submitting the contract for approval and enter comments to explain the deviation to the approver. The report is rerun automatically when the author submits the contract for approval and a copy of the report is attached to the approval notification.

Activating and Validating Rules

After you set up a rule, you must activate it using the Activate Rule action. Rules do not require approval before activation, but the contract terms templates that they apply to do.

Note: In order to activate a rule, you must assign it to at least one contract terms template. The template doesn't have to be approved at the time that you make the assignment, but it does have to be approved before the rule can be used.

Activating a rule triggers an automatic validation process. You must correct all errors before the rule gets activated.

Related Topics

How can I predefine locations of Contract Expert clauses in the contract?



Contract Expert Rule Statuses and Available Actions: Explained

Statuses track the life cycle of a Contract Expert rule from creation through activation and revisions as well as restrict available actions.

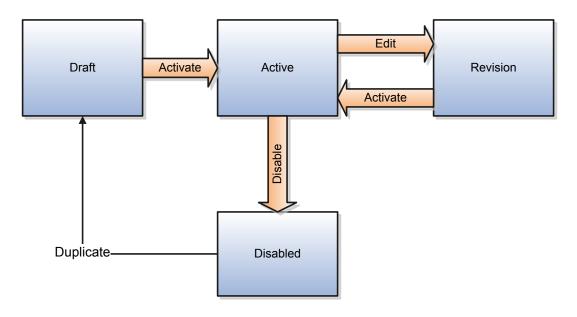
Contract Expert Statuses and Available Actions

This table describes available rule statuses and lists the permitted actions for each.

Status	Description	Available Actions
Draft	When you first create a rule, it remains in the Draft status until you activate it and it passes all the validation checks without error.	ActivateEditDeleteDuplicate
Active	The rule was activated and passed validation.	Edit You can edit an Active rule, to create a new version. This version remains in the Revision status until you activate it and it passes all the validation checks. Until it does, the old version remains active. Once the new version is in the Active status, it automatically replaces the old version. Disable Duplicate
Revision	The status of an active rule that was edited. The new version of the rule remains in this status until it passes validation and become active.	ActivateEditDeleteDuplicateDisable
Disabled	The rule was disabled using the Disable action.	Duplicate



The following diagram illustrates the rule statuses and main actions.



Contract Expert Question Setup: Explained

You can set up Contract Expert questions in the Contract Terms Library to solicit contract author input during contract authoring. Contract Expert presents the questions to authors when they are part of a Contract Expert rule. The questions you create are restricted to one intent and their names must be unique within that intent. Questions can be reused across all business units.

Question Response Types

Question responses can be one of the following:

• Yes or no

These questions appear to contract authors with a choice list with two values: Yes and No. This question type supplies the choice list automatically without additional setup.

Numeric

Contract authors enter responses to numeric questions directly using the keyboard.

Selection from a list of values

For questions that require users to make a selection from a list of values, you must set up a value set with the **Char** format type and one of the following validation types: **Independent**, **Translatable Independent**, or **Table**.

Note: Contract Expert does not permit you to provide default responses to user questions. However, the application sets numeric questions without a user response to 0.

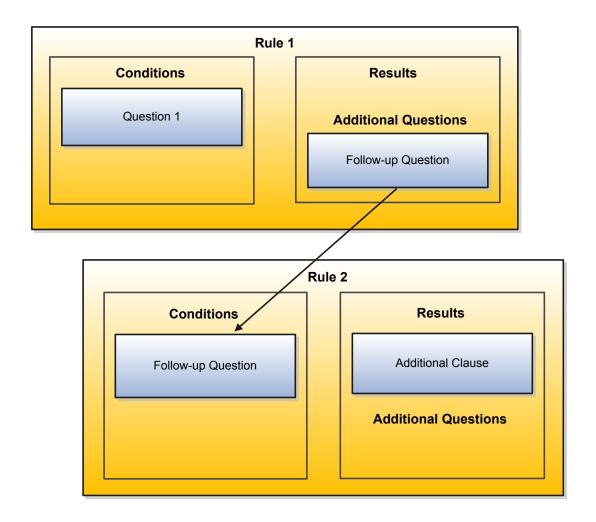


Inserting Additional Clauses Based on Follow-up Questions: How It Works

You can ask follow-up questions and insert additional clauses into the contract terms based on the answers that the contract author gives.

The following diagram illustrates how you can ask a follow-up question using the follow-up question to link two rules.

Asking a Follow-up Question to Insert an Additional Clause



Asking Follow-up Questions

To ask follow-up questions:

1. Include the follow-up question as an additional question on the Results tab of a rule.



In this example, contract authors get the follow-up question if they provide an answer that satisfies the condition with Question 1 (the only condition in Rule 1).

2. Create a second rule with the follow-up question in a condition.

In this example, the application inserts the additional clause if the contract author satisfies the condition based on the Follow-up Question (the only condition in Rule 2).

Contract Expert Constants: Examples

Contract Expert constants supply numerical values to numeric conditions in Contract Expert rules. The same constant can supply the value in multiple rules. Constants are specific to one intent, but can be used in all business units.

Scenario

For example, to default a payment terms clause when the contract amount is greater than \$1 million, you create a Contract Expert rule with the condition: Contract Amount > 1,000,000.

Instead of entering the number directly into the condition, you create the constant Contract Amount Threshold and set its value to 1,000,000. The condition in your rule becomes: Contract Amount > Contract Amount Threshold.

You can use this same constant in multiple conditions. This way, if the threshold is later increased later to \$2 million, you need only to update the constant instead of every rule that uses the condition.

Contract Expert Clause Selection Rules and Asking Follow-up Questions: Examples

Two examples illustrate how you can set up a Contract Expert clause selection rule to insert additional clauses and sections into a contract and how you can set up rules to ask follow-up questions.

Scenario

Suppose, that you want to add two additional insurance clauses under the section Additional Insurance when a shipment of hazardous materials is to be delivered within 30 days. You can handle this scenario by setting up one clause selection rule with two conditions:

Condition 1: Delivery < 30

This condition will be evaluated when contract authors enter the delivery period by updating a user variable when they run Contract Expert.

Condition 2: Hazardous Materials = Yes

This condition will be evaluated when contract authors answer the question "Is hazardous material involved?" by selecting Yes or No.

Here is how you set up the rule:

1. Ensure that both of the clauses that you want to add are created in the Contract Terms Library with the default section Additional Insurance. This guarantees that both appear in the contract under that section. If the section is not already in the contract, Contract Expert inserts it automatically.



- Note: If you do not set up the clauses with a default section, Contract Expert inserts the clauses in the default section specified in the contract terms template.
- 2. For condition 1, you must create a constant called Shipping and set its value to 30.

This is because numerical values for conditions must be entered using constants rather than directly.

- 3. Set up a question that requires a yes or no answer for the prompt "Is hazardous material involved?" for Condition 2.
- 4. Create the clauses that you want to add to the contract in the Contract Terms Library.
 - Note: The clauses must be approved before the rule can be used.
- **5.** Create the Contract Expert rule with the two conditions.

Selecting the Match All option means both conditions must be evaluated before the rule is true.

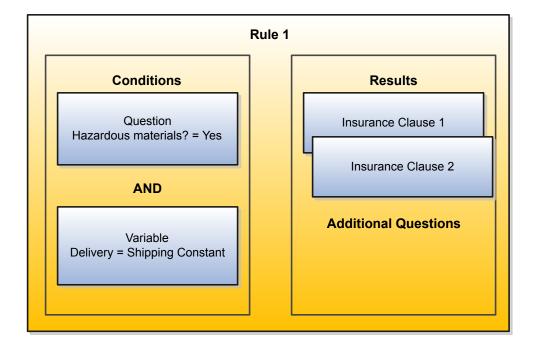
6. Associate the rule with the contract terms templates where you want the rule to apply.

You can assign the rule to individual templates or all templates with the same intent and within the same business unit.

7. Activate the rule by clicking the **Activate** button while editing the rule.

The rule is evaluated for only those contracts that use templates that have been assigned to the rule. When both conditions in the rule are true, Contract Expert defaults the two insurance clauses.

This diagram illustrates the clause selection rule example.





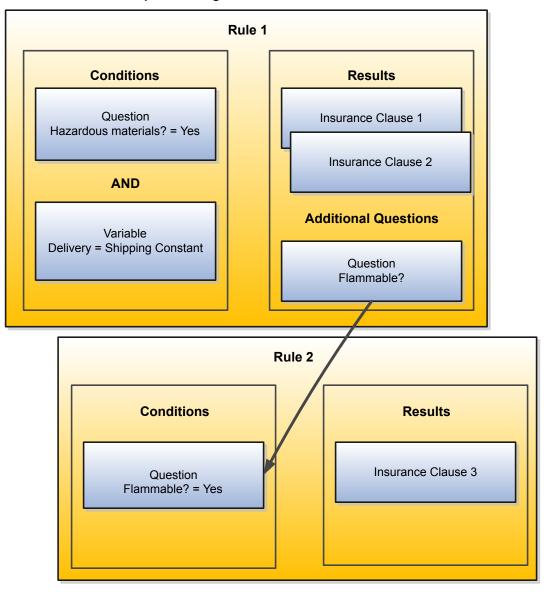
Scenario

Now suppose you want to add an additional clause to the previous example if the hazardous material in the shipment is flammable. To do this, you create:

- The follow-up question:
- A rule where the follow-up question is a condition.
- You link the rules together by entering the follow-up question the Additional Questions region on the Results tab of the first rule.

The following diagram illustrates the setup:

Example of Using Two Rules to Chain Questions





Here are the steps in detail:

- 1. Set up the follow-up question "Is the material flammable?" with yes and no answers.
- 2. Create the additional insurance clause that you want to add to the contract in the Contract Terms Library.
- 3. Create a new Contract Expert rule, Rule 2, with the follow-up question as the condition. The rule will be true if the author answers yes.
- 4. Associate Rule 2 with the same contract terms templates where Rule 1 applies.
- 5. Edit Rule 1 to add the newly created question in the Additional Questions region on the Results tab.
- **6.** Activate both rules using the Actions menu.

Contract authors see the question from Rule 2 in Contract Expert only if Rule 1 is true. Rule 2 inserts the additional clause in the contract if authors answer yes.

Contract Expert Setup FAQ

What are Contract Expert questions?

Questions contract authors answer when running Contract Expert while authoring the contract. The answers can trigger Contract Expert to suggest additional clauses or ask follow-up questions, depending on how you set up the Contract Expert rules.

What does it mean to make clauses suggested by Contract Expert mandatory in a contract terms template?

When contract authors run Contract Expert on a contract, Contract Expert displays a list of any clauses that it recommends for insertion.

Contract authors can review the Contract Expert recommendations before the clauses get inserted into the contract. By setting the **Expert Clauses Mandatory** option when creating a contract terms template, you can specify if you want the clause insertion to be mandatory or if the authors can ignore the recommendations.

If you make the insertion mandatory, then only contract authors with the Override Contract Terms and Conditions Controls privilege, a special privilege that allows deleting mandatory clauses from the contract, can reject the recommendations. Similarly, if the recommended clauses are standard clauses, then the authors must have the Author Additional Standard Contract Terms and Conditions privilege to reject the recommendations. This privilege allows the deletion of standard clauses from the contract.

What happens if the clause to be inserted by the Contract Expert rule is versioned or removed from use?

If the current clause version is not approved or removed from use, Contract Expert automatically uses the previous approved version. If none exists, the contract author receives an error when validating the contract.

What happens to existing contracts if I disable a Contract Expert rule?

The change applies to all new and existing contracts whenever the contract authors run Contract Expert. Approved contracts are not affected. If you disable a clause selection rule, for instance, Contract Expert removes the suggested clause the next time Contract Expert is run. If you disable a contract terms template selection rule, the application does not make changes to the templates that are already applied to contracts, but does flag the change during contract validation and on the contract deviations report.



What validations are performed when I activate a Contract Expert rule?

The application automatically validates a Contract Expert rule when you attempt to activate it. You must correct any errors before the rule can become active.

The application performs the following checks:

- Circular references between questions used in the rule
- The presence of clauses that are in the Draft, Expired, or On Hold status
- Invalid or absent Java procedures associated with a variable used in the rule
- Disabled questions
- Invalid SQL in the value set associated to a question or variable used in the rule
- Invalid value in a value set associated to a question or variable used in the rule
- Other invalid rules associated to the contract terms template
- Question or variable using a deleted value set
- Expired or on-hold templates that are a part of template selection rules

What's a system variable?

A predefined variable that gets its value from an attribute of the contract or other document.

For buy-intent contracts, system variables include payment terms, the purchase order number, and the purchase order amount. For sales-intent contracts, they include the customer name, the ship-to address, and the payment terms. System variables are supplied with your application and cannot be modified or deleted.

When does a Contract Expert rule become effective?

A Contract Expert rule becomes effective after you activate it and associate it to a contract terms template.

Why are some conditions unavailable for creating my Contract Expert rule?

Rule conditions are restricted by rule type. For example, rules for selecting default contract terms templates must be based on variables. However, clause selection rules can be based on variables, questions, or clauses.

Why can't I assign a Contract Expert rule to a contract terms template?

For you to assign a Contract Expert rule to a contract terms template, the template must be in a Draft or Approved status; it must be enabled for Contract Expert; and it must belong to the same intent as the rule.

Why doesn't a Contract Expert question display during authoring?

A question does not display during contract terms authoring if the rule is not activated or if the rule is not assigned to an active contract terms template. If you chain contract terms rules to ask follow-up questions, then the display also depends on the answer the contract author gives to the previous question.

Are Contract Expert rules affected by the relationships between clauses?

The alternate and incompatible relationships you specify for clauses do not affect the execution or setup of Contract Expert rules. However, the presence of more than one incompatible and alternate clause show up as warnings when the contract author validates the contract.

How are Contract Expert questions presented during contract authoring?

Contract authors see all of the activated Contract Expert questions that apply to a specific contract terms template on a single page when they run Contract Expert during authoring. Use the **Reorder** button on the View Question Sequence page



to specify the order in which the questions are displayed. If you chained rules to ask additional follow-up questions, then each follow-up question appears underneath the previous question after the contract author answers it.

How can I find all the Contract Expert rules that use a question?

Use the Search Rule page to find all the Contract Expert rules that contain a particular question.

How can I find out which questions contract authors see when they run Contract Expert?

The Rules tab on the contract terms template edit page displays all of the possible questions contract authors may be required to answer when they run Contract Expert and in the order they are asked. A contract author may see only a subset of the questions, depending on what variable values they enter and how they answer the Contract Expert questions. You can view and change the order of questions from the Terms Template search page by selecting the **Manage Question Sequence** action.

How does creating a new version of a Contract Expert rule affect contracts?

Activating a new version of a rule makes that new version effective whenever the contract author runs Contract Expert.

Authors who validate or submit for approval contracts that used a previous version of the rule receive an error asking them to run Contract Expert again. Approved contracts are not affected.

Setting Up Variables

Variables: Explained

You can use variables in the Contract Terms Library to represent information within individual clauses and for use within Contract Expert rule conditions.

Your application comes with predefined variables, called system variables. You can create additional variables, called user variables, with or without programming.

Predefined System Variables

Your application comes with predefined system variables that you cannot modify. These include:

System variables

These variables make it possible for you to use information that is entered in integrated procurement, sales, and projects applications. For example, you can use the purchase order amount from procurement contracts or the payment terms from sales in Contract Expert rules that insert additional clauses to a contract as necessary.

Deliverable variables

These variables permit you to list the titles of contract terms deliverables within a clause in the contract terms. For instance, if a vendor must deliver a monthly quality report as part of the contract terms, you can create a deliverable to ensure compliance. But creating the deliverable does not automatically print that deliverable in the contract terms. To ensure that the deliverable name is printed, you must include a clause with the appropriate deliverable variable inserted.

Table variables

Table variables make it possible for you to print in a contract all of the values in a list such as a price list. Table variables are available only in sales-intent contracts.



To obtain a list of the predefined variables and the information that they represent, navigate to the Search Variables page and filter your search on the Variable type. Select the Document Association tab to view the application and document where the variable information originates. Alternately, you can search for variables by document type.

User Variables

You can create the following types of user variables:

- Manual
- Java string
- Java table
- Descriptive flexfield
- Object
- Child object

User Variables: Explained

The following sections explain how to create and user different types of user variables used in contract clauses.

Creating Java Variables

If you are creating user variables in a non-Cloud environment, then you can use Java variables. Java string and Java table variables require you to create Java methods to capture attribute values. Sample code is provided in the topic Creating Java Methods for User Variables: Examples. While Java string and table variables require programming knowledge, you can create manual user variables without programing. To do so, you:

- 1. Create a value set starting from the Setup and Maintenance work area to validate the value entry for the variable.
 - A value set can either specify the list of values that users must choose from or merely specify the variable format and length. Value sets are common application components described in the Oracle Fusion Applications Functional Setup Manager Developer's Guide.
- 2. Navigate to the Create Variable page.
- 3. Enter a name for the variable. It can be any text that describes the purpose of the variable but it should not have the prefix oxc\$ that is used for system variables.
- 4. Select the variable intent.
 - Variables can be created for either buy (procurement) or sell contracts.
- 5. Select the value set, and enter the name and the description that will help users identify the variable when they are inserting into a clause or entering its value in Contract Expert.
- **6.** If you are creating a variable for buy intent, then you can make the variable updatable by vendors in the Oracle Fusion Sourcing application by selecting the Updatable by External Parties option.

Creating Descriptive Flexfield Variables

You can use the variable source Descriptive flexfield to capture the values you enter in the Contract Headers flexfield and embed those values into the clauses that make up the terms and conditions of the contract.

To define the global segments that you need to reference in your contract variable, you need to set up the Contract Headers flexfield under Setup and Maintenance > Manage Descriptive flexfields.

Use the following steps to create Descriptive flexfield variables:

1. Navigate to the Terms Library and select the Create Variable task.



- 2. Enter the name, intent, and description for the new variable.
- 3. Select the Descriptive flexfield source and select the global segment on which the variable is based.
- 4. Assign the following job roles to users who want to use the terms library to create variables and author contracts:
 - Customer Contract Manager OKC CUSTOMER CONTRACT MANAGER JOB
 - Business Practices Director OKC_BUSINESS_PRACTICES_DIRECTOR_JOB

Descriptive flexfield variables have the following limitations:

- You can use only global segments in contract variables.
- In Contract Expert rules, you cannot use segments that use a value set with a Number or Character data type and use the Independent validation type.
- The following data and display types are not supported:
 - o Drop-down List, Hidden, Date/time are not supported for any data types.
 - No display types are supported for the Date Time data type.

Creating Object Variables

You can use the variable source, Object or Child object, to create variables that reference fields associated to the Sales Account and Opportunity objects in Application Composer. You can reference either standard child objects, or custom child objects that you define for the Sales Account or Opportunity objects.

To define Object or Child object variables, you should ensure the following:

- Using Application Composer, define the fields you want to use in your variables on the Sales Account or Opportunity objects. You can use standard fields or set up custom fields.
- Expose the new fields you created on the Sales Account or Opportunity pages.
- If these changes are defined in a sandbox, they must be published before values can be used in Contract Expert rules or for printing a contract.

Creating Object Variables and Child Object Variables

You start by adding the following duty roles to the user depending on their requirements:

- A user that needs to view or edit contracts that use opportunity variables must be assigned to this duty: Opportunity Administration.
- A user that needs to view or edit contracts that use sales account variables must be assigned to this duty: Sales Party Review.
- A user that needs to use the Terms Library, for example, to create variables or author contracts, must be assigned
 the following job roles: Customer Contract Manager OKC_CUSTOMER_CONTRACT_MANAGER_JOB, Business
 Practices Director OKC_BUSINESS_PRACTICES_DIRECTOR_JOB.

Use the following steps to create object variables:

- 1. Navigate to the Terms Library and select the Create Variable task.
- 2. Enter the name, intent, and description for the new variable.
- 3. Select the source as Object and select the object name as either Sales Account or Opportunity.
- 4. Enter the field name. This is the API name assigned to the field in Application Composer.
- 5. Select the Character, Date, or Number data type.
- 6. For Character data type, enter the lookup types as follows:
 - o For variables of type Fixed Choice List, enter the lookup type assigned to the field in Application Composer.



o For fields of the check box type, enter a lookup type that has codes defined as True (Yes) and False (No).

Use the following steps to create child object variables:

- 1. Navigate to the Terms Library.
- 2. Select the Create Variable task.
- 3. Enter the name, intent, and description for your variable.
- 4. Select source Child object.
- 5. Select the parent object name, either Sales Account or Opportunity.
- 6. Obtain the child object name from the Sales Account or Opportunity XSD file. This is the API Name assigned to the child object in Application Composer. The path to the XSD file is of the format http://server_name:port_number followed by the following strings:
 - o /crmCommonSalesParties/SalesPartyService?XSD=/oracle/apps/crmCommon/salesParties/ salesPartiesService/SalesParty.xsd
 - o /opptyMgmtOpportunities/OpportunityService?XSD=/oracle/apps/sales/opptyMgmt/opportunities/ opportunityService/Opportunity.xsd
- 7. Enter the child object name obtained from the XSD file on the Create Variable page.
- 8. Enter the print layout template name. As for any other table variable that could contain multiple records, you will need to specify which values captured in the child object are to be printed on the contract, and how they should be formatted. This layout will need to be obtained from the RTF file. (See the related "Printing Contract Child Object Variables: Procedure" topic.)
- Note: To view or print any custom child object values, the user must be assigned a privilege that allows them to view the custom child object. For more information refer to the "Managing Security for Custom Objects" topic in the Oracle Sales Cloud Customizing Sales Guide.

Object variables have the following limitations:

Object variables based on fields of type Dynamic Choice List are not supported.

Initiating Contract Creation from An Opportunity Object

You can add an action to initiate the creation of a contract using the application composer.

You can create the contract from the opportunity object as a draft contract using the following APIs: All subsequent steps of the contract, like approving and signing, will happen through Enterprise Contracts.

- Public static AttributeList createContract(AttributeList contractList) throws JboException
- Public static void deleteContract(String externalSourceKey, String externalReferenceKey, boolean deleteAllVersions) throws JboException

Use the following steps to add an action to the opportunity object to create a contract:

- 1. Create an object function within the server script for the opportunity object to invoke the createContract API. The sample code and helper methods are given at the end of this section.
- 2. Ensure that the AttributeList input parameter to call the createContract Java API includes the ExternalSourceKey as OPPORTUNITY and ExternalReferenceKey as Opportunity ID.
- 3. Create a new action under the Action and Links section of the opportunity object to invoke the object function created in Step 1.
- **4.** Add the action on the opportunity page, for example, Create Contract.
- **5.** If defined in a sandbox, publish these changes once testing is complete.
- Note: Instead of invoking the API directly in the first step, you can choose to create a global function and reference from the opportunity object.



You should grant the following privileges to users who use the opportunity object:

- Privilege: OKC_EDIT_CONTRACT_VIA_WEB_SERVICE_PRIV
- Duty: OKC_ALL_BUSINESS_UNITS_CONTRACT_MANAGEMENT_DUTY

Contract creation from opportunity objects has the following limitations:

- The contract created from the opportunity cannot use template selection rules to apply the terms template. The terms template must be the default assigned to the contract type of the contract.
- Application Composer does not support disabling the Create action if a contract is already created for the opportunity object.

Sample code - Object function to create contract:

Note: The values for Business Unit and Contract Type should be replaced with those appropriate to your own instance. Vision Operations and Service Agreement are only examples for illustration purposes.

```
def startDate = new Date();
def endDate = null;
def externalSourceKey = 'OPPORTUNITY';
def businessUnitName = 'Vision Operations';
def contractTypeName = 'Service Agreement';
def deleteSuccess = 'Y';
// Get ContractType Id using ContractType Name
def contractTypeId =
oracle.apps.partnerMgmt.partnerProgram.util.service.con
tractsCoreTransactionSe
rvice.ContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContrac
tTypeIdentifier (adf.sou
rce, contractTypeName);
 // Get businessUnitId Id using Business Unit Name
def businessUnitId =
oracle.apps.partnerMgmt.partnerProgram.util.service.con
tractsCoreTransactionSe
{\tt rvice.ContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getBusines}
sUnitIdentifier(adf.sou
rce. businessUnitName ):
// Delete all versions of the Contract using Chr Id and
MajorVersion
try {
oracle.apps.partnerMgmt.partnerProgram.util.service.con
tractsCoreTransactionSe
rvice.ContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteCont
ract(externalSourceKey,
OptyId.toString(), true);
catch (java.lang.Exception e) {
deleteSuccess = 'N':
if (deleteSuccess == 'Y') {
 // Create Contract
oracle.jbo.AttributeList contractHeader = new
oracle.jbo.NameValuePairs();
 // Set Contract Header Attributes
 contractHeader.setAttribute("OrgId",
businessUnitId):
contractHeader.setAttribute("StartDate", startDate);
contractHeader.setAttribute("EndDate", endDate);
contractHeader.setAttribute("ContractTypeId",
contractTypeId);
```



```
contractHeader.setAttribute("CurrencyCode",
CurrencyCode);
  contractHeader.setAttribute("ContractNumber", Name);
   contractHeader.setAttribute("PartyId",
TargetPartyId);
  contractHeader.setAttribute("ContractOwnerId",
OwnerResourcePartyId);
  contractHeader.setAttribute("WebServiceFlag", "N");
  contractHeader.setAttribute("ExternalSourceKey",
"OPPORTUNITY");
  contractHeader.setAttribute("ExternalReferenceKey",
OptvId);
   // Invoke createContract API to create a contract
oracle.apps.partnerMgmt.partnerProgram.util.service.con
tractsCoreTransactionSe
rvice.ContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCont
ract(contractHeader);
  }
  }
Corrected code that should be used:
def OrgIdStr="OrgId";
def ContractTypeIdStr='ContractTypeId';
def WebServiceFlagStr='WebServiceFlag';
def ExternalSourceKeyStr='ExternalSourceKey';
def ExternalReferenceKeyStr='ExternalReferenceKey';
def ContractNumberStr='ContractNumber';
def ContractOwnerIdStr='ContractOwnerId';
def startDate = new Date();
def endDate = null;
def externalSourceKey = 'OPPORTUNITY';
def businessUnitName = 'Vision Operations';
def contractTypeName = 'Service Agreement';
def deleteSuccess = 'Y';
// Get ContractType Id using ContractType Name
def contractTypeId =
oracle.apps.partnerMgmt.partnerProgram.util.service.con
tractsCoreTransactionSe
{\tt rvice.ContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getCoreTransactionS
tTypeIdentifier(adf.sou
rce, contractTypeName );
// Get businessUnitId Id using Business Unit Name
def businessUnitId =
oracle.apps.partnerMgmt.partnerProgram.util.service.con
tractsCoreTransactionSe
rvice.ContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.getBusines
sUnitIdentifier (adf.sou
rce, businessUnitName);
// Delete all versions of the Contract using Chr Id and
MajorVersion
try {
oracle.apps.partnerMgmt.partnerProgram.util.service.con
tractsCoreTransactionSe
{\tt rvice.ContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.deleteContractSe
ract(externalSourceKey,
  OptyId.toString(), true);
}
catch (java.lang.Exception e) {
deleteSuccess = 'N';
}
```



```
if (deleteSuccess == 'Y') {
// Create Contract
oracle.jbo.AttributeList contractHeader = new
oracle.jbo.NameValuePairs();
// Set Contract Header Attributes
contractHeader.setAttribute(OrgIdStr, businessUnitId);
contractHeader.setAttribute("StartDate", startDate);
contractHeader.setAttribute("EndDate", endDate);
contractHeader.setAttribute(ContractTypeIdStr,
contractTypeId);
contractHeader.setAttribute("CurrencyCode",
CurrencyCode);
contractHeader.setAttribute(ContractNumberStr, Name);
contractHeader.setAttribute("PartyId", TargetPartyId);
contractHeader.setAttribute(ContractOwnerIdStr,
OwnerResourcePartyId);
contractHeader.setAttribute(WebServiceFlagStr, "N");
contractHeader.setAttribute(ExternalSourceKeyStr,
"OPPORTUNITY");
contractHeader.setAttribute(ExternalReferenceKeyStr,
OptyId);
// Invoke createContract API to create a contract
oracle.apps.partnerMgmt.partnerProgram.util.service.con
tractsCoreTransactionSe
{\tt rvice.ContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createContractsCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createCoreTransactionServiceWrapper.createC
ract(contractHeader);
```

Use the following helper methods to collect the required information for your implementation:

Method Signature	Description
public static Long getBusinessUnitIdentifier(Object context*, String businessUnitName)	Get business unit ID for a given business unit name.
public static Long getContractTypeIdentifier(Object context*, String contractTypeName)	Get contract type ID for a given contract type name.
Note: Object context is either EntityImpl or ViewRowImpl object.	
public static Long getPersonIdentifier(Object context*, Long resourceId)	Get person ID for a given resource ID.
public static AttributeList createContract(AttributeList contractHeaderList)	Create contract with only header, party and party contact entities.
public static void deleteContract(String externalSourceKey, String externalReferenceKey, boolean deleteAllVersions)	Delete a contract using the external keys.



Method Signature	Description
public static AttributeList findContract(String externalSourceKey, String externalreferenceKey)	Find a contract using the external keys.
public static void deleteContract(Long contractId, Long majorVersion) (Existing PRM API)	Delete a contract using the contract ID and major version.

Viewing a Contract from an Opportunity

You can add a link to view the contract from an opportunity using Application Composer. From the opportunity, you can access the contract through URL navigation.

Use the following steps to add an action to the opportunity object to create and view a contract:

- 1. Create a link in Application Composer on the opportunity object, for example, Preview Contract.
- 2. Return the URL for navigating to the Contracts AuthoringMainFlow in the groovy script editor for the link.
- 3. Add the link to the Opportunity page.
- 4. If defined in a sandbox, publish these changes once testing is complete.

You should grant the following privileges to Opportunity users:

- The entitlement View Opportunity must be assigned the getOpportunity resource.
- Users viewing contracts from an opportunity must be granted permission for viewing the AuthoringMainFlow taskflow:
 - Privilege: OKC_VIEW_CONTRACT_PRIV
 - Duty: OKC_ALL_BUSINESS_UNITS_CONTRACT_INQUIRY_DUTY or OKC_CONTRACT_INQUIRY_DUTY

Creating and viewing a contract from an opportunity has the following limitations and known issues:

- Commit or rollback is not recommended in the Application Composer groovy script because of which the user must click Save on the Opportunity page to persist the custom fields ContractId and MajorVersion on the Opportunity object.
- Application Composer does not support identity switch when invoking a web service for GPA policy.
- The standard for building the URL for navigating to a taskflow is to call the getURL() API on the
 oracle.apps.fnd.applcore.patterns.uishell.context.UIShellContext. Application Composer does not support the
 UIShellContext class on the groovy script.
- fileDownloadActionListener is not supported in Application Composer, so the Preview Contract PDF file cannot be downloaded by clicking a custom button on the Opportunity page. The alternative approach is to drill down to the Contracts Application using URL navigation.

How User Variables Are Used in a Contract

The user variables that you create can be:

- Inserted in the Contract Terms Library clauses
- Inserted into individual nonstandard clauses created by contract authors during contract authoring.
- Used in Contract Expert rule conditions

When contract authors run Contract Expert during authoring, they are prompted to enter the variable value. The value is automatically substituted in the contract terms and any rules where the variable is used are evaluated.



Descriptive flexfield variables and Application Composer objects have a similar behavior when they are inserted into a clause text and the variable value is embedded. A contract that uses a terms template containing a clause that uses the variable takes the value entered in that field and embed it into the variable value. When previewing or printing the contract, the variables are resolved and the values printed in the document. For variables based on descriptive flexfields, the value is sourced based on the segment name and the attribute number. The ContractSample.xml file exposes the contract header descriptive flexfield so that the values are formatted and used correctly when printed with your own layout templates. For variables based on Application Composer objects, variable resolution uses the opportunity unique ID and the primary party ID to source the opportunity and sales account variable values.

This approach has the following limitation: if you create a contract from the contracts work area, and if the terms template associated with the contract contains variables sourced from the Opportunity object, no variables in the terms template are resolved because the contract was not created from an opportunity and the reference information cannot be retrieved.

Using Value Sets for User Variables and Contract Expert Rules: Explained

You can use value sets to determine what entries contract authors can make in user variables and in Contract Expert feature questions. You can use them either to specify the format an entry must take, or to create a list of values contract authors must choose from.

Value sets are a common application component which you can set up by navigating to the **Setup and Maintenance** work area and searching for the **Manage Contract Terms Value Sets** task. This topic highlights value sets nonprogrammers can set up for Oracle Fusion Enterprise Contracts.

This topic covers:

- Using value sets for creating user variables
- Restrictions for values sets used in Contract Expert feature rules

Using Value Sets for User Variables

You use value sets in the setup of user variables for one of the two following purposes:

- To set up the list of values the contract author must choose from to enter the value
- To specify only the length and format of the information the author must enter manually

Suppose, for example, that you need to create a user variable contract authors can use to enter the name of one of your warehouses into a clause during contract authoring. Without any knowledge of programming, you can:

Create the list of values the contract author will use to select one of the warehouses.

You create the values first and then enter them into an independent value set.

Create a format only value set that restricts the entry to a specified number of characters.

Other value set features are also available for use by nonprogrammers. If you want to restrict the entry of the available warehouses by country, then you can make the above value set dependent on a second value set of countries, for instance.

Restrictions for Using Value Sets in Contract Expert Rules

If you are using the value set for a variable that will be used in Contract Expert rules or to specify the values used in responses to a question used in such a rule, then you only use a subset of the value set features as described in the following table.



Value Set Format Type	Value Set Validation Type	Supported?
Char	Independent	Yes
		Valid operators are: Is, Is Not, In, and Not In
Char	Table	No
Char	Translatable Independent	Yes
		Valid operators are: Is, Is Not, In, and Not In
Char	None	No
Char	Pair	No
Char	Special	No
Char	Dependent	No
Number	None	Yes
		Numeric operators.
Standard Date / Standard Date Time	Not Applicable	No
Date / Date Time	Not Applicable	No

Related Topics

• Value Sets: Explained

Creating Java Methods for User Variables: Examples

To use attribute values captured in application documents that are not defined as existing system variables, you can create user variables that obtain values from Java methods you write based on the sample code in this topic.

This topic provides two sample methods with comments to help you write such Java methods. The sourcing of the Java variable value in these methods are different based on the database table and view object (VO).

If the Java user variable is an attribute of the Document Header VO (for example, Contract Header VO or PO Header VO) then use the first method. Use the second method if the Java user variable is an attribute on any child table of the Document Header VO.

Sample Java Method 1

This sample assumes that <code>currencyCode</code> is an attribute on the PO Header VO. This Contract Expert Java variable works even if the header information is not saved during document authoring. In this scenario, <code>getCurrencyCode()</code> is the method name associated with the user-defined Java variable in the variable definition page.



- Note: Because Java is case sensitive, be careful when entering VO attribute names. Do not change the signature of any method or the parameter names.
- 1. Using Oracle JDeveloper, create an application and a project within that application.
- 2. Within the project, create a Java file with the method for the Java user variable.
- Create a temporary folder and copy the ContractsTermsLibraryPublicModel JAR file from the fusionapps/jlib directory to this folder.
- 4. Right-click the project in Oracle JDeveloper and in the Project Properties:
 - a. Select Libraries and Classpath.
 - **b.** Add the **ContractsTermsLibraryPublicModel** JAR from the temporary folder.
- Create a JAR for the current project, by right-clicking the project and selecting Project Properties and Deployment profile.
- **6.** Copy this new JAR to the following directory: mw_home_standalone/user_projects/domains/fusion_domain/servers/AdminServer/upload/ContractManagementApp/V2.0/app/ContractManagementApp/APP-INF/lib
- Bounce the server.

The following is a sample Java class to implement Java user variables. To customize, change the class name (MyPurchaseUDV). Do not change or remove any of the import statements.

```
*/
MyPurchaseUDV. java
package oracle.apps.contracts.termsLibrary.publicModel.Attributes.model.java;
import java.math.BigDecimal;
import java.sql.*;
import java.util.Collection;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Iterator;
import oracle.apps.contracts.termsLibrary.publicModel.variables.model.java.ProgrammaticUDV;
/**
This class extends the abstract class ProgrammaticUDV.
TO CUSTOMIZE: Change the Class name only (MyPurchaseUDV).
public class MyPurchaseUDV extends ProgrammaticUDV {
CASE 1: For achieving CASE 1 use the methods registerAttributes() and getCurrencyCode().
The following method registers the Java variable present in the Header VO. The name of the variable should
be the same as the name of the attribute in the Header VO.
TO CUSTOMIZE: Change only the VO attribute name of the variable (in this case CurrencyCode) to match the
 attribute name in the Header VO.
Do not change the method name or scope of the method. The only thing can be changed is the VO attribute name
of the user variable.
protected void registerAttributes() {
registerAttribute("CurrencyCode");
 }
/**
The following method obtains the value of java variable used in the Header VO. The attribute name of the
java variable used in this method is CurrencyCode. This method returns the value of the CurrencyCode. The
```



```
value of the variable which we are trying to get using this method (getCurrencyCode) should be registered
in the previous method registerAttributes().
TO CUSTOMIZE: Change the name of the method (getCurrencyCode()). Do not change the scope of the method.
The return type can be changed. To get the value of the variable we have to use the getAttributeValue()
method only.
*/

public String getCurrencyCode() throws Exception {

String retVal = null;

retVal = getAttributeValue("CurrencyCode");

return retVal;
}
```

Sample Java Method 2

The following method is used to get the value of Java variable through SQL queries. In this scenario, we want to add clauses to the contract terms if the contract has any sales credit. Sales credit information is stored in a different table from the contract header. To work this scenario, the document must be saved before invoking Contract Expert. Java variable used is in this case is sales credit. Use method getsalescredit() if the Java user variable is an attribute on any child table of the Document Header VO.

To customize, change the name of the method <code>getsalesCredit()</code> and the return type of the method. The other attribute values, such as document ID and document type, which might be needed while executing the query, can be obtained from the get methods <code>getDocumentId()</code>, <code>getDocumentType()</code>, and <code>getDocumentVersion()</code>.

The executeQuery method:

*/

- Will always return a scalar value which is present in the first row and first column in the result set.
- Will always return a string value:
 - If you are expecting an integer value, then you must do a conversion before returning value.
 - No conversion is required if you are expecting a string.

In the following example, an ID value of a Yes or No value set value is returned based on whether the contract has sales credits entries or not.

```
public int getSalesCredit() throws SQLException, Exception {
  int retVal = 0;
  int value = 0;
  String s1 = null;
  BigDecimal id = getDocumentId();
  s1 = executeQuery("SELECT to_char(count(*)) FROM OKC_K_SALES_CREDITS where dnz_chr_id = " + id);
  value = Integer.parseInt(s1);

if(value > 0) {
  retVal = 271230; // Value Set id for "YES"
  } else {
  retVal = 271229; // Value Set id for "NO"
  }

return retVal;
}
```



```
/*****************
 The following file content is provided here only for reference.
DO NOT INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING CODE IN ANY USER METHOD.
ProgrammaticUDV.java
package oracle.apps.contracts.termsLibrary.publicModel.variables.model.java;
import java.math.BigDecimal;
import java.sql.ResultSet;
import java.sql.SQLException;
import java.sql.Statement;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import oracle.jbo.server.DBTransaction;
public abstract class ProgrammaticUDV {
private HashMap attributesData;
private DBTransaction dBTransaction;
private Statement statement;
protected BigDecimal documentId:
protected String documentType;
protected BigDecimal documentVersion;
private ArrayList<String> attributeNamesUsed = new ArrayList<String>();
public ProgrammaticUDV() {
registerAttributes();
protected abstract void registerAttributes();
protected void registerAttribute(String attributeName) {
attributeNamesUsed.add(attributeName);
protected String getAttributeValue(String attributeName) throws Exception {
 if(attributesData.get(attributeName) == null){
 throw new Exception("Attribute name '" + attributeName + "' is either invalid or not registered.");
 return (String)attributesData.get(attributeName);
public HashMap getAttributesData() {
 return attributesData:
public void setAttributesData(HashMap variableData) {
this.attributesData = variableData;
public ArrayList getAttributesUsed() {
 return attributeNamesUsed;
 }
public void setDBTransaction(DBTransaction dBTransaction) {
 this.dBTransaction = dBTransaction;
protected String executeQuery(String query) throws SQLException {
ResultSet rs = null;
```



```
String s =null;
if (statement != null) {
statement.close();
statement = dBTransaction.createStatement(0);
rs = statement.executeQuery(query);
if(rs.next()){
s = rs.getString(1);
statement.close();
return s;
protected void closeQuery() throws SQLException {
if (statement != null) {
statement.close();
statement = null:
public void setDocumentId(BigDecimal documentId) {
this.documentId = documentId;
public void setDocumentType(String documentType) {
this.documentType = documentType;
public void setDocumentVersion(BigDecimal documentVersion) {
this.documentVersion = documentVersion;
public BigDecimal getDocumentId() {
return documentId;
}
public String getDocumentType() {
return documentType;
public BigDecimal getDocumentVersion() {
return documentVersion;
```

Variables FAQ

How can I obtain a list of system variables for use in Contract Expert rules?

Use the Search Variables page to create a list of system variables you can use in Contract Expert rules. You can use the Document Type field to narrow down your search by contract document type, such as a purchase order or Request for Quote.

How do I enable, disable, and delete variables?

When you create a variable, it is immediately available for use in clauses and Contract Expert rules. While there is no activation process or validation for a variable, variable setup is validated when you use variables in rules.



You can delete any variable as long as it is not being used in a clause or a Contract Expert rule. If it is in use, you can only disable it. Disabling a variable by selecting the **Disabled** option in the Edit Variable page prevents a variable from being used. The application displays an error for all clauses and rules that already use the variable.

Setting Up Adoption of Content Between Libraries

Adoption of Content from Global to Local Terms Libraries: How It Works

Much of the content in the Contract Terms Library is available only in the business unit where you create it. When you designate one of the business units as global during business unit setup, however, the content you create within that business unit can be copied over by other business units, a process known as adoption.

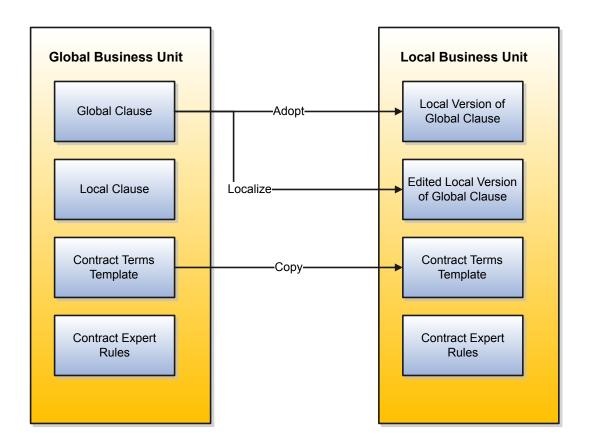
Different kinds of content in the global library can be adopted for use in a local library in different ways, as outlined in the following figure.

 Clauses designated as global can be adopted by selecting either the Adopt or the Localize action in local business units.

Adopt adopts the clause as is. Localize permits the local business unit to edit the clause text.

- Local clauses are visible only in the business unit where they are created.
- Contract terms templates designated as global are visible to the local business units and can be copied over using the duplicate command.
- Contract Expert rules are visible only in the business unit where they are created.
- Note: Sections, folders, and numbering schemes do not need to be adopted or copied. They are automatically available across all business units.





Adopting Clause Localization

Here is how you adopt and localize clauses:

- 1. In the global business unit, you create a clause with the **Global** option selected.
 - After the global clause is approved, it is automatically listed as available for adoption on the Terms Library Overview pages in the local business units.
- Contract Terms Library administrators in local business units select Adopt or Localize from the Actions menu to adopt the clauses.

Both adopted and localized clauses now exist as independent clauses in the local library and must be approved before they can be used in contracts.

Note:

- During the local business unit setup, you can make clause approvals automatic.
- When a new version of one of the adopted or localized global clauses is approved in the global business unit, the terms library administrators in the local business units are notified automatically
- You specify the administrator to receive the notification during the local business unit setup.
- Administrators in the global business unit can create a clause analysis report that details the adoption and localization of the global clauses in the local business units.



Using Copy for Contract Terms Template Adoption

You adopt contract terms templates by copying them:

- 1. In the global business unit, you create a contract terms template with the **Global** option selected.
 - After the global template is approved, it is automatically available for copying in the local business units.
- 2. Contract Terms Library administrators can search for the global templates available for adoption by selecting the **Global** option in the Search Templates page.
- 3. Select the **Duplicate** action to copy Global templates.
 - Tip: Clauses in the copied templates must be first adopted or localized in the local business unit.
- 4. The copied contract terms template must be approved in the local business unit before it can be used.

Content Adoption FAQ

How can I find clauses that are available for adoption?

Clauses that are available for adoption are listed in the Clauses for Adoption region on the Terms Library Overview page. You can also search for them using the Search Clauses page by selecting the Available for Adoption from the Adoption Type drop-down list.

What happens if the global library publishes a new version of the clause I localized?

The new version of the clause appears as available for adoption in the Terms Library Overview page and in clause searches. The Contract Terms Library administrator receives an automatic notification.

What's the difference between an adopted clause and a localized clause?

Adopt a global clause to reuse it without change in a local business unit.

Localize a global clause to use it with edits in a local business unit.

All clauses you adopt and localize must be approved within your local business unit before they can be used for contract authoring. You can set up approvals to be automatic for adopted clauses, but not for localized clauses.

Creating Folders to Organize Clauses

Folders: Explained

You can use folders to organize clauses in the Contract Terms Library.

Folder Properties

Folders have the following properties

- A single folder can contain clauses with both buy and sell intent.
- Folders can be used only in the business unit where you create them.
- Folders cannot be copied to other business units.



• Folder names must be unique within the business unit where you create them.

Setting Up Contract Preview and Printing

Contract Printing and Layout Templates: Explained

Previewing and printing clauses, reports, contracts, and contract terms uses a number of Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher layout templates which specify what information is displayed in the contract and supply the headers, footers, text style, and pagination. The layout templates are RTF files stored in the BI Presentation Catalog. The application comes with samples of all the required layout templates. You can copy the sample layout templates described here, and edit the copies to add your own boilerplate text, font styles, and logos.

You can copy and edit layout templates used for:

- Printing enterprise contracts, including partner agreements
- Printing purchasing and sourcing documents
- Printing the report of contract deviations that can be attached to contract approval notifications
- Previewing contract terms templates
- Previewing and importing clauses into the Contract Terms Library

The sample layout templates are available in different subfolders within the Enterprise Contracts folder in the catalog. You can navigate to the folders in the catalog either from the Reports and Analytics pane or by selecting the **Reports and Analytics** link in the Navigator. Contact your system administrator to grant you the appropriate BI duty roles if these are not available.

You can download the sample templates, copy them, and edit the copies. When you upload your edited copy to the same directory, it becomes immediately available for use within the application. For specific details of customizing BI templates, see the Reports chapter in the "Oracle Sales Cloud Creating Analytics and Reports" manual.

▲ Caution: The catalog includes additional layout templates which are used internally by the application. You can edit only the layout templates listed below.

Printing Enterprise Contracts

The application uses two layout templates for printing enterprise contracts, including partner agreements:

The contract layout template
 This layout template provides the layout for printing the contract except for the contract terms.
 There are two sample layout templates available for you to copy and edit. Both sample layout templates are available in the same directory. The following lists layout templates that are used for contract header information:

Sample Layout Template Name	Description	Location in BI Publisher Catalog Directory
SupplierContract	The layout of contract information for buy- intent contracts.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Printing/ Contract Preview
CustomerContract	The layout of contract information for sell-intent contracts, including partner agreements.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Printing/ Contract Preview



Sample Layout Template Name	Description	Location in BI Publisher Catalog Directory
SalesAgreement	The layout of contract information for sell-intent agreements.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Printing/ Contract Preview

The contract terms layout template

This template provides the layout of the structured terms for printing and for downloading the contract terms for editing offline in Microsoft Word.

If printing an amended contract, the layout template selected determines whether only a summary of amendments is printed, or both the amendment summary and the amended contract terms and conditions are printed.

Note: You cannot download the amendment summary to Word. The following is a listing of the layout templates used for structured terms:

File Name	Description	Location in Bl Publisher Catalog Directory
ContractTermsECM	The layout for printing the contract terms in enterprise contracts when the contract terms are authored in the application.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Download and Preview
ContractTermsAmendmentsOnlyECM	The layout for only printing a summary of the amendments made to contract terms in enterprise contracts.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Preview
ContractTermsPlusAmendmentsECM	The layout for printing the contract terms in enterprise contracts when the contract terms are authored in the application. In addition, for a contract that is under amendment, a summary of the amendments made to contract terms is included.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Preview

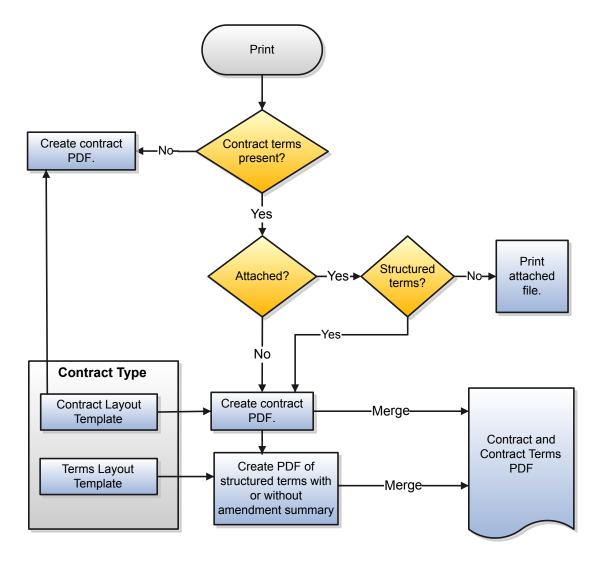
You specify which templates you want to use during contract type setup. This means that you can create different layout templates for each contract type. To set up contract types, select **Manage Contract Types** action from the Setup and Maintenance work area or **Contract Types** under the Setup task heading in the Contracts work area.

The following figure outlines how the application uses the layout templates when you print an enterprise contract:

- The application uses the contract layout template, specified in the Contract Layout field of the contract type, to
 create a PDF of the contract. If the contract does not include any contract terms, this is the only layout template
 used.
- If the contract includes structured terms, then the application uses the contract terms layout template specified in the **Terms Layout Template** field to create the contract terms PDF. To create the contract terms PDF, you must set the terms layout template in contract type.
- If you made amendments to the contract terms and the terms layout template specified includes an amendment summary, then the application creates a PDF document of the amendment summary. If amendments were made and the specified terms layout template includes both the amendment summary and the amended terms of the contract, then the application creates a PDF document of both.



- If the contract terms are attached as a file and the file retains the structured terms format, the application creates the contract terms PDF from the file. Contract terms attached as a file can retain the structured XML format if the file was downloaded from the application using the **Download Contract** action.
- The application then merges the two generated PDFs (one for the basic contract and the other for contract terms) into a single PDF.
- If the contract terms are attached in a file that is not structured, then the application prints only the contents of
 the file. It does not print the contract information in the application or use either layout template. If you need help
 in editing the layout templates, download the sample XML file provided in Enterprise Contracts/Contract Printing/
 ContractPrintDm.



Printing of Contract Terms on Purchase Orders and Sourcing Documents

For printing purchasing documents with structured terms, Oracle Procurement uses two layout templates.

- The document layout template supplied by Oracle Procurement which is located in the Procurement folder.
- The contract terms layout template.



The following table lists the sample files provided:

File Name	Description	Location in BI Publisher Catalog Directory
ContractTermsProcurement	The layout for printing the contract terms in enterprise contracts when you author contract terms in the application.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Download and Preview
ContractTermsAmendmentsOnlyProcurement	The layout for only printing a summary of the amendments made to contract terms in enterprise contracts.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Download and Preview
ContractTermsPlusAmendmentsProcurement	The layout for printing the contract terms in enterprise contracts when you author the contract terms in the application. In addition, for a contract that is under amendment, a summary of the amendments made to contract terms is included.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Download and Preview

You select both of these templates while setting up business unit properties using the **Configure Procurement Business Function** task available by navigating to the Setup and Maintenance work area.

If you attach the contract terms rather than authoring them in the application and the attached file is not structured, then Procurement uses a third layout template which includes a brief sentence explaining that the contract terms are contained in a separate document. That template is:

File Name	Description	Location in Bl Publisher Catalog Directory
ContractTermsNoMerge	This layout template includes the following text: The contract terms for this (doc type) are listed in a separate document which is either attached to the e-mail you received or sent separately. These contract terms should be read in conjunction with this {doc type}. The document type name is substituted in the printed contract.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Attached Contract Preview

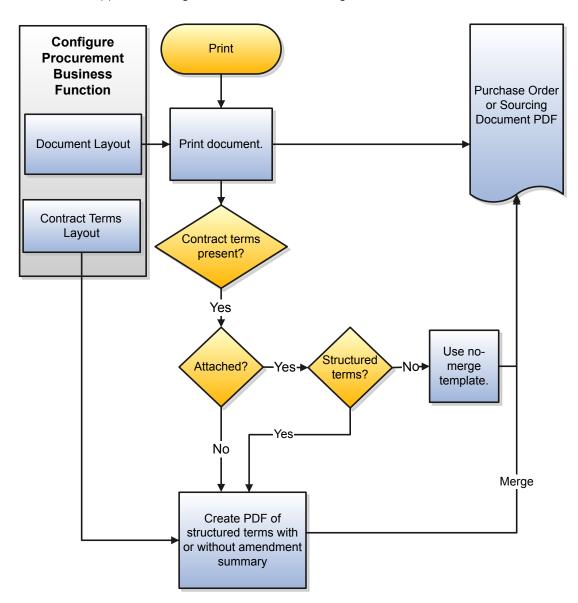
▲ Caution: If you edit the contractTermsNoMerge layout template, then you must save it under the same name in the same directory.

The following figure outlines how the procurement application uses these layout templates for printing:

- 1. The application uses the document layout template specified in the Document Layout field in the PO or purchase agreement to create the PDF.
- 2. If the contract includes structured terms, then the application uses the contact terms layout template to generate the contract terms PDF.
- 3. If the contract terms are attached as a file and the file retains the structured terms format, then the application creates the contract terms PDF from the file. Contract terms attached as a file can retain the structured XML format if the file was downloaded from the application using the **Download Contract** action.
- **4.** If the contract terms are attached as a file that is not structured, then the application creates a small PDF of the message contained in the layout template **contractTermsNoMerge**.



5. The application merges the two PDFs into a single document PDF.



Printing the Contract Deviations Report

The application uses the contract deviations layout template to generate a PDF report of deviations of a contract from company standards. This report can be automatically attached to the notification sent to the contract approvers during contract authoring. You can create different layout templates for each business unit. You specify which layout template you want to use in a specific business unit using either the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** or the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** tasks. These tasks are available in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Separate sample layout files are available for buy-intent and sell-intent contracts. Both are located in the same directory: The following is a list of the layout templates used for the contract deviations report:



File Name	Description	Location in Bl Publisher Catalog Directory
SupplierContractDeviations	The layout for printing the contract deviations for all buy-intent contracts.	Enterprise Contracts/ Deviations Report/ Deviations Report
SupplierContractDeviations	The layout for printing the contract deviations for all sell-intent contracts.	Enterprise Contracts/ Deviations Report/ Deviations Report

Previewing Contract Terms Templates

Contract Terms Library administrators as well as contract authors can preview the content of a template by selecting the preview icon. For example, a contract author may want to preview a template to verify they are selecting the correct one. The preview lists all the clauses and sections the template contains and any boilerplate included in the layout template. It does not list any additional clauses inserted by Contract Expert rules.

You can create different layout templates for each contract terms template. You specify the layout template to be used for the preview on the General tab while editing the contract terms template. The sample layout template is:

File Name	Description	Location in BI Publisher Catalog Directory
ContractTermsTemplate	This layout template specifies the layout of the contract terms template preview.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Contract Terms Download and Preview

Previewing and Importing Clauses

The application uses the clause layout template for:

- Formatting individual clauses for preview:
 - Library administrators can use the preview icon to view preview of individual clauses on the clause search page.
- Formatting clauses imported from outside the application. This applies only to non-Cloud installations.

You can specify which template you want to use in a specific business unit using either the **Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties** or the **Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties** tasks. These tasks are available in the **Setup and Maintenance** work area.

The sample layout template provided is:

File Name	Description	Location in BI Publisher Catalog Directory
ContractTermsLibraryClause	Specifies the layout of clause text in the Contract Terms Library.	Enterprise Contracts/ Contract Terms Printing/ Clause Export and Preview

Related Topics

- Creating and Editing Report Layouts: Overview
- Contract Terms Library Business Unit Setup: Explained



Printing Contract Child Object Variables: Procedure

You must specify which values captured in the child object are to be printed on the contract, and how they should be formatted. This formatting is specified using the print layout template RTF file.

Specify the Print Layout Template Name and Copy the Template

As for any other table variable that could contain multiple records, you must specify which values captured in the child object are to be printed on the contract, and how they should be formatted. You need BI Administrator privileges to update the layout template to print the child object values.

- 1. On the Create Variable window enter the Print Layout Name for a child object variable.
- 2. In the BI catalog, find the existing ECMTableVarSub.rtf file in the Enterprise Contracts Transformation Templates folder.
- 3. Select the English sub template and save the file.

Having made a copy of the sub template, you can edit to add the child object values you would like to print. You can copy an existing child object table to use as a template and paste it into your file. Every table template must have a unique name in the RTF file. The template name entered in the ECMTableVarSub.rtf file must exactly match the Print Layout Name you enter when creating the child object variable.

Update the Table Template Properties

You must also update the table template properties to ensure that the template matches the name you provided for the table template. Using Microsoft Word with the BI Publisher add-in installed, perform the following steps on the RTF template:

- 1. Right-click the template name.
- 2. Navigate to the BI Publisher properties.
- 3. Ensure the template match property is consistent with the table template name.
- 4. Update the child object column names and attributes in the table template as required.
- 5. Update the child object attributes in the table template.
- 6. Update the local name for each child object attribute.

The name must be the same as the API name of the child object attribute in Application Composer.

- 7. Once your edits are complete, save your changes.
- 8. Delete the existing ECMTableVarSub.rtf file from the catalog, and choose the create sub template action to upload your updated version.

When the child object variable is used in a clause, the updated sub template is applied to retrieve the attribute values and format them in the print preview.

Related Topics

- Creating and Editing Report Layouts: Overview
- Contract Printing and Layout Templates: Explained



Can I print a contract if there are no layout templates specified for a contract type?

No, you cannot print or create a PDF of a contract if no contract layout template is specified in the contract type that was used to create the contract. If you do not specify the terms layout template, you cannot preview the contract terms as a PDF.

Setting Up Contract Terms Deliverables

Contract Deliverables: Explained

Contract deliverables establish and track both contractual and noncontractual commitments that must be honored as part of negotiations and contractual agreements between businesses and suppliers or customers based on contract intent. These deliverables can be used in enterprise contracts, purchasing documents, and in negotiations.

This topic provides an overview of the following:

- How you can use contract deliverables
- · Creating and managing contract deliverables
- One-time and repeating deliverables
- Where you can create and use contract deliverables
- The different deliverable types
- Fixed and relative due dates
- Deliverable notifications

Using Contract Deliverables

You can use contract deliverables:

- To communicate with the external party on the contract about commitments and fulfillments.
 - To do this, the responsible party on the contract deliverable must update the contract deliverable such that this change is reflected in the Contracts application.
- To submit any required documents
 - For an enterprise contract, the external contact that is the responsible party on the deliverable can sign in to the Contracts application to submit a report and change the deliverable status to Complete.
- As a repository of documents submitted in the negotiations
 - All documents submitted as attachments are stored in the deliverable history and can be accessed from the deliverable itself.
- To track a contract deliverable from the initial stages of a negotiation to the signed contract
 - The application can automatically copy the appropriate deliverables from the negotiation document to the final contract.
- To automatically calculate deliverable due dates



You can set deliverable due dates relative to contract events, for example, a week before the contract is signed or comes into effect. The application automatically calculates the actual date the deliverable is due. You can also create multiple instances of a deliverable to track repeating deliverables, such as monthly reports.

To automatically notify interested parties when the deliverable is due or overdue

You can set up the deliverable to automatically notify parties of an upcoming deadline or when the deliverable is overdue.

Creating and Managing Contract Deliverables

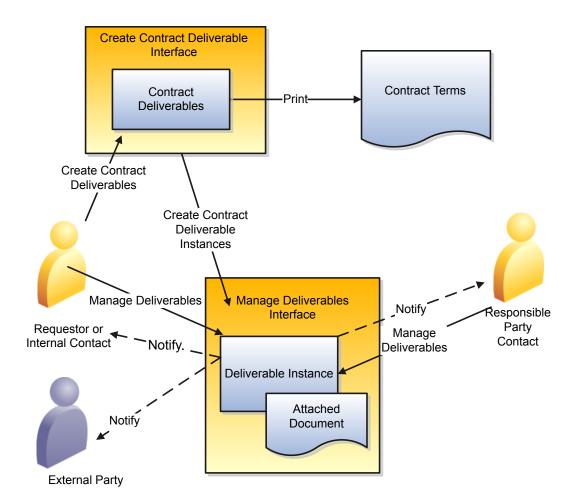
You create and manage contract deliverables in two separate interfaces. You create the contract deliverables while the contract is in negotiations. You manage the deliverables while the contract is active and in the process of being executed except for internal deliverables with fixed due date that you can manually activate before the contract is active.

Here is how the two interfaces work:

- 1. You create the deliverable either in a contract terms template that can then be applied to the contract or directly in the contract. For the deliverable, you must enter the responsible party contact, the deliverable deadlines, and the notifications required.
- 2. If deliverables are present in a contract terms template you apply to a contract, then the deliverables get copied to the contract automatically. The type of deliverables that are applied automatically can vary based on the document type.
- 3. The application creates deliverable instances with the calculated deadlines based on your setups at the time the contract becomes active. For instance, if you created a deliverable that calls for the submission of a report every week after the contract is signed, then the application creates a separate instance of the deliverable for each week based on the date the contract was signed.
- **4.** You and the responsible party contact use the Manage Deliverables page to access and update each deliverable instance. In the above example, each week the deliverable instance that is due that week is updated and any collateral attached.
- 5. Based on your setups, the parties are automatically notified when the deliverable is due or overdue, or when one of the parties changes its status (dashed lines).



6. The contractual deliverables you set up are listed in the printed contract terms when you add the deliverable variable to a clause.



One-Time and Repeating Deliverables

You can create both one-time and repeating deliverables. A one-time deliverable tracks the performance and deadlines for an individual required action that must be performed by one of the parties in the contract. A repeating deliverable tracks a deliverable that must be performed periodically, for instance a progress report that must be submitted every week after the agreement is signed.

The following diagram uses an example to illustrate the two variable types:

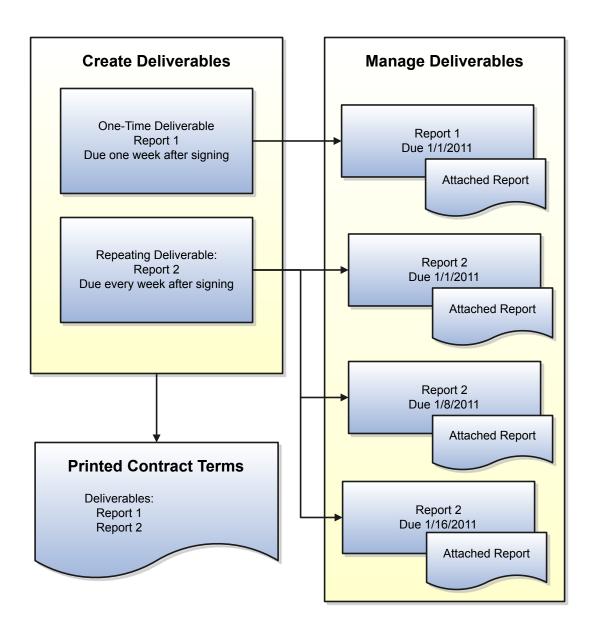
- A one-time deliverable (Report 1) that the responsible party contact must provide that is due one week after the agreement is signed.
- A repeating deliverable (Report 2) that the responsible party contact must provide weekly after the contract is signed.

After the contract is signed and active, the application automatically creates instances of the two deliverables which can be viewed and updated by the responsible party contact using the Manage Deliverables page and the Deliverables bin. The due dates for each deliverable in this example are based on the date the contract was signed.



Note: Note that the name of each deliverable instance for a repeating deliverable is the same. The only difference is the due date.

The internal contact, requestor, or responsible external party contact attaches the report file to the appropriate instance of the deliverable and changes its status to Complete.



Where You Can Create and Use Contract Deliverables

You can create contract terms deliverables both in buy-intent and sell-intent contract terms templates, in the Deliverables tab of an enterprise contract, and in Oracle Fusion Purchasing and Oracle Fusion Sourcing documents.

For purchasing, you can create and use deliverables on documents which include:

Blanket Purchase Agreement



- Contract Purchase Agreement
- Standard Purchase Order

For sourcing, deliverables are copied over from the negotiation document. Sourcing documents include:

- Auction
- Bid
- RFI
- RFI Response
- RFQ
- Sourcing Quote

Contract Deliverable Types

Deliverable types restrict where a deliverable is available and where it can be printed. There are three deliverable types:

Deliverable Type	Where Available	Description	Where It Prints
Contractual Deliverables	Purchasing and sourcing (except RFI documents) documents and enterprise contracts	Deliverables that must be completed as part of the contract.	Prints in all documents: • As part of the Contract Terms Template preview • Enterprise contracts • Purchasing documents • Sourcing documents
Negotiation Deliverables	Sourcing only	Deliverables that are a part of a negotiation document but are not part of the final contract.	Prints as part of: • As part of the Contract Terms Template preview • Sourcing documents
Internal Deliverables	Purchasing documents and enterprise contracts	Deliverables that are used to track internal schedules and commitments.	Not printed as part of the contract terms.

Note: If you create a deliverable as part of a contract terms template and that deliverable is of a type that is not compatible with the contract where the template is applied, then the deliverable does not get created in that contract. For instance, a negotiation deliverable in a template is dropped when that template is applied to a purchase order but added when that same template is used for an RFQ.

Fixed and Relative Due Dates

You can specify a deliverable to be due on a fixed date, such as the first of the month, or relative to a contract event, such as one week after the contract is signed.

The available events include:

- The contract start and end dates
- The dates the negotiations are opened and closed
- The date the contract is signed



· On negotiation documents, the date you receive a response from the responsible external party contact

The available contract events differ depending on where you create the deliverable and the deliverable type. For instance, for contractual deliverables you create in a contract terms templates, you can base the due dates on: Contract Canceled, Contract Closed, Contract Signed, Contract Start Date, and Contract End Date. Negotiation deliverables can be based on: Negotiation Closed, Negotiation Opened, and Response Received.

Deliverable Notifications

You can notify interested parties using Oracle BPEL Process Manager by e-mail, voice message, instant messaging (IM), or short message service (SMS).

You can send automatic notifications:

- Prior to the due date
- When one of the parties changes the status of the deliverable
- When a deliverable is overdue
- When a deliverable must be escalated after the due date

Note: For these notifications to appear, the following processes must be running.

- Send Contract Terms Deliverable Due Date Notifications
- Send Contract Terms Deliverable Escalation Notifications
- Send Contract Terms Deliverable Overdue Notifications

Who receives the notification depends on a combination of the notification type and the party who is responsible for the deliverable as listed in the following table. The requester is an internal party. The external contact is a supplier or customer contact.

Notification Type	Responsible Party	Recipients
Prior to due date	Internal	Internal Contact
Prior to due date	External	External Contact
Overdue	Internal	Requester, Internal Contact
Overdue	External	Requester, Internal Contact, External Contact
Status Change	Internal	Requester, Internal Contact
Status Change	External	Requester, Internal Contact, External Contact
Escalation	Internal and External	Requester, Internal Contact, Escalation Contact

Related Topics

What's the difference between internal and contractual deliverables?



Contract Deliverables FAQ

How do I create contract deliverables for an enterprise contract?

You can create deliverables for a terms template and apply this terms template to a contract. The deliverables from the applied terms template are then visible in the Deliverables tab of the contract.

Alternatively, you can navigate to the Deliverables tab using the contract header Deliverables menu item and create deliverables directly in the contract.

What does it mean to change the printing sequence for contract deliverables?

Contract deliverables can be listed by title in a clause in your terms and conditions. You can change the sequence in which the titles appear on this list by modifying the print sequence.

What's the difference between contract deliverables and contract fulfillment?

Contract deliverables establish and track both contractual and noncontractual commitments that must be honored as part of negotiations and contractual agreements between businesses and suppliers or customers based on contract intent. These deliverables can be used in enterprise contracts, purchasing documents, and in negotiations.

Contract fulfillment lines in procurement contracts denote commitments in terms of goods or services that must be delivered. You can use contract fulfillment lines to initiate and monitor purchasing activity in integrated procurement applications. For example, you can use contract fulfillment to create a purchase order in Oracle Fusion Purchasing for items in a contract line and then monitor the purchasing activity on that purchase order as it is being executed.

Related Topics

Contract Fulfillment: How It Works

Indexing Clauses for Keyword Searches

Building and Maintaining the Text Index for Keyword Searches: Explained

In the Contract Terms Library, you can use the **Keyword** field to search the text of clauses and contract terms templates. You can automatically build and maintain the text index by running the processes listed in this topic.

Setting Up and Maintaining the Text Index

You can set up the processes listed in this table to automatically build and optimize the text index at desired intervals. How frequently depends on how often your clauses and contract terms templates are updated. New clause and template versions become available for searching after they are indexed.

Process	Description
Build Keyword Search Index for Contract Clauses	Builds the index for clauses. The process indexes the text in the following fields: Clause Text, Clause Title, Display Title, Description, and Instructions.



Process	Description
Optimize Keyword Search Index for Contract Clauses	Optimizes the clause search.
Build Keyword Search Index for Contract Terms Templates	Builds the index for clauses in contract terms templates. The process indexes the text in the following fields: Template Name, Description, and Instructions.
Optimize Keyword Search Index for Contract Terms Templates	Optimizes the clause search in contract terms templates.

To run the processes:

- 1. Select the **Manage Processes** task link in the Terms Library work area.
- 2. In the Managed Scheduled Processes page, click **Schedule New Process**.

Managing Clause and Section Numbering Schemes

Numbering Schemes: Explained

Use a numbering scheme to number sections and clauses in a contract terms template or contract. In addition to the numbering schemes that come with the application, you can create more numbering schemes in the Terms Library work area.

Numbering Scheme Properties

Numbering schemes have the following properties:

- Numbering schemes are available in all business units.
- You can create numbering schemes up to five levels.
- Numbering clauses is optional.
- You can add the numbering of the previous level as the suffix of the current level by selecting the Concatenate with Child option.
- You can skip the numbering of specific sections and clauses for printing and display of contract terms by selecting
 the Skip Numbering printing option. This automatically moves up the numbering of subsections and clauses in the
 section and following sections and clauses in the contract.
- Edits you make to an existing numbering scheme in the Contract Terms Library do not automatically apply to all contracts using that numbering scheme. You must reapply the scheme to each contract.
- You cannot delete any of the numbering schemes that come with your application.
- You cannot delete a numbering scheme if it is used in an existing contract.

How can I change the numbering scheme for sections and clauses?

You can apply a numbering scheme for sections and clauses by selecting the **Change Numbering Scheme** action on the Contract Terms tab while creating a contract terms template or authoring a contract. You can also change the numbering sequence for the printing and display of subsequent subsections and clauses in a section or sections and clauses in a



contract by selecting the Suppress Title or Skip Numbering printing options for a section or clause. If you need to create additional numbering schemes, you can do so using the **Create Numbering Scheme** action on the Terms Library Overview page.

Related Topics

• How can I configure contract terms before I print them?

Using the Oracle Contracts Terms Library: Examples

Standard clauses, terms templates, and business rules are set up in the contract terms library. With policies and terms templates in place, the legal language on a contract can be quickly created from approved templates, expediting contract creation and approval. Use these examples to better understand using the common features of the terms library.

Creating a Clause in the Contract Terms Library

The clause is the basic building block of both the terms library and contracts in general. Using the **Create Clause** task in the Terms Library work area the following steps summarize the creation of a clause. See the related links section for a detailed demonstration.

- 1. In the Create Clause window, select the business unit for the clause.
- 2. Enter a clause number, title, and display title per your organization's standards.
- 3. Select the intent for the use of this clause.
- 4. Select a clause type.
- **5.** Use the editor to enter your clause text.
- **6.** Add variables to your clause by positioning the cursor in the text and clicking **Insert Variables**.
- 7. You can enter optional instructions for contract authors in the Instructions tab.
- 8. You can provide contract authors with alternate clauses that they can select instead of this one in the Related Clauses tab.
- 9. When your clause is complete, submit the clause for approval by the library administrator by clicking Submit.

Creating a Contract Terms Template

The terms template is the customary starting point for all contract authors. Using the **Create Terms Template** task in the Terms Library work area the following steps summarize the creation of the template. See the related links section for a detailed demonstration.

- 1. Select the business unit for the template.
- 2. Enter a unique name into the Name field per your organization's standards.
- **3.** Select the intent for the use of this template.
- **4.** Select the layout template which best enables contract authors to preview the contract terms when they are selecting templates.
- 5. It's recommended that you use Contract Expert rules to add additional clauses if the contract requires it, so you must enable Contract Expert for this template.
- 6. Enter name of the default section where Contract Expert will insert any additional clauses into the Default Section field.
- 7. Click Save.
- 8. Click **Add** in the Document Types toolbar of the Document Types region to specify what contract types will use this template.



- 9. Select the Document Type and optionally click the **Default** option to automatically apply this template to every new contract of this type.
- 10. You need a section to add clauses to so start by clicking **Add Section** from the Actions menu in the Clauses tab.
- 11. Add an existing section from the library or create a new section.
- 12. To add clauses to this section, click **Add Clause**.
- 13. Search for the desired clause, select the clause, and then click the **OK** button.
- 14. Click **Expand** for the section and then click **Refresh** to see your edits.
- **15.** After you have added all the desired terms and conditions to the template, click **Submit** to begin the approval process.
- **16.** If your template passes validation without errors, click **Submit** again.

Creating a Clause in a Contract Terms Template

Once you have created a contract terms template you can modify it by creating a clause while editing the template in the Contract Terms Library. With your template open in the Clauses tab the following steps summarize the creation of a clause. See the related links section for a detailed demonstration.

- 1. Click **Add Clause** and search the library for similar clauses before creating a new one. In this example the library does not contain the clause you need and you will create one.
- 2. Click the Create Clause button.
- 3. Enter an alphanumeric ID in the **Number** field that is unique within the business unit.
- 4. Enter a unique clause title in the Title field.
- **5.** Classify the clause for the Contract Terms Library by selecting a **Type**.
- 6. Enter the clause text and optionally insert variables into the Text field to complete your new clause.
- 7. Once you are satisfied with your new text, click the **OK** button.
- 8. Expand the template folders and click **Refresh** to see the latest edits.
- 9. After you have added all the new terms and conditions to the template, you are ready to submit it for approval by clicking **Submit**.
- 10. Review all the draft clauses you created or added to the template and click **Next**.
- 11. If the template passes validation without errors, you then click **Submit** again.
- **12.** The template and draft clauses are now pending approval and are available for use in contracts after they are approved.

Related Topics

- Creating a Clause in the Contract Terms Library
- · Creating a Contract Terms Template
- Creating a Clause in a Contract Terms Template

Importing Clauses into the Contract Terms Library: Explained

You can import clauses, values sets, and manual user variables from external sources into the Contract Terms Library by using interface tables. You can either load your data directly into the interface tables using SQL*Loader, PL/SQL scripts, or JDBC or you can import the data from an XML file by running the processes described in this topic.



This topic describes:

- What data you can import
- The interface tables
- Importing clauses by loading them into the interface tables
- Importing clauses from an XML file
- Purging the interface tables

What You Can Import

You can import:

- Clauses
- Clause relationships
- Manual user variables
- Value sets that are used for the variables
- Value set values

Details about the fields and valid values for import are available in the import schema file OKCXMLIMPDFN.xsd which you can download from the Oracle Support document 2151576.1.

Clause Status

Clause status determines when the clause becomes available for use in contract terms authoring:

- Draft: The clause can be edited and submitted for approval.
- Pending Approval: The clause is automatically routed to approvers.
- Approved: The clause is available for use immediately after import.

Interface Tables

The same interface tables are used whether you are importing clauses using an XML file or loading data directly into the interface tables. The following is a list of the database tables used for clause import:

Table	Description
OKC_ART_INTERFACE_ALL	The main interface table for loading clause data from external systems.
OKC_ART_RELS_INTERFACE	Table that stores information about clause relationships.
OKC_VARIABLES_INTERFACE	Table used to import variables used in clauses.
OKC_VALUESETS_INTERFACE	Table used to import value sets that are used by variables.
OKC_VS_VALUES_INTERFACE	Table that stores value set values.
OKC_ART_INT_ERRORS	Table that stores errors that are reported during import validation or import



Table	Description
OKC_ART_INT_BATPROCS_ALL	The internal system table that stores the batch run details. This includes the processing status as well as all the parameters that are used for each import.

Importing Clauses by Loading Them Into the Interface Tables

To import clauses by loading them directly into the interface tables:

- 1. Format the data in a form that is suitable for loading into the interface tables. For example, if you are using SQL*Loader to load data into the interface tables, then you can use a comma separated data file (.csv) and a control file that describes the data format.
- 2. Select the **Manage Processes** task link from the Terms Library work area.
- 3. In the Managed Scheduled Processes page, click **Schedule New Process** and run the Import Clauses from Interface Tables process. It is recommended that you run the process first in the validation mode to review any errors. The following table describes the process parameters:

Parameter	Possible Values	Mandatory	Description
Batch Name	A name for identification purposes.	Yes	Provides a way for you to identify the records you are importing.
Run in Validation Mode	Yes or No	No	Set to Yes if you want to identify potential errors before you import.
Commit Size	1 to 300		Indicates the maximum number of records that the process commits to the database at one time. For example, if you are importing 1, 000 records and set the commit size to 100, then the process will commit records each time it processes 100 records without error. If an error occurs on the 150th record, then the process will not reprocess the first 100 the next time that you run the program. Consult your database administrator for the appropriate value.

- **4.** Use the **Manage Process** task available in the Terms Library work area to monitor the progress of your import and review the log for any error messages. Records with errors remain in the interface tables until you purged them or correct them.
- 5. To improve performance, periodically purge the interface tables used in the import by running the Purge Contract Clause Import Tables process.



Importing Clauses From an XML File

To import clauses from a file:

- 1. Prepare the XML file as specified in the schema file OKCXMLIMPDFN.xsd and the sample file OKCXMLIMPDFN.xml. You can download both files from the Oracle Support document 2151576.1.
- 2. Specify the location of the import file in the system profile Location of XML File for Importing Clauses. You can set this profile in the Oracle Fusion Setup Manager using the Manage Clause and Template Management Profiles task.
- 3. Select the **Import Clauses** task link in the Terms Library work area and enter the following parameters for running the Import Clauses from XML File process:

Parameter	Description
XML File Name	The name of the file you are importing. The file must be uploaded to the location specified in the system profile Clause Import XML File Location.
Default Business Unit	The business unit where clauses are assigned when no specific business unit is included in a clause record you are importing. If the import file includes business units for all clause records, then you can leave this field blank.
Create as Global Clause	You can specify clauses imported into the global business unit as global clauses. This means they will be available for adoption by other business units.
Default Clause Status	The status you enter here is used to specify the status of clause records where no status is specified.
Mode	Use the Validate option to test the quality of your data. Use the Import option to import the clauses.

- 4. Use the Manage Process task available in the Terms Library work area to monitor the progress of your import and review the log for any error messages. Records with errors remain in the interface tables until you purged them or correct them.
- **5.** To improve performance, periodically purge the interface tables used in the import by running the Purge Contract Clause Import Tables process.

Purging the Interface Tables

To optimize import performance, periodically run the Purge Contract Clause Import Tables process. This process purges records in all of the interface tables. The following table describes the parameters you can use to restrict the extend of the purge. If you do not enter any parameters, the process purges all records.

Parameter	Mandatory	Description
Start Date and End Date	No	Use the start and end dates to identify the date range for the interface records you want to purge.
Process Status	No	Enter a status if you want to purge interface records with that status. The possible values are Error, Success, and Warning.



Parameter	Mandatory	Description
Batch Name	No	You can restrict the purge to a specific batch by entering its name.

Related Topics

• Oracle Support Document 2151576.1



12 Understanding Data Import and Export

Importing Contracts

Importing Contracts: Overview

You can use file-based import to bring existing legacy contracts into Oracle Applications. To do this, you must first upload the source file and then map fields in the source file to import object attributes. Then, when you schedule an import activity, per the mapping the interface tables are populated with data that you can then bring in as new contracts.

Summary of Features

The key features of importing contracts include the following:

- Upload the source file to the file repository.
- Identify the target import objects.
- Map import object attributes to fields in the source file you uploaded.
- Schedule the import activity to populate the interface tables with the data.
- Import contract attachments.

Resources

To help you get started, you can use the document and example templates provided in Document ID 2151576.1 on My Oracle Support.

Importing Contracts: Explained

You can import contracts from a source file into the application. To set up file-based import for importing contract data, select the **Manage File Import Objects** and **Manage File Import Mappings** tasks. To schedule your contract imports, select the **Manage File Import Activities** task. These tasks are available by selecting **Setup and Maintenance** from the Tools menu and searching on the task name.

File-based import supports the import of data from an external text or XML file to interface tables, and from interface tables to target application tables.

This topic describes:

- What you can import
- The interface table
- The import process



What You Can Import

All contracts can be imported except for those in Expired status. The import file can use names as well as IDs to identify data, for example, Party ID or Party Name. You can import only one version for each contract, with the following data:

- Contract header
- Primary party (supplier, customer, or partner)
- One contract owner: depending on the owner role, this is either an employee or salesperson of the contract's business
- One primary contract party: a supplier or partner or customer
- Primary contract document as an attachment
- Additional attachments: the import file lists the attachments which are imported using the file import user interface (UI), either individually or as a ZIP file.

You can import new contracts as well as update or delete a contract using import. The same restrictions apply to update and delete as are applied when you perform those same actions in the application UI.

Interface Table

The application uses the following database tables for importing contracts:

Table	Description
OKC_IMP_CONTRACT_HEADERS	The interface table used to load contract data from external systems. This table maps to logical contract data: contract header, contract party, contract party contact, contract terms, and contract attachments.
OKC_IMP_CONTRACT_ADDRS	Interface table for importing contract addresses.
OKC_IMP_CONTRACT_CNTACTS	Interface table for importing contract contacts.
OKC_IMP_CONTRACT_LINES	Interface table for importing contract lines.
OKC_IMP_CONTRACT_PARTIES	Interface table for importing contract parties.
OKC_IMP_CONTRACT_RELNS	Interface table for importing contract relationships.
OKC_ K_ SALES_ CREDITS_INT	Interface table for sales credits.
PJB_ BILL_ PLANS_INT	Interface table for importing project billing plans.
PJB_ BILLING_ CONTROLS_INT	Interface table for importing project billing controls.
PJB_ CNTRCT_ PROJ_ LINKS_INT	Interface table for importing project procurement links.

Details about the fields and valid values for import are available from Contracts section of the "Tables and Views for Oracle Sales Cloud" guide See Related Topics.



Importing Contracts from a Source File

To import contracts, use the file-based import feature and upload contract data into the interface table. To access this feature, select the **Manage File Import Activities** task, available by selecting **Setup and Maintenance** from the Tools menu and searching on the task name. A detailed description of how to import data using file-based import is given in a related topic.

Note: The Edit Import Activity: Map Fields page contains an import mapping that details the mapping between source file columns and contract attributes, but you may define additional import mappings.

Related Topics

- File-Based Import Mapping: Explained
- File-Based Import Processing: How it Works

Import Activity Source File Options: Explained

The Import Activity is a step-by-step guided process to assist you with creating an import activity for a given object. This topic describes the source file options defined in the Import Activity that are used by the import process to locate and parse the source file data.

Source File Data

Enter attribute details pertaining to the source file from the following table:

Option	Description
File Type	Source file must be either Text, ZIP, or XML.
Data Type, Delimiter, and Header Row Included	A Text file type can further be defined based on how the data is delimited and if the source file is expected to include a row of headings for each column.
Import Mapping	Displays a list of predefined mappings for the object selected for this import activity. The selected mapping will be used as the basis for mapping your source file in the next Import Activity step.

Source File Location

The following outlines the options that are available to you when locating your source file for import.

Option	Description	
Upload From	You can upload the source file from the following locations:	
	 Desktop If you select Desktop, then a File Name field with an associated Update button is displayed. Click Update and browse to search for and select the file you want to upload. WebCenter Content Server 	



Option	Description
	If you select WebCenter Content Server , then a File Name field with an associated Browse button is displayed. Click and browse to search for and select the file you want to upload.

Importing Contracts Using File-Based Import: Quick Start

This topic describes a few key concepts and provides guidance to get you started in importing contracts.

It includes the following information:

- · The contract target import object
- The minimum data required and the prerequisites steps
- The minimum data required and the prerequisites steps
- How to access and use reference files to evaluate attributes
- Additional tips

The following table displays the file-based import object and target object for importing contracts.

Import Object	Target Object
Contract	ImportContractHeader1
Contract Party	ImportContractParty1
Contract Party Contact	ImportContractPartyContact1
Contract Lines	ImportContractLines1
Associated Projects	ContractProjectLinkageImport1
Bill Plans	BillPlanImport1
Billing Controls	BillingControlImport1
Contract Sales Credit	ImportContractSalesCredit1
Contract with no lines (Non-Hierarchical)	ImportContractHeader1

Contract Target Import Objects

The Contract import objects are used to import basic contract information and party information about the customer or supplier, the organization or business unit, and party contacts. The Contract target import object organizes the individual attributes of the contract such as the contract number and contract type. The Contract Party target import object includes the individual attributes of the party information such as the business unit and contract owner, and the primary party. The



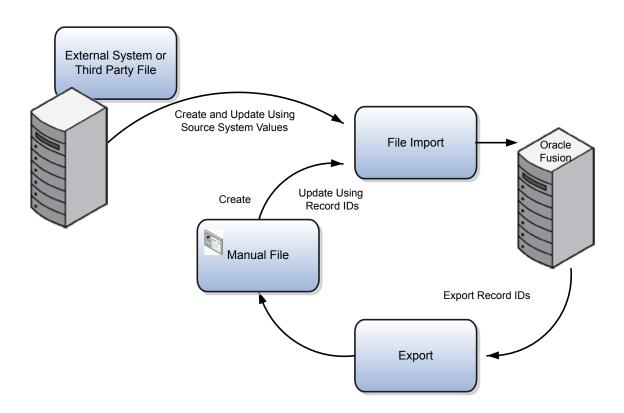
Contract Party Contact target import object includes the primary party contact information. These are the contract header attributes that are required to import contract headers.

The employee of the associated business unit is the contract owner. The external party can be the customer, the supplier, or the partner. The contract type determines the properties of the contract. For example, the type of permitted contract lines, contract validation checks, and contract acceptance signature requirements.

Minimum Data Required and the Prerequisite Steps

To create a new contract or update existing contracts using file import, your source file must contain information about the contract and the associated business unit and contract owner, and external party and external party contact. When the data is imported, a record is created in Oracle Applications for each contract. Each contract record in the application has a unique ID. This ID is often referred to as the internal ID or object key. You can use these IDs to uniquely identify the records when importing updates.

When the source of your data is not an external application and you do not plan to regularly update the data, you do not need the source record information such as the contract number and the contract type. To import updates to your existing data, you can export the Oracle record ID and add it to your source file. The import process uses the record ID to identify the existing record. The following figure shows how you import contracts.



The minimum that is required to import contract information depends on the following:

- The purpose of the import. The data requirements are different when you are creating a contract or updating a contract record.
- Identifying records. The data requirements are different when using source system information such as contract number and contract type ID, or record IDs to identify records.



The values that you provide in your source file may require a setup task or manual step to ensure the information passes the import validation. Before you prepare your source file, complete the prerequisite steps to determine the data values, and then include those values in your source file.

Note: Refer to the File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud guide available on the Oracle Sales Cloud Help Center (docs.oracle.com) for the required attributes for the application release you are using.

Using Reference Files to Evaluate Attributes

For information about available import attributes, see the File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud guide available on the Oracle Sales Cloud Help Center (docs.oracle.com). In the File Based Data Imports chapter, see the topic for your import object of interest, which includes links to reference files for target import objects.

Review a reference file to see attributes that are available to import and information for each attribute, including requirement for inclusion in an import, validation requirements, default value, data type, data length, and description.

Additional Tips

You can explore related topics by entering the following keywords in the Oracle Help Application search. The Help Application is available from any Oracle Application page by clicking **Applications Help** from the Settings and Actions menu.

- Importing customers
- Importing suppliers
- Importing partners
- Importing contacts

Related Topics

• File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud guide

Importing Attachments Using File-Based Data Import: Procedure

This topic describes how to include attachments when you use the **Manage File Import Activities** task.

Importing Attachments

You can use the following steps to import attachments using file-based data import:

1. Add one or more of the following columns to the source file that you're importing.

The ATTACHMENT_FILE _NAME header is the only required header. All other headers are optional. The **Manage** File Import Activities task reserves these header names for their described usage. You must not use them for any other purpose.

Column Header	Description
ATTACHMENT_ FILE _NAME	The ZIP file selected when defining the import activity must contain a file with the specified ATTACHMENT_ FILE_NAME value. Otherwise an error will be generated.
ATTACHMENT_ FILE _DESC	A description of the file to be attached to the record.



Column Header	Description
ATTACHMENT_ FILE _TITLE	Enter the file title. This is not a mandatory field. If you don't specify a file title, then the Manage File Import Activities task uses the file name as the title. For example, if the file name is abc.txt, and the ATTACHMENT_FILE_TITLE column value is not explicitly passed in the CSV, then it takes up the value as abc.
ATTACHMENT_ CATEGORY _NAME	Specify the attachment category. An attachment category is used to classify and secure attachments. Each attachment UI must be defined with at least one category so that users can add attachments. For example, you can categorize attachments for an expense report as a receipt, scanned invoice image, and so on.

In each row of the source file, enter the name of the attachment file that the Manage File Import Activities task must attach to the record.

In the following example, you enter file_1.doc as the attachment file for Lead 1.

LeadName	StatusCD	Score	ATTACHMENT _FILE _NAME
Lead 1	QUALIFIED	7	file_1.doc
Lead 2	QUALIFIED	8	file_2.doc
Lead 3	QUALIFIED	3	file_3.doc
Lead 4	QUALIFIED	7	file_4.doc

3. To specify the same attachment file for more than one record, enter the same file name for each record in the ATTACHMENT_FILE_NAME column. For example, you can specify file_1.doc for Lead 1 and for Lead 2.

Note:

- You can specify multiple attachments for any type of business object or custom object.
- o If you specify more than one attachment for the same record, and if you add any of the optional attachment columns, then you must repeat all the columns in the same order for each attachment file.
- **4.** Create a ZIP file that includes the files that you must attach.

For example, create a file named myfiles.zip that includes the following files:

- file_1.doc
- o file 2.doc
- o file_3.doc
- o file 4.doc

You can also use a JAR file. You can organize these files in folders and subdirectories, at your discretion.

- 5. Sign in to the Oracle Sales Cloud application.
- 6. Navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area, and then search for the Manage File Import Activities task.
- 7. In the Search Results list, click **Go to Task**.
- 8. On the Manage Import Activities page, click the Create icon.



- **9.** On the **Create Import Activity: Enter Import Options** page, choose an object from the **Object** drop-down list that supports attachments. To identify the objects that support attachments, see the Prerequisites section.
- 10. In the Attachments section, click Browse, and then locate your ZIP file.

✓ Note:

- You can upload only one ZIP file.
- o You can't add more attachments after you upload the ZIP file.
- 11. Enter the data in the remaining fields and activate the file-based data import activity.

The **Manage File Import Activities** task recognizes the reserved column header names, so you don't have to map them in the **Create Import Activity: Map Fields** page. For more information about finishing this task, see the Related Topics section at the end of this topic.

Constraints for Business Objects

You can import attachments only for the following business objects:

- Account
- Activity
- Contact
- Contract
- Campaign
- Household
- Lead
- Opportunity
- Partner
- Notes
- Sales custom object
- Common custom object

You cannot delete the file attachments from a record in Oracle Sales Cloud using file-based data import activities.

Related Topics

- File-Based Data Import Objects: Explained
- What's an attachment category?
- Managing Attachments for Partners: Explained
- File-Based Import Monitoring: Explained

Import Activity Import Options: Explained

This topic describes the import options available while creating import activities.



Source File Data Transformation

The following options are used to identify the formatting of source file data so that the data can be correctly interpreted and transformed by the import process:

Option	Description
Decimal Separator	The format of the fractional portion of numeric values in columns mapped to attributes with a decimal attribute type.
Date Format	The format for values in columns mapped to attributes with a date attribute type.
Time Stamp Format	The format for values in columns mapped to attributes with a time stamp attribute type.
File Encoding	The overall encoding of the characters within the file.

Interface to Target Import Options

Depending on the object that you're importing and the application modules you implemented, you can select one or more of these options.

Option	Description
Import Mode	For importing leads and employee resources only, you have the option of specifying if you want to create and update records or update only. If you select update, then any new records will be ignored by the import process. For all other import objects, both create and update operations are available.
Allowable Error Count	The Allowable Error Count threshold determines whether to automatically cancel an import if the number of consecutive rows with validation errors exceeds the user defined threshold value. The default value for Allowable Error Count is 2000 but you can change this value when configuring your import. During the "Preparing Data for Import" step only, if the number of consecutive rows in your input file with a validation error exceeds the Allowable Error Count value, then the import will be canceled. If the Allowable Error Count is not reached in this step, then the import will proceed. Errors encountered during the "Importing Data" step are not counted as part of the Allowable Error Count.
	Validation errors include: • Missing required values • Values that exceed the attribute length • Invalid identifiers and lookup codes
	Duplicates found using matching configurations for Customer Data Management objects do not contribute to the error count.
Notification E-Mail	The e-mail of the intended recipient of import processing notifications. Currently this option is supported only for Opportunity, Lead, and custom objects.
Customer Data Management Duplicates	You can select the options in the Customer Data Management LOV for handling duplicates when you're importing accounts and legal entities either alone or as part of another object.



Option Descriptio



Note: You can use the Customer Data Management Duplicates LOV to retrieve duplicates only if you have licensed the data quality functionality. Once licensed, you must rebuild the keys for your matching configuration using the Manage Enterprise Data Quality Matching Configurations task. For more information, see the Define Data Quality chapter in the Oracle Sales Cloud Implementing Customer Data Management quide.

The duplicates are determined using the following matching configurations:

- · Address Duplicate Identification
- · Contact Duplicate Identification
- Account Duplicate Identification

Using this option, which is available only if you licensed the data quality functionality, you can select different options for handling duplicates when you're importing accounts and legal entities either alone or as part of another object.

The duplicates are determined using the following matching configurations:

- Batch Location Basic Duplicate Identification
- Batch Person Basic Duplicate Identification
- Batch Organization Basic Duplicate Identification

You can select from one of the following:

• Do Not Import Duplicate Records

If the main object of the Import Activity is an account or a legal entity object, then the rows that are matched to existing records will not be imported. These duplicates records are reported in the Exception and Error reports.

If the Customer Data Management objects are components of another object and one or more matches are found, then the existing duplicate records are evaluated to determine the most recent record. The most recent record will be associated with the main object being imported.

Import Duplicate Records

The Customer Data Management objects will be imported even if matched records exist.

Import Duplicate Records and Create Resolution Request

The Customer Data Management objects will be imported even if matched records exist. In addition, a duplicate resolution request is created and displayed in the Customer Data Management, Duplicate Resolution work area.

Duplicate Look Back Days

This option applies only to the Lead import object. Only existing leads created within the period determined by the look back days value are evaluated for duplicates based on the attributes selected for duplicate validation in the predefined import mapping. If a duplicate is found, the lead will not be imported and the duplicate record will be reported on the Exception report. Duplicate leads are included in the calculation of the allowable error count threshold.



Import Activity Field Mapping: Explained

After entering your import options, the second step of the import activity process is to map fields in the source file to the corresponding target attributes. This topic explains the following steps in the process:

- Mapping the Fields
- Saving the Import Mapping
- Constant Values

Mapping the Fields

The Map Fields section can be subdivided into source file columns and target attribute columns. The source column header value is derived from one of the following:

- · Predefined mapping, if one is selected
- The source file, if the **Header Row Included** option is selected in the first step of the import activity definition. This is for Text file type only.
- Generic values of Column A, Column B, and so on, if the **Header Row Included** option is not selected. This is for Text file type only.
- XML tagging structure. This is for XML file type only.

The following table outlines the source columns.

Source Column	Description
Column Header	Represents the column header for Text file types and the tagging structure for XML file types.
Example Value	Values are derived from the first source file saved with the predefined mapping. If you didn't select a predefined mapping, then the example values are taken from the first data row in the source file selected in the first step of the Import Activity definition.
Ignore	Select this option if you don't want to import the source file data in that column.

The following table outlines the target columns.

Target Column	Description
Object	The group of import objects that represent the components of the business object being imported.
Attribute	The attribute name that represents the corresponding interface table column for the object.

Saving the Import Mapping

The mapping between source file information and target attributes is saved as a reusable mapping when the import activity is saved, using the import activity name and date to derive a mapping name. If you have selected a predefined mapping, then the modifications made in the Import Activity to an unlocked mapping will update and save the import activity to the



predefined mapping. If the predefined mapping is locked, then a modified mapping will be saved as a new mapping. To specify a mapping name for new mappings, select the **Save As** option from the Map Fields **Actions** menu.

Constant Values

Constant values provide a way to specify a value for a target attribute that all imported objects will inherit. The value you're setting when you configure a constant value is at the record level. For example, if a source file doesn't contain a column for business unit and all of the objects in the file belong to the same business unit, then enter a constant value for the object and business unit attribute. Each imported record will have the specified attribute set to the constant value. The Constant value will take precedence over any values mapped or ignored in the Map Fields section. This value will apply to all source file types.

Related Topics

- Exporting and Importing Data Between Oracle Sales Cloud Instances Using Automatic Mapping: Procedure
- · File-Based Import Mapping: Explained

File Import Activity Statuses: Explained

This topic explains the meaning of the different import activity statuses when you import data from a file using the Manage File Import Activities task.

The following table lists and describes the import activity statuses.

Status	Description	
Queued for import	The import request is queued for processing.	
Preparing data for import	The data is being staged to be imported.	
Importing data	The data is being validated and imported.	
Importing attachments	The attachments are stored in the file repository. This step is displayed only if the object being imported supports the import of file attachments.	
Completing import activity	The cleanup tasks, such as the generation of log files, are in progress.	
Completed	All records were processed and loaded into the application tables.	
Completed with errors	The import activity found errors in the data file that you must correct. You can view details about the errors by clicking the status link.	
Completed with warnings	The import activity found warnings (but no errors) in the data file. You can view details about the warnings by clicking the status link.	
Unsuccessful	The import activity encountered system error and the import is unsuccessful.	



Related Topics

• Importing Data from a File: Procedure

File-Based Data Import Objects: Explained

Importing Contracts Using File-Based Import: Explained

Often Oracle customers have existing business contracts and want to continue to use them as part of their Oracle Contracts terms library. This topic explains how to prepare and import contract data from an external data source into Oracle Applications using the File-Based Data Import feature.

A contract is a business object that is used to capture the terms and conditions of a legally binding or valid agreement between two or more entities in which there is an offer and an acceptance of that offer. To create contracts in Oracle Contracts, you can either enter your contract information directly using the **Create Contracts** task in the Contracts work area, or you can import legacy contracts using the Enterprise Contracts: Define File-Based Data Import tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Consider the following when importing data for this business object:

- How does your legacy or source application represent the contract compared to how Oracle Contracts represent the same data?
- Do you have to configure values in Oracle Contracts to map to your data values?
- Do you need to customize Oracle Contracts to capture additional attributes that are critical to the way you do your business?
- What import features are available for importing your business object?
- How do you verify your imported data?

Comparing Business Object Structures

You must understand how your contract data corresponds with the data in Oracle Fusion Applications to map your legacy data to the data needed by Oracle Applications. First, you must understand how Oracle Enterprise Contracts represent the structure of the data for a contract.

In Oracle Enterprise Contracts, one table stores the contract definition or header information and another table optionally stores line details for that contract. A contract line is an entitlement to a specific valuable consideration with its own terms and conditions, which businesses offer to their customers as part of a contract. Zero, one, or many contract lines can be associated with any given contract.

Import Objects for the Contract

To facilitate the import of contracts, Oracle Enterprise Contracts incorporate the structure of the contract into import objects. The import object for the contract is Contract.

Comparing Business Object Data

Each import object is a collection of attributes that help to map your data to the Oracle Applications data and to support one-to-many relationships between the structural components that make up the contract.

A good understanding of the attribute details of the import objects is critical to preparing your import data. Details about the Oracle Applications attributes are available in reference files that contain descriptions, logic used to choose default values, and validation information for each of the Oracle Enterprise Contracts attributes. The validation information includes the navigation to the task where you can define values in Oracle Applications. For example, if you have values in your data that



correspond to a choice list in the application, then the validation information for that attribute provides the task name in the Setup and Maintenance work area where you can define your values. For additional information, including a list of reference file names and locations that you need to complete this task, see the table in the help topic "Contract Import Objects: How They Work Together."

Note: You can use the keywords importing contracts to search for related topics in Applications Help.

Extensible Attributes

If you must extend the Oracle Enterprise Contracts object to import your legacy or source data, you can use the available descriptive flexfield attributes. The corresponding import object is updated with the extensible attributes, which can then be mapped to your source file data.

You can use the same source file to import both extensible custom attributes and the standard import object attributes.

Importing Contracts Using File-Based Data Import

For the contract business object, you must use the File-Based Data Import feature. You prepare XML or text source data files in a form that is suitable for file-based import. The file-based import process reads the data included in your source file, populates the interface tables according to your mapping, and imports the data into the application destination tables.

The Define File-Based Data Import Setup and Maintenance task list includes the tasks required to configure the import objects, to create source file mappings, and to schedule the import activities. You submit file-based import activities for each import object. For example, when creating a new contract, you import the Contract object.

To access and submit import activities for contracts, the user must have the generic Customer Relationship Management Application Administrator role, or the user's job role must include the following privileges:

- Run File Import Scheduler (functional security privilege)
- View Contract Import Data (data security privilege)

Either add these privileges to a job role for which you want to enable Contract import support, or use one of the following prepackaged job roles, which include these privileges:

- ORA OKC CUSTOMER CONTRACT ADMINISTRATOR JOB
- ORA OKC SUPPLIER CONTRACT MANAGER JOB
- ORA_OKC_ENTERPRISE_CONTRACT_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB
- ORA_OKC_SUPPLIER_CONTRACT_ADMINISTRATOR_JOB
- ORA_OKC_CUSTOMER_CONTRACT_TEAM_MEMBER_ABSTRACT
- ORA_OKC_ENTERPRISE_CONTRACT_TEAM_MEMBER_ABSTRACT
- ORA_OKC_SUPPLIER_CONTRACT_TEAM_MEMBER_ABSTRACT
- ORA OKC ENTERPRISE CONTRACT MANAGER JOB
- ORA_OKC_CUSTOMER_CONTRACT_MANAGER_JOB

Verifying Your Imported Data

The File-Based Data Import application provides activity reports, which can be used to verify imported data. Users with the Contract File Import Duty role or the Contract Import from File Setup Duty role can also navigate to the Contracts work area to view the imported contracts.

Related Topics

Getting Started with File-Based Import: Documentation Overview



Contract Import Objects: How They Work Together

You use the Contract import object to import your contract by submitting a file-based import activity. This topic describes the Contract import object. This topic introduces the following:

- Target import object concepts
- Target objects for the Contract import object
- Target import object attributes
- Target object attribute reference guide files

Target Import Objects

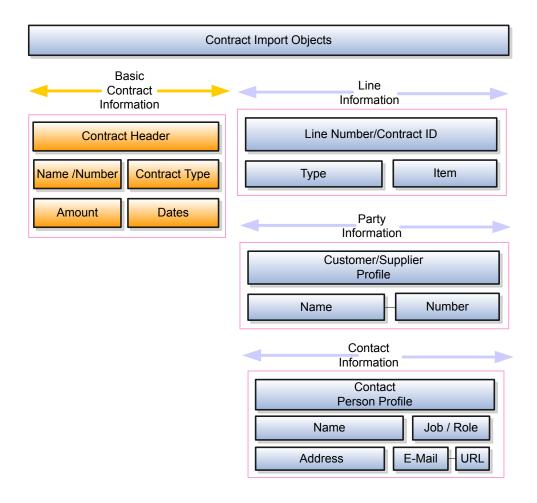
The Contract import object is used to import basic contract information and party information about the customer or supplier, the contract organization and party contacts. The Contract target import object organizes the individual attributes of the contract and party information. To map the source data in your import file to the target attributes in Oracle Applications, you must understand the target object and the attributes that are included in the target object.

Contract Target Import Objects

The target import object in the Contract import object usually contains information about the contract and information about the parties. The party information can include the customer or supplier organization, a person who is a consumer or vendor



and a person who is a contact of the customer or supplier. The following figure shows the information that forms the common Contract import objects and the familiar names for them.



A single contract includes specific information about the products that are to be exchanged between the customer or supplier and the contract-owning organization. The contract can include one or more goods or services. The Contract target object includes the attributes that are required to import this information. If the customer or supplier is an organization and an existing party, then you can associate the customer or supplier with the contract by using the Contract target object.

Target Import Object Attributes

You must compare the attributes that you want to import with the target object attributes that are available and with their valid values. To evaluate your source data and Oracle Sales Cloud attributes for mapping and validation, you use a reference file. See the File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud guide available on the Oracle Sales Cloud Help Center (see Related Topics or docs.oracle.com). In the File Based Data Imports chapter, see the topic for your import object of interest, which includes links to reference files for target import objects. A reference guide file includes attribute descriptions, default values, and validations performed by the import process. Review the validation for each attribute to determine whether there are functional prerequisites or prerequisite setup tasks that are required.

To import your source file data, you define a mapping between your source file data and the combination of the target object and target object attribute. You can predefine and manage import mappings using the File-Based Import Mapping task, or



you can define the mapping when you define the import activity using the File-Based Import Activity task. Both tasks are available in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Target Import Objects Attributes Resources

To access the reference guide file for the contract target import object, see the File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud guide available on the Oracle Sales Cloud Help Center (docs.oracle.com).

The following table lists the reference guide file that is available from the documentation for the Contract File-Based Data Import asset.

Target Import Object	Description	Attribute Reference File Name
Contract	Contract and party information	OKC_IMP_CONTRACT_HEADERS_ Reference

Related Topics

- Getting Started with File-Based Import: Documentation Overview
- File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud

File-Based Import and Export Overview

File-Based Data Import and Export: Overview

You can use file-based data import and export in Oracle Sales Cloud to import and export a wide range of application data. For example, you can use the file-based data export feature to export object data so that you can then import it into another Oracle Sales Cloud instance. And, for example, you can import records for Sales Cloud objects into the applications so that you don't have to create the records in the UI.

Most of the Sales Cloud business objects are import and export candidates, including:

- Accounts
- Addresses
- Appointments
- Classification codes
- Click-to-dial agents
- Consumers
- Contacts
- Contracts
- Country structures
- Customer hierarchies
- Employee resources



- Geographies
- Households
- Legal entities
- Marketing campaigns and responses
- Leads
- Notes
- Opportunities
- Partners
- Promotions
- Product groups
- Quotas
- Source system references
- Territories
- Tasks
- Users

Note that you can also import attachments for several Sales Cloud objects. For more information, see the Oracle Sales Cloud - Understanding File-Based Data Import and Export guide.

Related Topics

• Oracle Sales Cloud - Understanding File-Based Data Import and Export guide

File-Based Data Import: Highlights

You can import application data from external sources into the Oracle Sales Cloud database by using the Define File-Based Data Import group of tasks available from the Setup and Maintenance work area. The primary source of documentation on file-based data import is the File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud guide available on the Oracle Sales Cloud Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com/cloud/latest/salescs_gs/docs.htm).

Oracle Sales Cloud File-Based Data Import Guide

The Oracle Sales Cloud File-Based Data Import Guide is a collection of topics that helps you in using file-based data import by providing:

- High-level information about the file-based data import process, architecture, and tools
- Detailed information for importing specific objects and their related objects
- Guidance on importing a minimal set of fields for specific objects

Related Topics

- Customer Data Management Cloud Using Customer Data Management
- Sales Cloud Understanding File-Based Data Import and Export



File-Based Data Import: How It Works

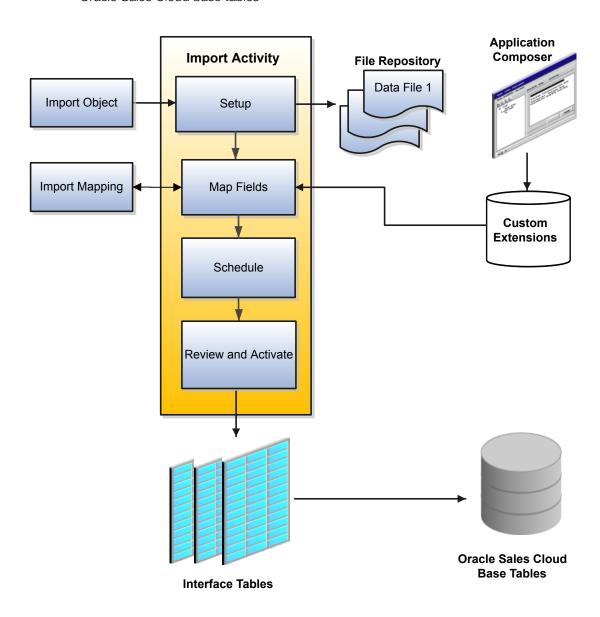
The Define File-Based Data Import group of tasks relies on integration with different Oracle Sales Cloud and architecture components, such as interface tables and application base tables. This topic provides an overview of these components to help you understand the import process and the different import activity statuses.

The following figure provides an overview of the major application components used when you import data from a file. These components include

- Import object
- Import mapping
- Import activity
- File repository
- Application Composer
- Interface tables



Oracle Sales Cloud base tables



Import Objects, Import Mapping, and Import Activity

The import objects you select when you create an import activity are provided by Oracle. They are managed using the Manage File Import Objects task.

Note: Avoid concurrent submission of File-Based Data Import jobs for the same import object. Concurrent submission of multiple import jobs with same content results in creation of duplicate object records.

When you create an import activity, you must specify a mapping of the fields in your file to the attributes of the import object. You can create the mapping while creating an import activity or separately using the Manage File Import Mappings task. The mapping is stored and managed as a separate object.



File Repository

The text or XML data file you upload for import is stored in a file repository so that it is available for import processing when you schedule an import activity. Any attachments you upload are stored in the same repository.

Application Composer and Custom Extensions

When you create additional attributes for import using Application Composer, these extensions are stored in a separate repository and are available when you generate import and export artifacts in composer.

Interface Tables

The import activity populates the application interface tables with your data.

Oracle Sales Cloud Base Tables

The import activity loads your data into Oracle Sales Cloud base tables to complete the import.

Related Topics

• Importing Data from a File: Procedure

Using Predefined Templates to Import Data Through File-Based Data Import

This topic describes how to use predefined templates to import data using file-based data import. To import data using the predefined templates, you must:

- Download templates you can use for import
- Understand the import templates
- Adapt the import templates to your needs

Downloading Templates You Can Use for Import

Oracle Sales Cloud provides templates to help you import data using File-Based Data Import tool. The templates are spreadsheets that include the commonly used fields, in addition to the required. Each import object could have one or more templates associated with it. The below table lists the objects and the templates for the object.

Import Object	Template	Description
Account	Data Cloud Account Import - Advanced	Predefined mapping to import files generated from Data Cloud and Insight service into Oracle Sales Cloud for account enrichment.
	Account Create and Update Predefined Mapping	This mapping lets the user create or update accounts with the most basic information.
	Quick Create Account Predefined Mapping	Predefined mapping to create Accounts with basic information. This mapping cannot be used to update any attribute other than those mapped to the Account object.



Import Object	Template	Description
	Account Address Create and Update Predefined Mapping	This mapping lets the user create or update multiple addresses for existing accounts.
	Account Relationship Create and Update Predefined Mapping	This mapping lets users to associate an account with one or multiple contacts.
Activity	Activity Predefined Mapping - Import Task	Template to import activity predefined mapping (Import Task)
	Activity Predefined Mapping - Import Appointment	Template to import activity predefined mapping (Import Appointment)
Contact	Data Cloud Contact Import - Advanced	Predefined mapping to import files generated from Data Cloud and Insight service into Oracle Sales Cloud for contact enrichment.
	Contact Create and Update Predefined Mapping	This mapping lets the user create or update contacts with the most basic information. Additionally, this template can be used to associate individual contacts with existing accounts.
	Quick Create Contact Predefined Mapping	Predefined mapping to create Contacts with basic information. This mapping cannot be used to update any attribute other than the ones mapped to the Contact object. Use Original System and Original System Reference fields to establish the relationship between Contacts and Accounts.
Contract	Hierarchical Predefined Mapping-Contract Header, Parties and Contacts	Template to map hierarchical objects
	Contract Predefined Mapping-Contract Header, Primary Party and Contacts	Template to map contract objects
Customer Sales Team	Sales Account Resource Team Seeded Mapping	Template to import sales account resource team
Customer hierarchy	Customer Hierarchy Create Predefined Mapping	This template is used to create a customer hierarchy. Customers who are part of this hierarchy should be created first using the "Create or update account" template.
Customer hierarchy member	Customer Hierarchy Member Create Predefined Mapping	This template can be used to add customers (nodes) to an existing customer hierarchy (tree).
Employee Resource	Employee Resource Seeded Mapping - Comprehensive	Template to import Employee Resource with role, resource organization and hierarchy information



Import Object	Template	Description
Lead	Lead Predefined Mapping Import Leads	Template to import Leads with contact and company information.
	Lead Predefined Mapping - Import Leads with Qualification information	Template to import Leads with contact and qualification information.
Note	Note Predefined Mapping - Default required Set with identifiers	Template to import Note -Default required Set with identifiers
	Note Predefined Mapping - Default required Set with original system reference	Template to import Note - Default required Set with original system reference
Opportunity	Opportunity Predefined Mapping - Opportunity Resource	Template to import Opportunity Resource
	Opportunity Predefined Mapping - All related objects	Template to import Opportunity with all related objects.
	Opportunity Predefined Mapping - Opportunity Resource Revenue	Template to import Opportunity Resource and Revenue.
Partner	Oracle Fusion Hierarchical File Import Map for Partner - Includes Child objects	Template to import Partners including child objects.
	Oracle Fusion Hierarchical File Import Map for Partner	Template to hierarchically import partners with minimum attributes
	Oracle Fusion File Import Map for Partner Update	Template to import updates to partners
	Oracle Fusion File Import Map for Partner	Template to import partners with minimum attributes
Partner Contact	Oracle Fusion File Import Map for Partner Contacts	Template to import partner contacts
Partner Program Enrollments	Oracle Fusion File Import Map for Enrollment Update	Template to import updates to enrollment
	Oracle Fusion File Import Map for Enrollment	Template to import enrollments with minimum attributes
Product Group	Product Group Predefined Mapping - Product Group Header and Child Entities	Template to import product groups, items related to product groups and product group relationships used to define a hierarchy.
Quota	Quota Predefined Mapping - Territory and Resource Quotas	Template to import Territory and Resource Quotas



Import Object	Template	Description
Sales Promotion	Sales Promotion Predefined Mapping - Header and Coupons	Template to import promotions and coupons associated with promotions.
Territory	Territory Import Seeded Map	Template to import territory
Territory Geographies	Territory Geographies Import Mapping	Template to migration import territory geographies
	Territory Geographies Incremental Import Mapping	Template to import territory geographies incrementally

To download an import template:

- 1. Navigate to the **Setup and Maintenance** work area and search for the Manage File Import Mappings task.
- 2. Click the Go to Task icon
- 3. In the **Manage File Import Mappings** page, select the object for which you need the template (such as Account) from the Object drop-down list.
- 4. Select the **Seeded** check box.
- 5. Click Search.
- 6. Click the template you want to download from the search results. The **Edit Import Mapping** page is displayed.
- 7. In the Edit Import Mapping page, click Download Template.
- 8. Save the .csv file to a location on your desktop.

Understanding the Import Templates

You must understand the columns in the import templates to populate the templates with the correct data. To update existing records, your source file must include the attributes that enable the import process to identify these records. These values are source system and source system reference value combination, Oracle Sales Cloud internal ID, or public unique identifiers, such as business keys or external IDs. When the source of your data isn't an external system and you don't intend to regularly update the data, you don't need the source system information.

Note: It is a best practice recommendation to include the source system information as requirements change over time.

Copying and Modifying a predefined Mapping

The template file includes a header row with columns that map to the attributes for the objects. You can use the mapping that is used to download the template and also to map columns to attributes during import. The columns are arranged in the same order as the mapping in Oracle Sales Cloud. You can add additional attributes to the file by appending them after the last column. In case you add additional attributes, you must copy and modify the predefined mapping to create a custom mapping that includes these additional attributes. You can use the following steps to copy and modify a predefined mapping:

- 1. Navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area and search for the Manage File Import Mappings task.
- 2. Click the Go to Task icon
- 3. In the Manage File Import Mappings page, select the object for which you need the template (such as Account) from the Object drop-down list.
- 4. Select the **Seeded** check box. Click **Search**.
- 5. Click the template you want to copy or modify from the search results. The Edit Import Mapping page is displayed.
- 6. In the Edit Import Mapping page, click Copy Mapping.



- 7. The target object attributes can be edited. You can also add attributes to the object by clicking Create icon.
- 8. click **Save** to save the modified template file.

Adapting the Import Templates

You may want to add additional attributes to your files to import additional information for your import data. You can review all available attributes for your import object in a reference file located in File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud guide available on the Oracle Sales Cloud Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com/cloud/latest/salescs_gs/docs.htm). Review the reference file to explore other attributes that are available for import and the possible prerequisite steps for those attributes.

The reference file includes the following information:

- All attributes available for your import object.
- The attribute descriptions, including the user interface display name for the attribute if the attribute is displayed on the user interface.
- The data type, length, and validation logic, including the task or work area where you can view or define valid values before importing data.
- The logic for default values, if values are not provided in your source file.

To view the reference file, see the File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud guide available on the Oracle Sales Cloud Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com/cloud/latest/salescs_gs/docs.htm).

Selecting the Template for Import Process

You can select the template that you downloaded during the import process, using the following steps:

- 1. Navigate to the **Setup and Maintenance** work area and search for the Manage File Import Activities task.
- 2. Click the Go to Task icon
- 3. On the Manage Import Activities page, click the Create icon.
- 4. On the **Create Import Activity** page, provide the import name and object to import. Provide the file type, select **Header row included** and **Seeded** check boxes.
- 5. On the Import Mapping drop-down list, select one of the predefined templates
- 6. Click **Next** to view the mapping and schedule the activation of import process.

File-Based Data Import FAQ

What determines the list of File-Based Data Import objects displayed?

A single import object can have multiple associated components that are considered objects by themselves. Whether or not an associated object can be grouped as a component of another object for the purpose of file import is determined by the complexity of the object structure and how the object is stored in the data model. Oracle Sales Cloud provides import objects predefined to meet the file processing import requirements. Consequently, in some cases, more than one source file may be required to capture all associated components of an object.

What happens if I inactivate an Import Activity?

The Import Activity will not stop the currently running process. However, it will cause the next scheduled process plus any future repeating file import activities not to start. You can always activate the process at a later stage.

What happens if I add a marketing list in the Import Activity definition?

File-based data import enables you to record consumers and organization contacts in a marketing list when importing consumer, lead, and response import objects. Select an existing list or create a new one. A marketing list is assigned the list



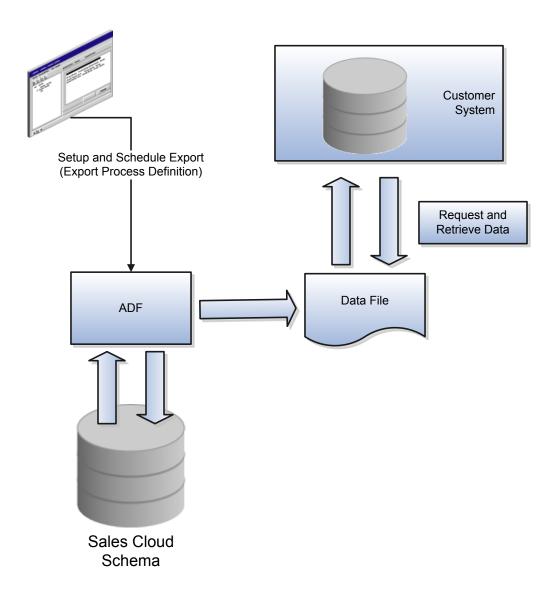
type value of Imported if created while defining an import activity. After the objects are imported successfully, the consumers and contacts are added as members of the marketing list.

Bulk Export: Overview

You can extract large volumes of data from Oracle Sales Cloud objects using bulk export. You can either extract a full set of records for an object, or perform incremental extracts. For example, you can extract complete set of account data or extract updated set of records every week. Bulk export creates comma separated or tab delimited files, which are attached to the export process.



The following figure depicts the process of selecting data for export, scheduling and delivering the data file.



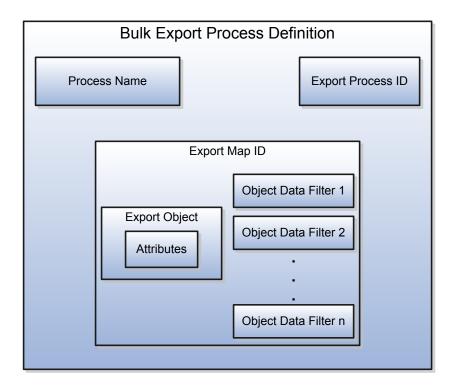
Bulk Export Process Components: How They Work Together

Bulk export makes exporting data easier by leveraging the export maps. To export files using bulk export, you create a process definition, map files for full and incremental extract processes, and then schedule the export process.



Bulk Export Process Components

The following figure shows the bulk export process components.



Bulk export process includes three components:

- Process name: A name for the export process that lets you easily refer the export process rather than using the machine generated ID such as 100000019897192.
- Export process ID: A unique, system generated identifier for the export process definition for the export process. The process Id ties the export map with its export objects, filters, and the export schedule.
- Export map ID: A unique identifier for the export map. You can reuse the export map in different process definitions. For example, you create a process definition to export all the data from the Customer export object. You can then reuse that export map and apply a new filter on the data to create an incremental export, such as data accrued since the last export date.

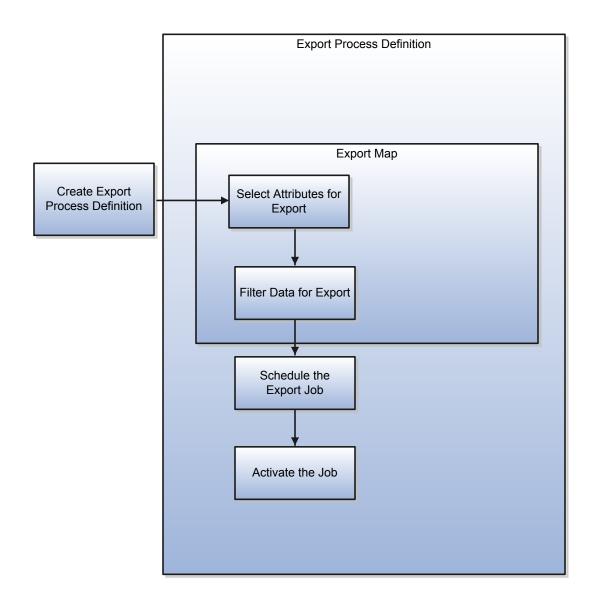
Defining Bulk Export Process: Procedure

You can extract large volumes of data from Oracle Sales Cloud objects using bulk export. You can either extract full set or records for an object, or perform incremental extracts. Bulk export creates comma separated or tab delimited files, which are attached to the export process after export.

The following image depicts the bulk export process definition:



The Bulk Export Process Definition is made up of the Export Map and the processing schedule. See the steps below.



Defining the Bulk Export Process

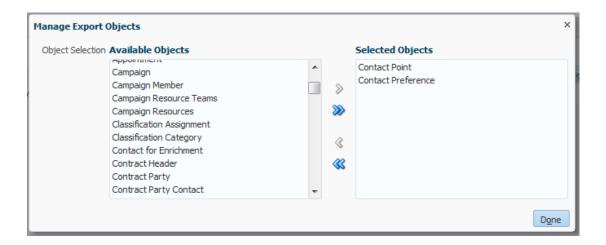
After defining the mapping files, you create an export process to export an object's data using the mapping files created. To define a bulk export process:

- 1. Navigate to the Schedule Export Processes task from Setup and Maintenance.
- 2. Select **Create** from Actions menu to view the Create Export Process Definition: Enter Basic Information page.
- 3. Enter basic information about the export process, such as name and export map, in the page.
- 4. Click **Next** to view the Create Export Process Definition: Configure Export Objects page.

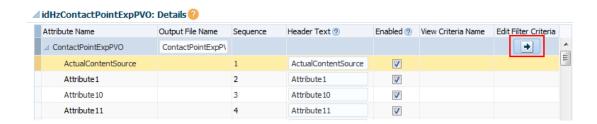


In this page, you define the export object you want to export and the mapping you want use for the export process.

- 5. Optionally, you can enter a name for the mapping if you would like to reuse this mapping for other export processes. An object's mapping file determines what data is exported every time an object is exported. You can have multiple mapping files for an export object for various object details you want to export.
 - Note: The export mapping is optional. You don't need to select an existing mapping to perform an export.
- 6. Select Create from Actions menu to view the Manage Export Objects dialog box.
- 7. Select the objects you want to export and click **Done**.



- 8. Define the attributes you want to export in the Detail region of the page. You can define:
 - Attributes you want to export. Select Enabled for the attributes you want to export.
 - Header text of the attributes. Edit the header text in the Header text column. This value is used as the column header in the files generated by the export process
- 9. Define the filters to determine the data you want to export by clicking on the Edit Filter Criteria button.



For the incremental extracts, you can create filters using time stamps to determine which rows to export.

10. Click Next to view Create Export Process Definition: Create Schedule page.



- **11.** Select if you want to run the export process immediately or at a later time. Two types of scheduled exports are supported:
 - a. Incremental Export
 - **b.** Normal Export
- 12. Click Next to view the Create Export Process Definition: Review page.
- 13. Review the export process details, and click on Activate.

After each export process executes and completes, a comma or tab delimited data file is created and stored as an attachment in the export process.

You can also use web services to schedule and start an export process. In this case, you can use the getAttachment() web service to download the data file.

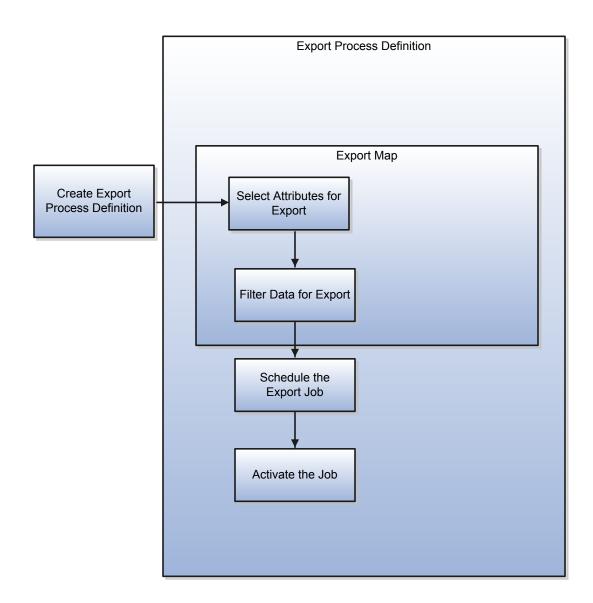
Defining Bulk Export Process: Procedure

You can extract large volumes of data from Oracle Sales Cloud objects using bulk export. You can either extract full set or records for an object, or perform incremental extracts. Bulk export creates comma separated or tab delimited files, which are attached to the export process after export.

The following image depicts the bulk export process definition:



The Bulk Export Process Definition is made up of the Export Map and the processing schedule. See the steps below.



Defining the Bulk Export Process

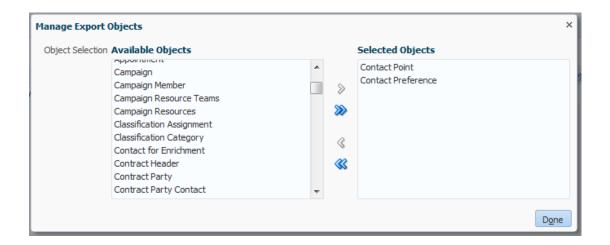
After defining the mapping files, you create an export process to export an object's data using the mapping files created. To define a bulk export process:

- 1. Navigate to the Schedule Export Processes task from Setup and Maintenance.
- 2. Select **Create** from Actions menu to view the Create Export Process Definition: Enter Basic Information page.
- 3. Enter basic information about the export process, such as name and export map, in the page.
- 4. Click **Next** to view the Create Export Process Definition: Configure Export Objects page.

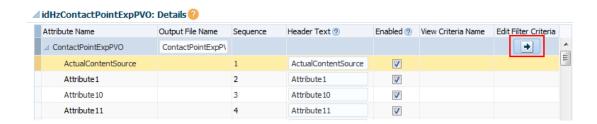


In this page, you define the export object you want to export and the mapping you want use for the export process.

- 5. Optionally, you can enter a name for the mapping if you would like to reuse this mapping for other export processes. An object's mapping file determines what data is exported every time an object is exported. You can have multiple mapping files for an export object for various object details you want to export.
 - Note: The export mapping is optional. You don't need to select an existing mapping to perform an export.
- 6. Select Create from Actions menu to view the Manage Export Objects dialog box.
- 7. Select the objects you want to export and click **Done**.



- 8. Define the attributes you want to export in the Detail region of the page. You can define:
 - Attributes you want to export. Select Enabled for the attributes you want to export.
 - Header text of the attributes. Edit the header text in the Header text column. This value is used as the column header in the files generated by the export process
- 9. Define the filters to determine the data you want to export by clicking on the Edit Filter Criteria button.



For the incremental extracts, you can create filters using time stamps to determine which rows to export.

10. Click Next to view Create Export Process Definition: Create Schedule page.



- **11.** Select if you want to run the export process immediately or at a later time. Two types of scheduled exports are supported:
 - a. Incremental Export
 - **b.** Normal Export
- 12. Click Next to view the Create Export Process Definition: Review page.
- 13. Review the export process details, and click on Activate.

After each export process executes and completes, a comma or tab delimited data file is created and stored as an attachment in the export process.

You can also use web services to schedule and start an export process. In this case, you can use the getAttachment() web service to download the data file.

Data Export FAQ

How can I determine which data objects to select for successful export?

Review the requirements for the data to be exported and determine the source view objects that hold the attributes you want.

How can I create a subset of data for export?

Full sets of data are not always required for export. To create a subset of data, use filter criteria to determine the time frame or scope of data, based on values of the attributes. To find activities for a specific date range, for example 1/1/11 through 3/31/11, navigate to the **Export Objects Detail** Sub Page and click the filter icon. Fill in the filter criteria dialog for the project start dates to select the data to be exported. You run the export by navigating to the **Setup and Maintenance** menu, selecting **Manage Task Lists and Tasks**. Then, search for **Schedule Export Processes** and click the **Go to Task** icon on the line for this task.

How can I see my exported data?

You can look on the Schedule Export Processes, Overview page to see the History subpage. The column Exported Data File shows a hyperlink to your output file This file will be a comma separated variable or a tab delimited file. Click that link to open the file and see the exported data.

What happens if you change the sequence number or header text in an exported data file?

Changing the sequence number changes the order of the attributes in the exported data file. Changing the header text enables you to give a more intuitive meaning to the attribute and the associated data.

What happens if I need data from multiple export view objects?

Select as many view objects as required for the export process. Choose the individual attributes required from each export object.



13 Understanding Customization, Extensibility, and Integration

Sales Cloud Customization, Extensibility, and Integration: Overview

Oracle Sales Cloud offers several customization and extensibility options for its services, components, and modules. You can import and export data and integrate the service with other products and modules.

Customization, extensibility, and integration options include:

- Customize objects, user interfaces (UIs), and the Navigator menu.
- Customize online help.
- Access a rich set of subject areas around which to build customized reports.
- Configure reporting dashboards by adding new reports or changing the layout.
- Create custom copy maps to map fields or add information between copied business objects.
- Configure security components.
- Use web services to integrate and extend the services.
- Export data, modify it, and then import it back into the services.
- Integrate with other applications to extend the functionality.

For information on customizing online help, see the Oracle Sales Cloud - Customizing Sales guide.

Customizing Objects, Uls, and the Navigator

Use Application Composer to customize and extend Oracle Sales Cloud. For example, create a new object and related fields, then create new desktop pages where that object and its fields are exposed to users.

The following are some ways that you can customize objects, the UI, and the Navigator.

- Use Page Composer to edit the UI at run time. For example, show and hide regions, fields, and tables. Change the order of regions, or change a dashboard page layout.
- In the simplified UI, determine which icons to display across the top of the page (the area known as the springboard), as well as the welcome message or announcement.
- Add and remove links from the Navigator menu.
- Change the default text in the UI, for example, by replacing a term with another term throughout the applications.

For more information, see these guides:

- Oracle Sales Cloud Customizing Sales
- Oracle Applications Cloud Customizing the Applications for Functional Administrators



Customizing Reports and Dashboards

Oracle Sales Cloud comes predefined with reports that give you instant data about your customers, leads, opportunities, forecasts, and sales revenue. If the supplied reports do not meet all of your business needs, you can use Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Composer to create your own reports against a rich variety of subject areas.

Both the desktop and simplified UIs feature reporting dashboards that you can customize, such as changing the layout and adding custom reports. For more information, see these guides:

- Oracle Sales Cloud Creating and Administering Analytics
- Oracle Sales Cloud Customizing Sales

Creating Custom Copy Maps

Copy maps are default mappings of fields between objects. For example, when you convert a lead to an opportunity, the application uses the copy map defined for the Lead and Opportunity objects to determine what to name the leads fields that are carried over to the newly created opportunity. Using Oracle Application Composer, you can create custom copy maps for several Sales Cloud business objects, thus allowing you to control the mapping.

Following are some use cases:

- Create custom maps to change the default mapping between fields when:
 - Leads and opportunities are copied from responses
 - Opportunities are created from leads
 - Opportunities are created from partner deal registrations
- Use Groovy scripting to include information about the lead on a new opportunity converted from a lead.

For more information, see the Oracle Sales Cloud Marketing Extensibility chapter in the Oracle Sales Cloud - Customizing Sales guide.

Extending Applications Using Web Services

You can use web services available to Oracle Sales Cloud to integrate with your external applications. Example extensions include:

- Integrate Oracle Sales Cloud with back-office applications
- Create customized Web-based portal applications that access Oracle Sales Cloud through a Web services interface.

For more information, see the article Oracle Fusion Sales Cloud Web Services (available on My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1354841.1).

Configuring Security Components

If the predefined security configuration doesn't meet your business needs, then you can make changes. For example, the predefined Sales Representative job role includes sales forecasting duties. If some business groups in your organization have the sales managers perform forecasting tasks instead of the sales representatives, then you can create a custom Sales Representative role without those duties. Alternatively, if a predefined job role is too narrowly defined, then you can create a job role with a greater range of duties than its predefined equivalent. See the Oracle Sales Cloud - Securing Oracle Sales Cloud guide for more information.



Exporting and Importing Data

You can import data into or export data out of Oracle Sales Cloud for various purposes. For example, you may want to:

- Export territory data, modify it offline, and reimport it.
- Import customers from a legacy system so you can use the object records in Oracle Sales Cloud.
- Move functional setup data from one instance into another.
- Create Microsoft Excel spreadsheets and load the data into the services.

See the following guides for more information:

- Oracle Applications Cloud Using Functional Setup Manager
- Oracle Applications Cloud Using Common Features

You can find an introduction to Bulk Export and File-Based Import and Export in the chapter, Import and Export, in this guide. Get more information on territory and quota export and import in this guide, in the Setting Up Territories and Understanding Sales Quotas chapters.

Integrating with Other Products

For additional functionality, you can integrate Oracle Sales Cloud with other products, including, Oracle E-Business Suite, JD Edwards EnterpriseOne, Siebel CRM, Oracle Marketing Cloud, and Oracle Configure, Price, and Quote (CPQ) Cloud. For more information on these integrations, see the article Oracle Sales Cloud Integration Documentation (available on My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1962226.1).

Related Topics

- My Oracle Support
- Understanding Default Navigation Components
- Defining Settings for Home and Navigation: Explained
- Oracle Help Center

Understanding Web Services

Web Services: Overview

Use web services to integrate web-based applications into your Oracle Applications Cloud. Web services expose business objects and processes to other applications through the use of open standards-based technologies.

The web services support development environments and clients that comply with the following open standards:

- Extensible Markup Language (XML)
- Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP)
- Business Process Execution Language (BPEL)



- Web Services Description Language (WSDL)
- XML schema definitions (XSD)

Oracle Applications Cloud includes two types of web services:

- Application Development Framework (ADF) services
- Composite services

The following table describes the two types.

Web Service Type	Description
ADF services	ADF services usually represent business objects, such as employees or purchase orders. ADF services typically expose standard operations, such as create, update, and delete. However, for locally-persisted objects, ADF services are not limited to these operations.
	Examples of ADF services include:
	 Worker.changeHireDate - a service that updates the hire date of the worker business object.
	 ProjectTask.createTask - a service that adds a task to the project task business object.
Composite services	Composite services usually represent end-to-end business process flows that act on business events produced by the ADF services. Composite services orchestrate multiple object-based services, rules services, and human workflows. Examples of composite services include:
	 ProjectStatusChangeApproval.process - a service that accepts the change in project status.
	 ScheduleOrchestrationOrderFulfillmentLineService.scheduleOrders - a service that schedules resources used to fulfill an order.

For more information about web services, see the SOAP Web Services guide for your cloud services.

Oracle Sales Cloud Web Services Documentation: Overview

This topic provides an overview of the currently available Web services documentation. It provides references to the documents that provide information about the SOAP and RESTful Web services, including information on operations, parameters, attributes, and use cases and sample payloads.

Web Service Documentation Available from My Oracle Support

- Simplified SOAP Web Services Documentation: Oracle Sales Cloud provides several simplified SOAP Web services such as Account, Contact, Household, Relationship, and Address services. Simplified SOAP Web service documentation provides details on invoking these SOAP Web services. It also provides details on the Service Data Objects (SDOs), operations, attributes, use cases, and payloads for these services. For more information, see the document Oracle Sales Cloud: Using Simplified SOAP Web Services (MOS Doc ID 1938666.1) on My Oracle Support at https://support.oracle.com.
- RESTful Web Service Documentation: Oracle Sales Cloud comes with several RESTful Web services such as the
 Account, Contact, and Household services. The RESTful Web services documentation provides an introduction to
 using these Web services, and details on how to invoke them. It also includes information on the supported child
 resources, methods, parameters, and attributes for these Web services and use cases and sample payloads.



- Web Services Getting Started Documentation: This document provides an overview of Oracle Sales Cloud Web services application programming interface (API), and is intended to be a getting started guide for developers and system integrators. It provides consolidated information on using Oracle Sales Cloud Web services and covers Web services overview, tips on discovering Web services information on Oracle Enterprise Repository, sample payloads, and details on Web services for objects extended with the Oracle Application Composer. For more information, see the document Oracle Sales Cloud Web Services (MOS Doc ID 1354841.1) on My Oracle Support at https:// support.oracle.com.
- Import Web Services Documentation: Oracle Sales Cloud provides several Import Web services to perform import
 tasks of various complexities. You can use these Import Web services to import your custom data into Oracle Sales
 Cloud. You can use the Web services to import data from a text or an XML source file. You can use these Web
 services to create new records or to update records that already exist in the Oracle Sales Cloud database.

Web Service Documentation Available from the Oracle Help Center

- SOAP Web Services for Common Features in Oracle Applications Cloud: This guide explains using Simple Object
 Access Protocol (SOAP) web services to integrate with or extend Oracle Applications Cloud. Through web services,
 you can integrate heterogeneous applications within the enterprise or expose business functions to Oracle Cloud
 partners and customers over the Internet.
- SOAP Web Services for Oracle Sales Cloud: This guide explains using Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP)
 web services to integrate with or extend Oracle Applications Cloud. Through web services, you can integrate
 heterogeneous applications within the enterprise or expose business functions to Oracle Cloud partners and
 customers over the Internet.

Related Topics

- Developer Connect: Overview
- Retrieving New Web Service Information: Worked Example

Import and Export Web Services: Explained

This topic explains the Web services that are available for implementing file-based data import and export.

Import Web Services

The following Web services are available for importing your custom data into Oracle Sales Cloud:

- File Import Activity Service (ImportPublicService): Service related to file-based import activity. This service enables submitting an import activity and monitoring its status.
- Metadata Public Service (MetadataPublicService): Service used to retrieve the object descriptions. This service provides the getObjectDefinitions method that retrieves the object descriptions.

For more information on using import Web services in Oracle Sales Cloud, see the topic Using Web Services for File-Based Data Import.

Export Web Service

You can use the Bulk Export Service V2 (BulkExportService) to export your custom data from Oracle Sales Cloud. This service is used to extract data in a batch process. You can use one of the following ways to use the service:

Web Service proxy clients



- Business process execution language
- Connections architecture

For more information about using Bulk Export Service V2 (BulkExportService), see the topic Using Web Services for File-Based Data Export.

Related Topics

- Using Web Services for File-Based Data Export
- Using Web Services for File-Based Data Import
- · Web Service Operations Supported by the Bulk Export Service: Explained
- Using Web Services Reference Information to Import Data

Different Ways of Creating a Contract: Points to Consider

You can create a contract by duplicating an existing contract or by creating an entirely new one either with or without the Contract Wizard. You can also create a contract from a contract template or using file-based import or web services. This topic outlines when you should use each method.

Duplicating an Existing Contract

To create a contract that is similar to an existing contract, select the **Duplicate** action either from within an existing contract or from the contract search page. When you duplicate an existing contract, you can select what to copy to the new contract.

Creating a Contract Using the Contract Wizard

Select the **Create Contract in Wizard** task in the Contracts work area to use a quick and simple method for creating a contract without lines and without party information. You can later edit this to add additional details. With the Contract Wizard:

- You are guided through a set of steps to create contracts
- You are not required to run Contract Expert separately
- You are not required to preview any clauses that Contract Expert automatically inserts into the contract terms

Creating a Contract Without the Contract Wizard

Select the **Create Contract** task in the Contract work area to create complex contracts. Using this task you can:

- Add and edit parties and party contacts.
- Add and edit contract lines.
- Edit the contract terms.
- Export the contract terms for editing in Microsoft Word.
- Add notes and view contract history.
- Run Contract Expert, when required.
- Preview any clauses recommended by Contract Expert before they are inserted.
- Create and manage contract fulfillment lines in buy-intent or supplier contracts.
- View and enter contract risk management and projects billing information for sell-intent or customer contracts.



Create contracts of contract types with no contract terms.

Creating a Contract from a Contract Template

Select the Manage Contract Template task in the Contract work area and search for an active contract template. You can then open the template in edit mode or select the template in the search results area and click on the Create Contract from Template action menu item to create a contract quickly.

Using this method, you can create a contract for the default system date, or choose any other date as the start date of the contract. You can also choose to retain party and line information from the template, if available. If you enabled the contract type for terms, then the template inserts the latest terms from the Contract Terms Library. You can also create a contract for a different party, or one with retaining lines, billing information, associated projects and tasks, and notes. These contracts will be in Draft status.

Creating a Contract Using File-Based Import

For legacy contracts that you want to migrate to Oracle Fusion Applications:

- 1. Select the Enterprise Contracts: Define File-Based Data Import task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 2. Import a contract creating a new contract with header and party information but no contract lines. (Contract header information includes contract name and number, start and end dates, contract type, amount, and status)
- 3. Use the Define File-Based Data Import Setup and Maintenance task list to configure the import objects, to create source file mappings, and to schedule the import activities.

Creating a Contract Using Web Services

You can use Web services to create many contracts in one go in an integrated application such as partner management or projects.

Use the contractservice endpoint URL and select the createcontract operation and the required source, if HTML or XML. To create a contract in integrated applications, select and enter the following required parameters to be included in the message:

- Contract header information
- Party information,
- Amounts and currency
- Contract lines
- Bill and revenue plans
- Labor and non-labor rates and rate overrides
- Labor multipliers
- Job title and assignment details

Related Topics

- Authoring a Customer Contract: How It Works
- Authoring Contracts Using the Contract Wizard: How It Works
- What's the difference between authoring a contract with and without the Contract Wizard?
- Authoring a Procurement Contract: How It Works
- Importing Contracts Using File-Based Import: Explained



Configuring User Assistance

Setting Up Help: Overview

Applications Help works without you having to set anything up. You can do the optional setup, mainly if you want to customize help. Select the help features you want, perform tasks in the Define Help Configuration task list, and customize help.

Help Feature Choices

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, select help feature choices on the Features page when you configure your offerings. Feature choices determine:

- What's available in Applications Help
- What you can configure to set up help

The first feature choice for help is Local Installation of Help, and you must leave it selected. Other feature choices are:

- Access to Internet-Based Help Features
- Help Customization
- Custom Help Security

Define Help Configuration Task List

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use these tasks in the Define Help Configuration task list to configure Applications Help for all users:

- Set Help Options:
 - Determine if certain features of Applications Help are available to users.
 - Control how aspects of Applications Help work.
- Assign Help Text Administration Duty: Contact your security administrator to determine who can customize help.
- Manage Help Security Groups: Set up security to limit access to certain help files.

Help Customization

After you configure help, you can review the predefined help and see if you want to add or customize any content. You can also customize help text that appears on the page, for example hints.

Related Topics

- Features: Explained
- Help File Customization: Overview
- Customizing Help That Appears on the Page: Highlights
- Setting Up Access to Web Sites from Applications Help: Procedure



Setting Up Help Customization: Procedure

Users with the appropriate roles can customize predefined help or add their own files to help. To enable and set up help customization, do the following steps in the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the specified order.

Selecting Feature Choices

Perform these steps:

- 1. On the Features page for your offering, leave the Local Installation of Help feature choice selected.
- 2. Select the Help Customization feature choice.
- 3. Select the Custom Help Security feature choice if you want certain help files to be available only to a restricted set of users.
 - ▲ Caution: Don't select this feature choice if you don't have this requirement, because the feature can affect performance.
- 4. Save your work.

Setting Help Options

Perform these steps:

- 1. Open the Set Help Options task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 2. Optionally set options in these sections:
 - o Help Site Customization:
 - Determine how users can identify custom files in Applications Help.
 - Upload your own image to use as the background picture on the help home page. Select an image that's white along the entire left border, like you see in the default image.
 - Oracle User Productivity Kit: Add a link in the Navigator in Applications Help to your custom User Productivity Kit library.
 - **Privacy Statement:** Add a link to your own privacy statement. To see this link, users click their user name in the global area of Applications Help.
- 3. Save your work.

Providing Users Access to Help Customization

Only users with job roles containing the ATK_CUSTOMIZE_HELP_TOPICS_PRIV privilege can customize help. The Assign Help Text Administration Duty task is a reminder for you to follow up with your security administrator. Make sure that users who want to customize help have the access to do so.

Setting Up Help File Security

If you selected the Custom Help Security feature choice, then go to the Manage Help Security Groups task and select job roles to include in help security groups.

When you later customize a help file, you can select a group to determine which job roles have access to the file.

Related Topics

- Why can't I see certain sections on the Set Help Options page?
- When do I link to the Oracle User Productivity Kit library from Applications Help?



- Creating Help Security Groups: Worked Example
- Setting Up Access to Web Sites from Applications Help: Procedure

Who can add and manage custom help?

Users with the Customize Help Topics (ATK_CUSTOMIZE_HELP_TOPICS_PRIV) privilege can customize:

- · Help in Applications Help and help windows
- Pages in the Getting Started work area

This privilege is assigned by default to the administrators for product families. Your security administrator can define which users have job roles with this privilege.



14 Contracts Quick Setup Summary

Contracts Quick Setup: Overview

This chapter explores how to quickly set up Oracle Enterprise Contracts by configuring only those features that are required to have a functioning application. It is recommended that you follow the full install offering task list in Setup and Maintenance once you have a working application to insure that you are taking full advantage of all features.

Note: Due to differences in the sequence of common setup tasks in the Enterprise Contracts offering and the intent of this chapter, there may be some differences in the order that set up tasks are presented here.

Setting Up Enterprise Contracts

Setting Up Enterprise Contracts: Part 1

The following procedures are designed to summarize and explain, in four parts, how to set up Oracle Enterprise Contracts.

Here is a summary of the setup steps that you will need to perform for setting up buy and sell intent contracts without lines and partner program enrollment contracts.

- 1. Configure Enterprise Contracts and create an implementation project.
- **2.** Set up electronic signature.
- 3. Managing user statuses and user transitions
- 4. Set up business unit.
- 5. Define legal entities.
- 6. Define business units and assign business function and optionally assign ledger and legal entity.
- 7. Set up common CRM business unit profile option.
- 8. Define users.
- **9.** Set up approval groups and approval task configurations.
- 10. Enable contracts for use in Oracle Social Network.
- 11. Define document sequences.
- **12.** Define layout templates in BI publisher.
- 13. Configure contract management business functions.
- 14. Define customers, suppliers and their addresses and contacts.
- 15. Define party roles, contact roles, and role sources.
- **16.** Define contract line types.
- **17.** Define contract types.
- 18. Define contract lines descriptive flexfield.
- 19. Define contract terms library components.
- 20. Configure file-based import for Enterprise Contracts.
- 21. Configure scheduled processes

The following steps constitute part 1 of the set up procedure. The remaining steps are explained in part 2, part 3, and part 4 of the procedure, the links for which are provided below.



Configure Enterprise Contracts and Create an Implementation Project

To configure Enterprise Contracts and create an implementation project, proceed as follows:

- 1. Navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- For Enterprise Contracts use the Configure Offerings task to select Enable for Implementation and Select Feature Choices.
- 3. Enable the options you need in the Select Feature Choices page.
- 4. Use the Manage Implementation Projects task and then click **Create** to create a new project.
- 5. Enter your project name and click **Next**.
- 6. Select Include for Enterprise Contracts and click Save and Open Project.
- 7. Expand Enterprise Contracts in the Implementation Project page to be used in the following steps.

Set Up Electronic Signature

To set up an electronic signature, proceed as follows:

- 1. Find and open the Manage Contract Electronic Signature task in your implementation project.
- 2. Select DocuSign as the solution provider.
 - Note: You must have obtained a license from DocuSign and created an Admin account on the DocuSign website to proceed with the following steps.
- 3. Enter the user ID and password of the DocuSign admin user and the appropriate DocuSign endpoint URL. The account ID is the API account ID mentioned on the DocuSign website.
- 4. Click Validate and when the validation status changes to Complete, Save and Close.
- 5. Once you have set up the electronic signature process, you will have to set up your contract type to enable it for electronic signature. See the step Define Contract Types for more information.

For a contracts user to be able to send contracts for signature, the following are required:

- 1. The Contracts user must have a valid DocuSign account.
- 2. The DocuSign user name must be the same as the email address of the user that is set up in Oracle Contracts.
- 3. The Contracts user must be a member of the DocuSign admin account.

Set Up User Statuses and User Transitions

To define user and status transitions, proceed as follows:

- 1. Define user statuses and their transitions using the task Manage User Statuses and Transitions.
 - Note: While defining user statuses, ensure that you select **Allow Assignment** for each of the user transitions. This enables you to assign the contract to named assignees during a user transition.
- 2. Use the Event Models task from the Contracts work area to create new events and actions for the business object oracle.apps.contracts.coreAuthoring.header.model.view.ContractHeaderVO.
 - a. A new state associated with the new user status must be added to the appropriate event model.
 - **b.** The action associated with the "Entry" event of the new state is then set to update the user status code to the new user status.
 - The user status code that you use for the groovy script must exactly match with the user status you set up using the Manage User Status and Transitions task.
 - **c.** Add any other possible events for this new state.
 - **d.** Link to the existing state by adding a new event for the "DRAFT" state so that your new status is available for a contract in Draft status.



The event name must exactly match with the transition code defined in Manage User Statuses and Transitions.

- 3. Set these events up for each To and From state of the user transition. For seeded states you can select from available events and actions. An example of an action could be a groovy script.
- 4. Save this new State based event model and specify the condition or contract type that can use this. For contracts of the specified condition, the user statuses and transitions that you created are available as Action menu items. You can use these action menu items to pass a contract between teams for review before submitting the contract for approval.

User statuses and transitions apply only to contracts that fulfill the condition defined in the Event Model. They cannot be used for contract templates.

Set Up Business Unit

To set up your business unit (BU), proceed as follows:

- 1. Navigate to Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts, Define Business Units for Enterprise Contracts, and open Manage Business Unit.
 - a. Create a new business unit.
 - **b.** Enter the required information on the Create Business Unit page.
 - c. Select Create from the Default Set drop down list.
 - d. Create a reference data set.
 - e. Select the reference data set created on the Create Business Unit page and then Save and Close.
- Navigate to Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts, Define Business Units
 for Enterprise Contracts, and click Select against the task Assign Business Unit Business Function to set the
 business unit scope.
 - a. From the Business Unit drop down list click Select and Add and then Apply and Go to Task.
 - **b.** Search for and select the business unit you created and then **Save and Close**.
 - c. Enter the required information and then Save and Close.
- 3. Navigate to **Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts**, **Define Business Units for Enterprise Contracts**, and open the task Manage Business Unit Set Assignment. You may change or override the reference data set codes for the reference data objects, or you can keep them as assigned during the business unit creation.

Define Legal Entities

To define legal entities, proceed as follows:

- Note: This task is optional if the implementation need not create financial transactions from contracts.
- 1. Navigate to Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts > Define Enterprise Structures for Enterprise Contracts > Define Legal Jurisdictions and Authorities for Enterprise Contracts, and open Manage Legal Addresses.
- 2. Select a country from the Country drop down list, and a new location.
- 3. Enter the new location information on the Location Create dialog.
- 4. Click Save and Close.
- **5.** Navigate to Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts > Define Enterprise Structures for Enterprise Contracts and open the Define Legal Entities for Enterprise Contracts task.
- 6. Click Create New.
- 7. Click the new icon, and enter the required information by selecting the options Legal Employer and Payroll Statutory Unit. Click **Save**.



- 8. On the Create Legal Entity page, enter the required information and then Save and Close.
- 9. On the Scope Selection: Legal Entity dialog box, click **Select and Add**.
- 10. Select the legal entity you created and click Save and Close.
- 11. Click the up arrow on the left side of the table and select Enterprise Contracts from the list to go back to the main folder.
- 12. Click the + on the toolbar and add the tasks Manage Legislative Data Groups and Manage Legal Entity HCM Information to Define Legal Entities for Enterprise Contracts. Open the task Manage Legislative Data Groups.
- 13. Search and then click Create.
- 14. Enter the required information and click **Submit**.
- 15. Search again to verify that the legislative data group is created, and click **Done**.
- 16. Navigate to Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts > Define Enterprise Structures for Enterprise Contracts > Define Legal Entities for Enterprise Contracts and open the task Manage Legal Entity HCM Information.
- 17. Search for and click the legal entity you added.
- 18. Select **Update** from the Edit options at the top. Enter a past date in the Update Legal Entity dialog and click **OK**.
- **19.** Enter the required information under the Legal Employer tab and select the Payroll Statutory Unit tab. Enter the required information and click **Submit**.

Setting Up Enterprise Contracts: Part 2

The following steps constitute part 2 of the procedure for setting up enterprise contracts. Perform the following steps after completing the steps explained in Setting Up Enterprise Contracts: Procedure Part 1, the link for which is provided below.

Define Business Units and Assign Business Function and Optionally Assign Ledger and Legal Entity

To define a business unit (BU) and assign a business function, ledger, or legal entity, proceed as follows:

- Navigate to Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts, Define Business Units for Enterprise Contracts, and open the Manage Business Unit task.
 - a. Click Createt.
 - b. Enter the required information on the Create Business Unit page. Select Create from the Default Set drop down list.
 - c. Create a reference data set and click **OK**.
 - **d.** Select the reference data set created from the Default Set drop down list and click **Save and Close**.
- 2. Navigate to **Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts** and open the task **Define Business Units for Enterprise Contracts** to select the business unit you created as the task list scope.
 - a. Click **Select and Add** in the dialog to set the BU you created as the task list scope.
 - **b.** Click the task Assign Business Unit Business Function.
 - **c.** Enter the required information and click **Save and Close**. Click the up arrow, and select Enterprise Contracts to go to the main folder structure.
 - Note: If the implementation need not create financial transactions from contracts, assigning a primary ledger and default legal entity in the Assign Business Function page is optional.
- 3. Navigate to Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts, Define Business Units for Enterprise Contracts, and open the Manage Business Unit Set Assignment task. You can update or override the reference data set code for a particular reference data object.



Set Up Common CRM Business Unit Profile Option

Define your business unit (BU) profile options as follows:

- 1. Navigate to **Define Contracts Common Configuration** and open the **Manage Common CRM Business Unit Profile Options** task.
- 2. Click the default profile. Set the profile value to the business unit that should be the default, and click Cancel.
- 3. Set the default profile value to Yes. This means the contracts users are allowed to access multiple business units.
- 4. Click Save and Close.
- 5. On the next page that shows the list of profiles, click Done.

Define Users

To define Oracle Contracts users, proceed as follows:

- Navigate to Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts, Define Security for Customer Relationship Management, Define Users for Customer Relationship Management, and open the Manage HCM Role Provisioning Rules task.
 - a. Click Create.
 - b. Enter the required information to create a new role mapping and click **Save and Close**.
- Navigate to Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts, Define Security for Customer Relationship Management, Define Users for Customer Relationship Management, and open the Manage Users task.
 - a. Click Create.
 - **b.** Enter the required information to create a user with an e-mail ID, who can author and submit contracts for approval. Click **Autoprovision Roles**.
 - **c.** The provisioned roles from HCM role mapping defined previously are automatically populated. Click **Save and Close** then **Done** to go back to main folder structure.
 - **d.** Repeat the previous steps to create as many Oracle Contracts users as required for this phase of the implementation.
 - **e.** Get users and passwords from the e-mail recipients.

Set Up Approval Groups and Approval Task Configuration Rules

To set up approval groups and approval task configuration rules, proceed as follows:

- Navigate to Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts, Define Approval Management for Customer Relationship Management, and open the Manage Task Configurations for Customer Relationship Management task.
- 2. Click the **Approval Groups** tab and then click + on the left of the Groups region.
- 3. Enter a name and click + on the right.
- 4. Click the list of values icon on the Add to Group dialog.
- 5. Search for the user created using the e-mail in the search field. Select the user from the Searched Items list and click OK to add it to the group.
- 6. Click **OK** to create the group with the added member.
- 7. Click Apply.
- 8. Repeat the previous steps to create an approval group that includes both level 1 and level 2 approvers.
- 9. To create a dynamic list of approvers, you can create a dynamic approval group based on a Java class file. The Java class can refer to the approval task payload parameters, such as contract identifier.
- 10. Click the Task Configuration tab, the contractsApproval task in the left pane, and then the task tab on the right. You can configure the Assignment and Routing Policy attributes to suit your business needs. For example, you can select the Allow initiator to add participants option to let the initiator add ad hoc approvers and configure notifications as approval progresses.



- Click Edit at the top left, select the Allow initiator to add participants option, click Save at the top left, and click Commit.
- 12. Click the **Task Configuration** tab, the **contractsApproval** task in the left pane, and then the Rules tab on the right. You can create rules to suit your business needs.
- **13.** Expand each rule.
- 14. Click Edit at the top left to create rules for the contractsApproval stage rule set.
- 15. Click X and delete all the three rules.
- **16.** Click + to create a new rule.
- 17. Enter the rule name and click the down arrow. If under the IF label, click the LOV icon next to the first field on the left.
- **18.** As an example, in the Condition Browser, expand **contractsApprovalPayloadType**, **contractDetails**, **result**, and select the **estimatedAmount** payload attribute.
- 19. Select isn't from the operator drop-down, and select null as the comparison value of the IF condition.
- 20. Click the down arrow on the right of the IF condition and select simple test to add a new IF condition.
- 21. Select the comparison field of the new IF condition from the condition browser.
- 22. Similarly add another IF condition as follows: select estimatedAmount for the comparison field, select same or less than as the operator, and select a value such as 30000 as the comparison value.
- 23. Select Approval Group from the List Builder drop-down under THEN, and click Create Action to create the List builder action 1 region.
- 24. Select level 1 approver and enter the required information for the List builder action 1 region.
- 25. Click + next to Estimate_Amount_Rule1 to create a second rule, give it a name such as Estimate_Amount_Rule2, and expand it.
- **26.** Create a second rule to route to higher level approvers for higher contract amounts.
- 27. Create a third rule such that, if contract estimated amount is not entered, it is routed to level 1 approver.
- 28. Click the Save button and then the Commit task button at the top left to commit the rules to the database. Expand all the rules.

Note that you could also add rules based on:

- O Policy deviations (contractsApprovalPayloadType.policyDeviation = Y Or N)
- Terms amended rule (ContractsApprovalPayloadType.termsAmended = Y or N)
- Nonstandard clauses added (contractsApprovalPayloadType.nonstdClause = Y or N)
- Missing (deleted) standard clauses (contractsApprovalPayloadType.missingStdClause = Y or N)
- Standard clause (not on the terms template) added (contractsApprovalPayloadType.stdClauseAdded = Y or N)
- Clause deviation category codes (TermsDeviations.deviationCategory = "<<Code>>")
- Deviation codes (TermsDeviations.deviationCode = "<<Code>>")

Add steps to define such approval rules referring to the following table which lists the deviation codes:

Clause Deviation Category Code	Clause Deviation Code	Description
OKC_NON_STD_ARTICLES		A nonstandard clause exists on the contract.
	ADDED_NON_STD	A new nonstandard clause was added.
	MODIFIED_STD	A standard clause was modified and made nonstandard.
OKC_MISSING_STD_ARTICLES		A standard clause from the terms template was deleted from the contract.



Clause Deviation Category Code	Clause Deviation Code	Description
	MISSING_ MANDATORY	A mandatory clause is missing.
	MISSING_EXPERT_ARTICLE	A conditional clause based on an expert rule is missing.
	MISSING_ OPTIONAL_ ARTICLE	An optional clause is missing.
OKC_INVALID ARTICLES		An invalid clause exists on the contract.
	ARTICLE_ EXPIRED	The clause is expired.
	ARTICLE_ ON_HOLD	The clause is on hold.
	EXPERT_ ARTICLE_ NOT_REQUIRED	The rule conditions no longer apply for a clause added by Contract Expert.
OKC_STD_ARTICLES_ADDED		A standard clause was added.
	ADDED_ STD_ARTICLE	A standard clause from the library was added.
	REPLACED_ALT	A standard clause was replaced with an alternate clause.

29. Alternatively, to bypass the approval hierarchy and have automatic approval, create only the following rule.

```
Edit IF condition to 1 is 1
Under Then block Choose
List builder: Supervisory Response type: Required Number of levels: 1 Starting
Participant: HierarchyBuilder.getPrincipal("<User Id>",-1,null,null) Top Participant:
HierarchyBuilder.getPrincipal("<User Id>",-1,null,null)
Auto action enabled: True Auto Action: "APPROVE"
Save and commit.
```

- **30.** Click the **Approval Group** tab to create an approval group for Clause Approval.
- **31.** Click the **Task Configuration** tab to create rules for clause approval human task. Click the human task ContractClauseApproval on left and then click the rules subtab.
- 32. Click the Approval Group tab to create an approval group for Template Approval.
- **33.** Click the **Task Configuration** tab to create rules for Contracts Template Approval human task, click the TemplateApprovalHumanTask human task on the left, and then click the rules subtab.
- **34.** Repeat the rule creation steps described for contract approvals.

Setting Up Enterprise Contracts: Part 3

The following steps constitute part 3 of the procedure for setting up enterprise contracts. Perform the following steps after completing the steps explained in Setting Up Enterprise Contracts: Procedure Part 2, the link for which is provided below.



Enable Contracts for use in Oracle Social Network

To enable contracts as a collaborative object, proceed as follows:

- 1. Find and open the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects for Sales Cloud task in your implementation project.
- 2. Expand the Enterprise Contracts Business Object.
- 3. Select Contract and click **Enable Object**.

Define Document Sequences

To define document sequences, proceed as follows:

- Note: Perform this step only in one of the following situations:
- If you need to autonumber contracts or clauses.
- If you are doing the setup for partner agreement type of contracts.
- Navigate to Define Contracts Common Configuration, Define Document Sequences, and open the Manage Document Sequence Categories task.
 - **a.** Search for the document sequence categories of the Enterprise Contracts module. You should see the document sequence categories for the contract header table OKC_K_HEADERS_ALL_B and the clause table OKC_ARTICLES_ALL_already exist.
 - **b.** Create a new document sequence category for the table OKC_K_HEADERS_ALL_B to store contract header information. You need not create document sequences for the table OKC_ARTICLES_ALL that stores clauses, because you will number the clauses manually. Click **Save and Close**.
 - **c.** If you want to create partner program enrollment contracts from the Partner Relationship Management application, create a new document sequence category for the table OKC_K_HEADERS_ALL_B to store contract header information. Click **Save and Close** to return to the main folder structure.
- Navigate to Define Contracts Common Configuration, Define Document Sequences, and open the Manage Document Sequences task.
 - a. Search for the document sequences of the Enterprise Contracts module.
 - **b.** Create a document sequence in the master table and assign it to the document category created for the contract header in the child table. Select the primary ledger for the determinant value that will be used to determine the document autonumbering scope. Click **Save and Close**.
 - **c.** If you want to create partner program enrollment contracts from the Partner Relationship Management application, create a document sequence in the master table and assign it to document category created for contract header in the child table. Select the primary ledger for the determinant value that will be used to determine the document autonumbering scope. Click **Save and Close**.
 - Note: Document sequences for contracts can be defined at global, ledger, legal entity, and business unit level. Document sequences for clauses can be defined at global, ledger, and business unit level.

Define Layout Templates in BI Publisher

To define layout templates in BI publisher, proceed as follows:

- Navigate to Define Contracts Common Configuration and click the Manage Contract Layout Templates task.
 A message appears saying that you need to perform this step outside the setup and maintenance work area. You need to perform this step in BI publisher.
- 2. Sign in to BI publisher with author or admin privileges and click the Catalog Folders on the left.
- 3. Open the Enterprise Contracts folder and click the Contract Printing node.



- 4. Click **Edit** under the Customer Contract sample layout template and save a copy for future edits. For instance, you may change the Amount boilerplate text in the newly saved copy to Contract Amount and save the file.
- 5. Click + on the right to add a new layout.
- 6. Click **Upload** under the Upload or Generate Layout region.
- 7. Enter the required information to add the customized template file and click **Upload**.
- 8. The contract preview should show the added layout template. You may repeat the previous steps if you want to create custom layouts for other contracts. Click **Save** on the right and then click **Catalog** on the right of the top menu bar.
- 9. The previous steps explained how to customize a boilerplate text. BI Publisher also allows you to create a new layout template using the Contract Data Model attributes supplied with the application. To view the attributes included as part of Contract Preview Sample Data model, click **Edit** under Contract Preview Sample Data Model link.
- 10. Click the contractsample.xml attachment to view the predefined contract attributes.
- 11. The data model XML file appears. You can scroll down to view all the attributes included across all contract entities. Close the browser and click **Catalog**. If a save warning appears, do not save the changes.
- 12. Repeating the previous steps provided for customizing layout templates, you can customize clause layout templates, download contract terms layout templates, and contract deviation layout templates.

Configure Contract Management Business Functions

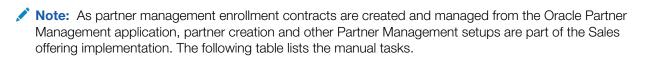
To configure contract management business functions, proceed as follows:

- 1. Navigate to **Define Contracts Common Configuration** and open the **Define Contract Management Business**Function Configuration task list.
- 2. Click **Select and Add** in the dialog to select a business unit.
- 3. Select the BU created and click Save and Closeto save the task list scope to the BU.
- 4. Open the Specify Customer Contract Management Business Function Properties task.
- 5. Select the default currency, enter the required information in the Terms Library region and click **Save and Close**. These settings are common for standalone sell and partner program enrollment type of contracts. Ignore the other values in the page for now.
- 6. Open the Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties task.
- 7. Enter the required information and click **Save and Close**.
- 8. Click the up arrow in the Task Lists and Tasks table, and click **Enterprise Contracts** to return to the main folder structure.

Define Customers, Suppliers, and their Addresses and Contacts

To define customers, suppliers, and their addresses and contacts, proceed as follows:

1. Navigate to **Define Contracts Common Configuration** and note the following manual tasks. Manual tasks need to be performed outside the setup and maintenance work area.



Task	Target Work Area/Comments
Manage Contract Internal Party Contacts	These are employees who will be assigned as contacts for contract internal party roles.
	You already created employees while creating users, using the navigation Define Common Applications Configuration for Enterprise Contracts > Define Security for Customer Relationship Management > Define Users for Customer Relationship Management > Manage Users.
Manage External Person Parties for Contracts	These are customers or suppliers who are individuals.



Task	Target Work Area/Comments
	Create Customers using the navigation: Sales > Customers.
	Create Suppliers using the navigation: Procurement > Suppliers.
Manage External Organization Parties for Contracts AND Manage External	These are customers or suppliers who are organizations and have their people as contacts.
Person Parties for Contracts	Create organization type customers and their contacts using the navigation: Sales > Customers.
	Sign in and create organization type suppliers and their contacts, using the navigation: Procurement > Suppliers.

- 2. Navigate to Sales then Customers.
 - **a.** Click **Create Customer** on the left to create an organization type of Customer. Enter a sell-to-address, legal entity usage, sales interest, contact, and click **Save and Close**.
 - b. Click **Create Consumer** on the left to create an individual type of customer. Enter the required information and click **Save and Close**.
 - c. You may search and edit customers or consumers using the Manage Customers link.
- 3. Navigate to **Procurement** then **Suppliers** to create suppliers and their contacts.
 - Use the Create Supplier task to create an organization type of supplier. Enter the required information and click Create.
 - **b.** Click the Addresses tab and click **Create**.
 - c. Enter the required information and click **Save and Close**.
 - d. Click the Contacts tab and click Create.
 - e. Enter the contact information and click **Save and Close** twice to return to the Overview page.
 - f. Click Create Supplier again to create an individual supplier, such as a labor contractor, and after entering the required information click Create.
 - g. Click **Save and Close** to save the supplier.

Setting Up Enterprise Contracts: Part 4

The following steps constitute part 4 of the procedure for setting up enterprise contracts. Perform the following steps after completing the steps explained in Setting Up Enterprise Contracts: Procedure Part 3, the link for which is provided below.

Define Party Roles, Contact Roles, and Role Sources

To define party roles, contact roles, and role sources, proceed as follows:

- 1. Navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area and open your project. Navigate to **Define Contracts Common Configuration** and open the **Manage Contract Party Roles** task.
- 2. Create new party roles as needed.
- 3. Navigate to Define Contracts Common Configuration and open the Manage Contract Contact Roles task.
- 4. Create new contact roles as needed.
- 5. Navigate to Define Contracts Common Configuration and open the Manage Contract Role Sources task.
- 6. For each party role set up in the previous step, enter the required information for the associated contact roles.

Define Contract Line Types

To define contract line types, proceed as follows:

1. Navigate to **Define Procurement Contracts Configurations** and open the **Manage Contract Line Types** task.



- 2. Click **Create** and define four line types each with a different source as follows:
 - Buy agreement, free-form
 - Buy agreement, item
 - Buy intent, free-form
 - Buy intent, item
- 3. Click **Done** to return to the main folder structure.

Define Contract Types

To define contract types, proceed as follows:

- 1. Navigate to **Define Contracts Common Configuration** and open the **Manage Contract Types** task.
- 2. Click **Create** and enter the required information.
- **3.** Click **Continue** to create the contract type you require.
- 4. Enter the required information and click **Save and Close** to return to the Manage Contract Types page.

Define Contract Lines Descriptive Flexfield

An optional step required if you are going to use sales agreement lines with descriptive flexfields. For details see the related link titled "Descriptive Flexfields for Oracle Contracts."

Define Contract Terms Library Components (Clauses and Terms Templates)

To define contract terms library components (clauses and terms templates), proceed as follows:

- Navigate to Define Contract Terms and Clause Library Configuration and open the Manage Contract Terms
 Value Sets task.
 - **a.** Search for value sets created for the Enterprise Contracts module. Value sets are required to define questions and rules in Terms library work area. Click **Create**.
 - **b.** Enter the required information to create a value set. Click **Save and Close**. Click **Done**.
- Navigate to Define Contract Terms and Clause Library Configuration and open the Manage Contract Clause Types task.
- 3. Create a new clause type and click **Save and Close**.
- 4. Navigate to **Define Contract Terms and Clause Library Configuration** and open the **Specify Contract Clause Import XML File Location** task.
- 5. Set the profile value to the required value in your Enterprise Scheduling Service (ESS) server. Specify the ESS server directory where the import clauses from XML File process uploads and imports files into the Contract Terms Library.
- 6. Navigate to **Define Contract Terms and Clause Library Configuration** and open the **Manage Contract Standard Clauses, Templates, and Expert Rules** task. This is not a setup and maintenance task, but a manual task that is performed from the Terms Library work area.
- 7. To create terms clauses navigate in the application to **Contract Management**, then the **Terms Library** work area.
 - Click the Create Clause task.
 - **b.** Enter the required information to create a clause and click **Submit**.
 - The Title name should be unique for both buy and sell clauses.
 - **c.** Once you have submitted a new clause for approval, it will need to be approved by the clause approver.
 - **d.** Once approved, you should now search for the clauses to verify that they are in Approved status.
- 8. To create terms templates navigate in the application to **Contract Management**, then the **Terms Library** work area.
 - a. Click the Create Terms Template task.



- b. Enter the required template information and click **Save** to enable the Document Types table.
- c. Select a contract type in the document type table and click the Clauses tab.
- d. Click the Add Section action.
- e. Enter a section name in the New text box and click **OK**.
- f. Select your new section and click + to add a clause.
- g. In the Add Clauses dialog, search for your clause, select the row, and click OK.
- **h.** Open your section, and click the clause title. Click the refresh icon in the toolbar to view the section and clause in the terms template preview pane. Click **Submit**.
- i. Check for and resolve any warnings or errors, and then click **Submit**.
- i. Click Save and Close.
- **k.** Repeat the previous steps to add more term templates as needed.
- I. Click **Submit** and then click **Submit** again on the next page to submit it for approval.
- m. Once you have submitted a new template for approval, it will need to be approved by the template approver.
- n. Once approved, you should now search for the templates to verify that they are in Approved status.

Configure File-Based Import for Enterprise Contracts

To configure file-based import for Enterprise Contracts, proceed as follows:

- Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Enterprise Contracts: Define File-Based Data Import, and open the Manage File Import Objects task.
 - a. Select the row for Contract and click Edit.
 - b. Enter default values for the attributes of Objects ContractImportJob1 and Import ContractHeader1.
 - c. Select the Map and Required check boxes as required and click Save and Close twice.
- Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Enterprise Contracts: Define File-Based Data Import, and open the Manage File Import Mappings task.
 - a. Select Contract in the Object drop down list and click Search to view the available mappings. Click Create to define a new mapping.
 - **b.** Enter the required information and click **Save and Close**.
 - **c.** Click a contract import mapping. Add column mappings as required. Ensure the source column header values match the column names in the data file and click **Save and Close**.
 - d. Click Save and Close again to return to main folder structure.
- Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Enterprise Contracts: Define File-Based Data Import, and open the Manage File Import Activities task.
 - a. Click Create to schedule an import job.
 - **b.** Enter the required information and click **Next**.
 - c. Enter constant values for the import object attributes or click **Next**.
 - d. Select a schedule from the Repeat Unit drop down list and click Next.
 - e. Click Activate to schedule the import job.

Configure Scheduled Processes

Configure scheduled processes to manipulate a set of records for a specific business need, or to get printable output with information about certain records. These processes are predefined but not preconfigured and the follow list identifies those that are critical to the smooth operation of Oracle Contracts.

Indexing Schedules (For text searching. See the help topic: "Setting Up Contract Text Search: Highlights.")



- Deliverables notifications scheduled processes:
 - Send Contract Terms Deliverable Due Date Notifications
 - Send Contract Terms Deliverable Escalation Notifications
 - Send Contract Terms Deliverable Overdue Notifications
- Expiration notification scheduled process:
 - Send Contract Expiration Notifications
- Fulfillment notification scheduled process:
 - Send Contract Fulfillment Notifications

Related Topics

• Descriptive Flexfields for Oracle Contracts

Setting Up Procurement Contracts

Setting Up Procurement Contracts: Procedure Part 1

The following procedure explains, in two parts, how to set up procurement contracts.

Note: The following setup tasks are required for procurement in addition to the base setup tasks required for all enterprise contracts. Before you perform these steps, you should have performed all the steps explained in Setting Up Enterprise Contracts, the links for which are provided below.

Procurement setup includes the following tasks:

- 1. Configure Enterprise Contracts offering and create implementation project.
- 2. Assign business functions.
- **3.** Define item organizations.
- 4. Define payment terms.
- 5. Define FOB and freight terms.
- 6. Define items.
- Define contract line types.
- 8. Define contract types.

Configure Enterprise Contracts and Create Implementation Project

To configure Enterprise Contracts offering and create implementation project, proceed as follows:

- 1. Navigate to the **Setup and Maintenance** work area.
- Click the Configure Offerings task.
 - a. For Enterprise Contracts , select **Enable for Implementation.** Click **Select Feature Choices**.
 - Note: You should have completed this step as part of Enterprise Contracts base setup.



- **b.** Select all feature choices and click **Save and Close**.
 - Note: You should have completed this step as part of Enterprise Contracts base setup.
- c. For Enterprise Contracts, Procurement Contracts, select Enable for Implementation and edit Select Feature Choices.
- **d.** Select the option **Enable Contract Terms** in Fusion Procurement if you want to view terms in Fusion Procurement flows, and click **Save and Close**.
- 3. Click the Manage Implementation Projects task and click Create to create a new project.
 - a. Enter a Name and click Next.
 - Expand Enterprise Contracts, and select Include for both Enterprise Contracts and Procurement Contracts.
 - c. Click Save and Open Project.

Assign Business Functions

To assign business functions, proceed as follows:

- Navigate in your project to Enterprise Contracts, Define Enterprise Structures for Enterprise Contracts, and open the Define Business Units for Enterprise Contracts.
 - **a.** Click **Select and Add Business Unit** from the Business Unit drop down list and search. Select your business unit and open the **Assign Business Unit Business Function** task.
 - b. Under Business Unit Function, select Materials Management, and click Save and Close.
 - c. Click the up arrow to return to the main folder structure.

Define Item Organizations

To define item organizations, proceed as follows:

- Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Enterprise Structures for Enterprise Contracts, Define Workforce Structures for CRM, and open the task Manage Locations.
 - a. Click Create.
 - b. Enter the required information and click **Submit**. Click **Done** to return to the main folder structure.
- 2. To start creating item organizations, navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Enterprise Structures for Enterprise Contracts, Define Facilities for Enterprise Contracts, and open the Manage Facility Shifts task.
 - a. Click Create.
 - **b.** Enter the required information and click **Save and Close**. Click **Done**.
- 3. Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Enterprise Structures for Enterprise Contracts, Define Facilities for Enterprise Contracts, and open the Manage Facility Workday Patterns task.
 - a. Click Create.
 - **b.** Enter the required information and click **Submit** Click **Done**.
- 4. Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Enterprise Structures for Enterprise Contracts, Define Facilities for Enterprise Contracts, and open the Manage Facility Schedules task.
 - a. Click Create.
 - **b.** Enter the required information and click **Submit**. Click **Done**.



- 5. Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Enterprise Structures for Enterprise Contracts, Define Facilities for Enterprise Contracts, and open the Manage Item Organizations task.
 - a. Click Create.
 - b. Enter the required information and click Next.
 - **c.** Enter the required information and click **Save and Close**.
 - d. Search again to view the item organization created, and click **Done**.
- **6.** Navigate to **Enterprise Contracts** and then **Define Procurement Contracts Configurations**. Because you already set up the task Specify Supplier Contract Management Business Function Properties in the Enterprise Contracts base setup, you can skip this step.

Define Payment Terms

To define payment terms, proceed as follows:

- Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Procurement Contracts Configurations, and open the Manage Contract Payment Terms task.
- 2. Click **Create** to create a simple payment term of NET 30.
- 3. Enter the required information and click Save and Close.

Setting Up Procurement Contracts: Procedure Part 2

The following steps constitute part 2 of the procedure for setting up procurement contracts. Perform the following steps after completing the steps explained in Setting Up Procurement Contracts Part 1, the link for which is provided below.

Define Payment Terms

To define payment terms, proceed as follows:

- Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Procurement Contracts Configurations, and open the Manage Contract Payment Terms task.
- 2. Click **Create**to create a payment term. For example, NET 30.
- 3. Enter the required information and click Save and Close.

Define FOB and Freight Terms

To define FOB and freight terms, proceed as follows:

- Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Procurement Contracts Configurations, and open the Manage Contract FOB Lookups task.
- 2. Click **Create** to create a lookup. For example, FOB is commonly used.
- 3. Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Procurement Contracts Configurations, and open the Manage Contract Freight Term Lookups task.
- 4. Click Create to create a lookup. For example, FREIGHT TERMS.

Define Items

To define items, proceed as follows:

- 1. Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Procurement Contracts Configurations, and add two tasks: Manage Units of Measure and Manage Item Classes. Open the Manage Units of Measure task.
 - a. Click Manage UOM Classes in the table.
 - b. Click + to create an UOM class as shown below and click **Save and Close**.



- **c.** Enter the base UOM created as part of UOM class creation in previous step to verify whether the UOM got created automatically. Click **Save and Close**. Ignore conversions for now as there is only one unit in the UOM class.
- Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Procurement Contracts Configurations, and open the Manage Item Classes task.
 - **a.** The Manage Item Classes page will open in a new window, as it is a work area by itself. Click **Root Item Class** in the search results table.
 - **b.** Click the **Security** tab and use the + icon to add a row for Item Class People. Under Actions in the child table, add all actions starting with C for create privileges, V for view privileges, and M for maintain privileges, and click **Save**.
 - c. Click the Item Templates tab. Click the filter icon in the table and search for Purchased.
 - **d.** Click **Create**. Enter the required information in the dialog and click **OK**.
 - e. Enter the required information and click Save and Close, then click Done.
- 3. Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Procurement Contracts Configurations, and try to open the Manage Contract Line Items task. A message appears indicating that you cannot perform this action in the setup and maintenance work area. This is a manual task to be performed in the Item work area.
- 4. Navigate in the application to **Product Management and then Items**.
 - a. Click Create Item task.
 - **b.** Enter the required information to create a purchasable item and click **OK**.
 - c. Enter the required information and click the **Specifications** tab.
 - **d.** Click **Purchasing** under Item Organization under the Specifications tab. Ensure the values are as follows and click **Save and Close** from the Save drop down list:
 - Purchased = Yes
 - Purchasable = Yes
 - User Approved Supplier = No
 - Allow Purchasing Document = Yes
 - Taxable = Yes

Define Contract Line Types

To define contract line types, proceed as follows:

- 1. Return to Setup and Maintenance work area. In your project under Enterprise Contracts, Define Procurement Contracts Configurations, open the Manage Contract Line Types task.
- 2. Click **Create** and create four line types each with a different source as follows:
 - Buy agreement, free-form
 - Buy agreement, item
 - Buy intent, free-form
 - Buy intent, item
- 3. Click **Done** to return to the main folder structure.

Define Contract Types

To define contract types, proceed as follows:

- Navigate to Enterprise Contracts, Define Procurement Contracts Configurations, and open the Manage Contract Types task.
- Click Create to create a buy intent contract type. Enter the required information and click Continue.



- **3.** Enter the required information and click **Save**.
- 4. Click the Fulfillment Notifications tab.
- 5. Create a fulfillment notification and check what notification types are available.
- 6. Select the Enable Terms Authoring check box and click **Save and Close**.
- 7. Click **Create** again to create a purchase agreement contract type by repeating the previous steps.
- **8.** Click **Done** and return to the main folder structure.





Glossary

action

The kind of access, such as view or edit, named in a security policy.

alternate clause

A clause with an alternate relationship to another clause. Contract authors can substitute an alternate clause for the standard clause in their contracts.

analysis

A selection of data displayed in one or more views, such as a table or chart, to provide answers to business questions.

analytics

Business intelligence objects such as analyses and dashboards that provide meaningful data to help with decision making.

business intelligence catalog

The repository where all business intelligence objects, including analytics, reports, briefing books, and agents, are stored. The catalog contains separate folders for personal, shared, and custom objects.

business intelligence repository

The metadata that determines all of the columns, or pieces of data, that you can include in analytics. You can also use the repository as a source of data for reports.

business object

A resource in an enterprise database, such as an invoice or purchase order.

clause adoption

Reusing a clause from the global business unit in local business units either by adopting the clause without change or by localizing it.



clause localization

A type of clause adoption where the adopted clause is edited to suit the local business unit needs.

clause numbering level

Specifies the determinant type of the document sequence for automatic clause numbering

clause relationships

Clauses in the Contract Terms Library can be incompatible with or alternates for other clauses.

constant

Holds the numeric value used to evaluate numeric conditions in Contract Expert rules. A constant permits you to reset the conditions of many rules with just one edit.

contact role source

Source of the contact role list of values, such as employees, salespeople, and customer contacts...

context

A grouping of flexfield segments to store related information.

context segment

The flexfield segment used to store the context value. Each context value can be associated with a different set of context-sensitive segments.

context-sensitive segment

A flexfield segment that may or may not appear depending upon a context. Context-sensitive segments are custom attributes that apply to certain entity rows based on the value of the context segment.

contract deliverable

A task that needs to be performed as part of the execution of a contract or business document, and that is tracked as part of the contract terms and conditions.

contract deviations

Differences between the contract terms in a contract and those in the contract terms template applied to that contract and any deviations from company policies as determined by Contract Expert feature rules.

Contract Expert

A feature that lets you create and evaluate business rules in the terms library such that the contract terms meet your business standards, by suggesting contract changes or additional clauses.

Contract Expert

A feature of the application that permits you to create business rules in the Contract Terms Library to enforce corporate policies and standards for contracts.



contract fulfillment

Tracks the progress of contractual and noncontractual commitments by interested parties in a procurement enterprise contract and can initiate purchasing activity in integrated purchasing applications.

contract template

A template containing common contract attributes such as party, and line information. It can be instantly activated for use in creating multiple contracts for an organization or for a customer.

Contract Terms Library

A repository of standard clauses, contract terms templates, and business rules maintained by your organization.

Contract Terms Library

A repository of standard clauses, contract terms templates, and business rules built using Contract Expert.

Contract Terms Library administrator

The employee, designated as administrator during business unit setup, who is responsible for approving Contract Terms Library content.

contract terms template

A template of standard clauses set up in the Contract Terms Library applied during contract authoring either automatically by the application or manually by contract authors.

contract type

A setup that specifies enterprise contract content, including the presence of contract terms and contract lines.

contractual fulfillment

Contract fulfillment lines that covered by the terms of the contract.

dashboard

A collection of analyses and other content, presented on one or more pages to help users achieve specific business goals. Each page is a separate tab within the dashboard.

data model

The metadata that determines where data for a report comes from and how that data is retrieved.

data security

The control of access and action a user can take against which data.

descriptive flexfield

Customizable expansion space, such as fields used to capture additional descriptive information or attributes about an entity, such as a customer case. You may configure information collection and storage based on the context.



determinant

A value that specifies the use of a reference data set in a particular business context.

document sequence

A unique number that is automatically or manually assigned to a created and saved document.

document sequence category

A classification that groups the documents of a particular type that need to be assigned a particular document sequence.

document type

A categorization of contracts, including auction, blanket purchase agreement, contract purchase agreement, RFI, RFQ, standard purchase order, and enterprise contract.

EDI

Abbreviation for electronic data interchange.

EFT

Acronym for Electronic Funds Transfer. A direct transfer of money from one account to another, such as an electronic payment of an amount owed a supplier by transferring money from a payer's disbursement bank account into the supplier's bank account.

enterprise

An organization with one or more legal entities under common control.

enterprise contract

A contract created in the Oracle Fusion Enterprise Contracts application.

external system or external application

A system or application that is external to and not part of Order Management. An order capture system that resides upstream of Order Management is an example of an external system. A fulfillment application that resides downstream of Order Management is an example of an external application.

feature choice

A selection you make when configuring offerings that modifies a setup task list, or a setup page, or both.

flexfield

A flexible data field that you can customize to contain one or more segments or store additional information. Each segment has a value and a meaning.

flexfield segment

An extensible data field that represents an attribute and captures a value corresponding to a predefined, single extension column in the database. A segment appears globally or based on a context of other captured information.



global area

The region at the very top of the user interface that remains the same no matter which page you're on.

global business unit

A business unit, designated as global during business unit setup, that can make its clauses and contract terms templates available for adoption by local business units.

infolet

A small, interactive widget on the home page that provides key information and actions for a specific area, for example social networking or your personal profile. Each infolet can have multiple views.

intent

Specifies if an object in the Contract Terms Library is used for procurement contracts or for sales contracts.

interface table

A database table that stores data during data transfer between applications or from an external system or data file.

job definition

The metadata that determines what a job does and what options are available to users when they submit the scheduled process. A job is the executable for a scheduled process.

layout template

RTF document that contains the contract layout for printing and preview.

local business unit

A business unit, not designated as global during business unit setup, which can adopt global clauses created in the global business unit.

lookup code

An option available within a lookup type, such as the lookup code BLUE within the lookup type COLORS.

lookup type

The label for a static list that has lookup codes as its values.

mandatory clause

Clause from the Contract Terms Library that you cannot edit or delete without special permission.

marketing list

A static selection of contacts for the purpose of communicating a marketing message by e-mail, direct mail or phone.



noncontractual fulfillment

Contract fulfillment lines that are not negotiated as part of the contract, but are used to monitor the progress or quality of contractual fulfillment.

nonstandard clause

A clause created during contract terms authoring by editing a standard clause or by creating a new clause that is not in the Contract Terms Library.

numbering scheme

The style of numbering used for the sections and clauses in contract terms.

offering

A comprehensive grouping of business functions, such as Sales or Product Management, that is delivered as a unit to support one or more business processes.

OWLCS

Abbreviation for Oracle WebLogic Communication Services. Offers the TPCC service to Oracle Sales Cloud and sets up the calls using SIP integration with the telephony network.

party source

Source of the list of values for entering contract parties, such as business units, customers, suppliers, and partners.

primary contract document

A file containing the contract terms and conditions. This file can be generated automatically by the application from the structured terms or attached to the contract by the contract author.

privilege

A grant of access to functions and data; a single, real world action on a single business object.

profile option

User preferences and system configuration options that users can configure to control application behavior at different levels of an enterprise.

profile option level

The category or layer that defines a profile option. Site, Product, and User are the predefined levels.

profile option value

The setting mapped to the level of a profile option. A profile option may have multiple values set at different levels, such as Site or User.



prompt

A parameter that you set when you use analytics, limiting the data in the analysis or in all analyses on the dashboard or dashboard page (tab).

protected clause

Standard clause that you cannot edit unless you are granted special permission by the Contract Terms library administrator.

provision clause

A clause that is used only in negotiations and is dropped when the negotiation is converted to a contract.

PSTN

Abbreviation for public switched telephone network which is the network of the world's public circuit-switched telephone networks.

purchasing document

A document such as a purchase order, a purchase agreement, or a blanket purchase agreement created in an integrated purchasing application from a contract deliverable.

reference data set

Contains reference data that can be shared across a number of business units or other determinant types. A set supports common administration of that reference data.

report

An output of select data in a predefined format that's optimized for printing.

repository contract

An enterprise contract with no contract or fulfillment lines, such as a nondisclosure agreement or an employment agreement.

role

Controls access to application functions and data.

scheduled process

A program that you run to process data and, in some cases, generate output as a report.

set enabled

A property that describes entities that an organization shares as reference data. For example, you can indicate a lookup, customer, location, or document attachment as set enabled.



standard clause

Legally approved language that is part of the terms and conditions in the Contract Terms Library.

structured terms

Contract terms that are authored within the Oracle Fusion Enterprise Contracts application.

subject area

A set of columns, or pieces of data, related to a specific business object or area.

system variable

A predefined variable that gets its value from an attribute of the contract or other document.

translation-only clause

A clause with text that was translated but not edited.

user variable

A variable that can be created by the Contract Terms Library administrator for use within clause text or in Contract Expert rules.

value set

A set of valid values against which values entered by an end user are validated. The set may be tree structured (hierarchical).

view

A specific way to present the results of an analysis, for example as a table or graph. Other types of views, such as the title view, show other components of the analysis.

work area

A set of pages containing the tasks, searches, and other content you need to accomplish a business goal.

